Автентичні тексти для читання

Тематичний словник

Словник географічних назв

Транскрипція міжнародного стандарту
Навчальне видання
ENGLISH TOPICS
Найкращі з 1000 усних тем з паралельним перекладом
для учнів 5—11 класів та абитуриєнтів

Укладачі: ФІЩЕНКО Олена Петрівна, ЯРЦЕВА Ганна Валеріївна,
АБРАДЖІОНИ Сергій Олексійович, БОРИСОВА Аліна Олексіївна,
ДЗЮБА Віктор Карнійович, КАМАЄВА Лариса Дмитрівна,
КАРПЕНКО Олена Володимирівна, НЕСНОВА Ірина Анатоліївна,
ПАЩЕНКО Лариса Василівна, ПОГОЖИХ Галина Миколаївна, ЧАБАН Галина Павлівна

Редактор Т. М. Матвієнко
Технічний редактор В. І. Труфен
Коректори Ю. М. Пухова, С. О. Громико

ТОВ «Веста». Свідоцтво ДК № 2540 від 26.06.2006. 61064 Харків, вул. Бакуніна, 8А.
Для листів: 61045, Харків, а/с 3355, «Ранок». E-mail: office@ranok.kharkov.ua
Адреса редакції: 61145, Харків, вул. Космічна, 21а.
З питань реалізації звертатися за тел.: у Харкові — (057) 712-91-44, 712-91-46, 712-91-47;
у Києві — 495-14-53, 241-40-20; у Дніпропетровську — 43-46-95; у Донецьку — 345-98-24;
e-mail: commerce@ranok.kharkov.ua
www.ranok.com.ua

© Фіщенко О. П., Ярцева Г. В., Абраджіоні С. О.,
Борисова А. О., Дзюба В. К., Камаєва Л. Д., Карпенко О. В.,
Неснова І. А., Пащенко Л. В., Погожих Г. М., Чабан Г. П., 2006
© ТОВ «Веста», 2006
Зміст

I. UKRAINE (УКРАЇНА)

Ukraine (Україна) ................................................................. 18
We Live in Ukraine (Ми живемо в Україні) ......................... 19
State System of Ukraine (Державний устрій України) .......... 20
Constitution of Ukraine (Конституція України) ................. 22
Geographical Position of Ukraine (Географічне положення України) .................................................. 23
Climate of Ukraine (Клімат України) ..................................... 25
Animals and Plants in Ukraine (Тварини і рослини України) . 27
An Outstanding Event in Ukrainian History (Знаменна подія в історії України) ........................................... 28
An Episode from the History of Ukraine (Епізод з історії України) .................................................. 29
Ukrainian Places of Interest (Визначні пам’ятки України) .... 31
Sorochinsky Fair (Сорочинський ярмарок) ......................... 33
Health Service in Ukraine (Охорона здоров’я в Україні) ....... 34
The Doctor, Our Health (Доктор. Наше здоров’я) ................. 36
Relations between Ukraine and English-Speaking Countries (Зв’язки України з англомовними країнами) ............. 37
Foreign Affairs of Ukraine (Українські міжнародні відносини) 39
The Political Situation in Ukraine and Abroad (Політична ситуація в Україні і за кордоном) .................. 40
Voting in Ukraine (Голосування в Україні) ......................... 42

II. REGIONS AND CITIES OF UKRAINE (РЕГІОНИ ТА МІСТА УКРАЇНИ)

Kyiv Region (Київська область) ........................................... 44
Kyiv — the Capital of Ukraine (Київ — столиця України) ...... 45
Places of Interest in Kyiv (Визначні пам’ятки Києва) .......... 47
Khreshchatyk (Хрещатик) ....................................................... 48
The Autonomous Republic Crimea (Автономна Республіка Крим) 50
Cherkasy Region (Черкаська область) .................................. 52
Cherkasy (Черкаси) ............................................................ 53
Chernihiv Region (Чернігівська область) ............................. 55
Chernihiv (Чернігів) .......................................................... 56
Chernivtsi Region (Чернівецька область) ............................. 58
Chernivtsi (Чернівці) .......................................................... 59
Dnipropetrovsk Region (Дніпропетровська область) .................................................. 61
Dnipropetrovsk (Дніпропетровськ) ........................................................................ 62
Donetsk Region (Донецька область) ......................................................................... 64
Donetsk (Донецьк) .................................................................................................. 65
Ivano-Frankivsk Region (Івано-Франківська область) ............................................... 67
Ivano-Frankivsk (Івано-Франківськ) ......................................................................... 68
Kamianets-Podilskyi (Кам'янець-Подільський) ....................................................... 70
Kharkiv Region (Харківська область) ...................................................................... 71
Kharkiv (Харків) .................................................................................................... 73
Kherson Region (Херсонська область) ..................................................................... 75
Kherson (Херсон) ..................................................................................................... 76
Khmelnitskyi Region (Хмельницька область) ............................................................ 77
Khmelnitskyi (Хмельницький) .................................................................................. 79
Kirovohrad Region (Кіровоградська область) ......................................................... 80
Kirovohrad (Кіровоград) .......................................................................................... 82
Kolomyia (Коломия) ................................................................................................. 84
Kremenets (Кременець) ............................................................................................ 85
Luhansk Region (Луганська область) ..................................................................... 86
Luhansk (Луганськ) ................................................................................................ 88
Lviv Region — Area of the Developed Economic Cooperation (Львівська область — зона вільної економічної торгівлі) ................................................................. 89
Lviv (Львів) ............................................................................................................... 91
Mykolaiv Region (Миколаївська область) ................................................................. 93
Mykolaiv (Миколаїв) ............................................................................................... 94
Odesa Region (Одеська область) .............................................................................. 95
Odesa (Одеса) .......................................................................................................... 97
Ostroh (Острог) ...................................................................................................... 98
Poltava Region (Полтавська область) .................................................................... 100
Poltava (Полтава) .................................................................................................. 101
Rivne Region (Рівненська область) ....................................................................... 103
Rivne (Рівне) .......................................................................................................... 104
Sevastopol (Севастополь) ....................................................................................... 105
Sumy Region (Сумська область) ........................................................................... 106
Sumy (Суми) .......................................................................................................... 107
Simferopol (Сімферополь) ................................................................. 108
Ternopil Region (Тернопільська область) ....................................... 110
Ternopil is a Place of Culture (Тернопіль — місто культури) .......... 112
Transcarpathia is a Special Region
(Закарпатський особливий регіон) ................................................ 114
Uzhhorod (Ужгород) ................................................................. 115
Vinnytsia Region (Вінницька область) .......................................... 116
Vinnytsia (Вінниця) ................................................................. 117
Volyn Region (Волинська область) .............................................. 119
Lutsk — Centre of the Volyn Region
(Луцьк — центр Волинської області) ........................................... 121
Zaporizhia Region (Запорізька область) ..................................... 122
Zaporizhia (Запоріжжя) ........................................................... 123
Zhytomyr Region (Житомирська область) .................................... 125
Zhytomyr (Житомир) .............................................................. 126
The Town Where I Live (Місто, у якому я живу) ......................... 127
The Most Beautiful Place on Earth
(Найкрасивіше місце на землі) .................................................. 129
My Home Town (Моє рідне місто) ............................................. 131
Our Street (Наша вулиця) .......................................................... 132

III. Great Britain (ВЕЛИКОБРІТАНІЯ)
Great Britain (Великобританія) ............................................... 133
UK Political System (Політична система Великобританії) ............ 134
National Emblems in Great Britain
(Національні емблеми у Великобританії) .................................. 136
Geographical Position of Great Britain
(Географічне положення Великобританії) ................................. 137
Climate of Great Britain (Клімат Великобританії) ...................... 138
From the History of Great Britain
(З історії Великобританії) ........................................................ 140
Outstanding Events in the Life of Great Britain
(Видатні події в житті Великобританії) .................................... 141
Tchaikovskyi in England (Чайковський в Англії) ......................... 143
London — the Capital of the UK (Лондон — столиця Великобританії) 144
History of London (Історія Лондона) ......................................... 146
Places of Interest in London (Визначні пам’ятки Лондона) .......... 147
Main Theatres in London (Головні театри Лондона) ........................................... 148
Shopping in London (Магазини в Лондоні) ....................................................... 150
History of Wales (Історія Уельсу) ................................................................. 151
Cities and Towns of Great Britain (Великі і мали міста Великобританії) .............. 153
Sights of Great Britain (Визначні пам’ятки Великобританії) .............................. 154
The English Mint (Англійський монетний двір) ............................................. 156
UK Health Service (Охорона здоров’я у Великобританії) ............................... 157
English Cookery and Meals (Англійська кухня та їжа) ................................. 159
The English Character (Англійський характер) .................................................. 161
English Traditions (Англійські традиції) ......................................................... 163
Gardening (Садівництво) ..................................................................................... 164
Fireplaces (Каміні) .............................................................................................. 165
Customs and Traditions in Great Britain (Звичаї і традиції у Великобританії) ....... 167
British Customs (Звичаї британців) ................................................................... 168
The Ukrainian Diaspora (Українська діаспора) .................................................. 170

IV. THE USA (США)
The USA (США) ..................................................................................................... 172
Political System of the USA (Державний устрій США) ....................................... 173
Geographical Position of the USA (Географічне положення США) ................... 175
Climate and Nature of the USA (Клімат і природа США) .................................. 176
From the History of the USA (З історії США) ...................................................... 178
An Episode from the History of the USA (Епізод з історії США) ......................... 178
Discovery (Відкриття) .......................................................................................... 180
The Colonies (Колонії) ....................................................................................... 182
The Civil War (Громадянська війна) ................................................................... 183
World War I (Перша світова війна) .................................................................... 184
The Northeast (Північний схід) ........................................................................... 185
The "Melting Pot" («Казан, що тане») ................................................................. 185
Cities of the Sea (Приморські міста) .................................................................. 187
New England (Нова Англія) ............................................................................... 188
The Base of Industry (Основа індустрії) .............................................................. 189
Outstanding Events from the History of America (Видатні події в історії США) .... 190
Washington — the Capital of the USA (Вашингтон — столиця США) ............... 192
Places of Interest in Washington (Визначні пам’ятки Вашингтона) .................... 193
### Zmiest

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cities and Towns of the USA (Великі і малі міста США)</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sights of the USA (Визначні пам'ятки США)</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Customs and Traditions (Звичаї та традиції в США)</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Food and Drink (Американська їжа і напої)</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>V. CANADA (КАНАДА)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada (Канада)</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographical Position of Canada (Географічне положення Канади)</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate and Nature of Canada (Клімат і природа Канади)</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outstanding Historical Events of Canada (Видатні історичні події Канади)</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Political System of Canada (Політична система Канади)</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canadian Cities and Towns (Великі і малі міста Канади)</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ukrainian Diaspora in Canada (Українська діаспора в Канаді)</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VI. AUSTRALIA (АВСТРАЛІЯ)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia (Австралія)</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographical Position of Australia (Географічне положення Австралії)</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate and Nature of Australia (Клімат і природа Австралії)</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand — the Country of Long White Clouds (Нова Зеландія — країна довгих білих хмар)</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outstanding Historical Events of Australia (Видатні історичні події Австралії)</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Political System of Australia (Політична система Австралії)</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Cities and Towns (Великі і малі міста Австралії)</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VII. ABOUT MYSELF (ПРО СЕБЕ)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Biography (Моя біографія)</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About Myself (Про себе)</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Birthday (Мій день народження)</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Family (Моя родина)</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Parents (Мої батьки)</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About My Mother (Про мою маму)</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Parents’ Working Day (Робочий день моїх батьків)</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Parents’ Vacation (Відпустка моїх батьків)</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Friend (Мій друг)</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appearance (Зовнішність)</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character (Характер)</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our House and Flat (Наш будинок і квартира)</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Favourite Room (Моя улюблена кімната)</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Friend’s House (Будинок моого друга)</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An Ideal House (Ідеальний будинок)</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The House of My Dream (Будинок моєї мрії)</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Working Day (Мій робочий день)</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After School (Після школи)</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our Duties about the House (Обов'язки по дому)</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Day Off (Мій вихідний)</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Everyday Meals (Моя повсякденна їжа)</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shops and Shopping (Магазини)</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animals (Тварини)</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pets (Домашні улюбленці)</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choosing a Career (Вибір професії)</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Future Profession (Моя майбутня професія)</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Plans for the Future (Мої плани на майбутнє)</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Good Beginning Makes a Good Ending (Гарний початок сприяє гарному закінченню)</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Citizen Is not a Profession (Бути громадянином — не професія)</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VIII. IN SCHOOL (У ШКОЛІ)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Our School (Наша школа)</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My School (Моя школа)</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our Classroom (Наш клас)</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The School Library (Шкільна бібліотека)</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Favourite Subject (Мій улюблений предмет)</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our Teacher of English (Наш вчитель англійської)</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Attitude to the Profession of a Teacher (Моє ставлення до професії вчителя)</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic Subjects (Шкільні навчальні предмети)</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At an English Lesson (На уроці англійської мови)</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the Physical Training Lesson (На уроці фізкультури)</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IX. EDUCATION IN OUR LIFE (ОСВІТА В НАШОМУ ЖИТТІ)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Education in Ukraine (Освіта в Україні)</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education in Great Britain (Освіта у Великобританії)</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
X. ENTERTAINMENT (РОЗВАГИ)

Music in Our Life (Музика в нашому житті) .............................................. 292
At the Theatre (У театрі) .............................................................. 293
At the Cinema (У кіно) ................................................................. 294
Cinema in Our Life (Кіно в нашому житті) ...................................... 296
Cinema (Кіно) ................................................................. 297
Cinema in Ukraine (Кіно в Україні) ............................................. 299
At the Museum (У музеї) .............................................................. 300
Kharkiv Museums (Харківські музеї) .............................................. 301
My Last Visit to the Circus (Мій недавній візит у цирк) ..................... 304
My Favourite Occupation (Моє улюблене заняття) ......................... 305
Hobby (Хобі) ................................................................. 307
My Hobby (Моє хобі) ................................................................. 308
Music in Ukraine (Музика в Україні) ............................................. 309
American Music (Музика Америки) .............................................. 311
Music in Great Britain (Музика Великобританії) ................................ 312
Madame Tussaud's (Музей Мадам Тюссо) ............................................ 314
My Favourite Video Film (Мій улюблений відеофільм) ...................... 315
Television in Great Britain (Телебачення у Великобританії) .............. 316
My Favourite TV Programme (Моя улюблена телепередача) .................. 317
My Favourite Cinema Actor (Мій улюблений актор кіно) ................... 318

XI. HOLIDAYS AND VACATION (СВЯТА И КАНІКУЛИ)

Holidays in Ukraine (Свята в Україні) ............................................ 320
Ukrainian Holidays (Українські свята) ........................................... 321
Ukrainian Traditions and Religious Festivals (Українські традиції і релігійні свята) .............................................................. 323
Easter in Ukraine (Великдень в Україні) .......................................... 325
New Year in Our Country (Новий рік у нашій країні) .................................................. 327
The First of September (Перше вересня) ................................................................. 328
UK Holidays (Свята у Великобританії) ............................................................... 329
Christmas in Great Britain (Різдво у Великобританії) ........................................... 331
New Year’s Eve in Great Britain (Новий рік у Великобританії) ......................... 332
Easter in Great Britain (Великдень у Великобританії) ........................................... 334
Boxing Day and Halloween (День на святках і Хеллоуїн) ................................. 336
National Celebrations in the USA (Национальні свята в США) ...................... 338
American Holidays (Американські свята) .......................................................... 340
Uniquely American Holidays (Тільки американські свята) ............................... 341
    July 4th — Independence Day (4 липня — День незалежності США) .............. 341
    The Fourth of July — Independence Day (Четверте липня — День незалежності США) ................................. 342
Thanksgiving Day (День віддяки) ................................................................. 344
Father’s Day (День батька) .................................................................................. 345
    Memorial Day (День пам’яті) ............................................................. 348
Labour Day (День праці) .................................................................................... 348
    Columbus Day (День Колумба) .......................................................... 348
Veterans Day (День ветеранів) ....................................................................... 349
    Presidents’ Day (День президентів) ..................................................... 350
    Martin Luther King Day (День Мартіна Лютера кінга) ..................... 350
Ethnic Holidays in the USA (Етнічні свята в США) ........................................ 351
Valentine’s Day (День Валентина) ................................................................. 352
    Halloween (Хеллоуїн) ................................................................................. 354
My Summer Holidays (Мої літні канікули) ........................................................... 354
My Winter Holidays (Мої зимові канікули) ......................................................... 355
Travelling (Подорожі) ....................................................................................... 357
    My Last Trip (Моя остання подорож) ................................................. 358

XII. SPORT IN OUR LIFE (СПОРТ У НАШОМУ ЖИТТІ)

Physical Training and Sports in Ukraine (Фізична культура і спорт в Україні) .................................................. 361
Sport in Our Life (Спорт у нашому житті) ............................................................ 363
The Olympic Games (Олімпійські ігри) ................................................................. 364
From the History of Basketball (З історії баскетболу). ........................................ 366
Can All People Become Champions? ( Чи усім бути чемпіонами?) 367
My Attitude to Sports (Моє ставлення до спорту) 368
Sports in Great Britain ( Спорт у Великобританії) 369

XIII. OUTSTANDING PEOPLE OF UKRAINE (ВИДАТНИ ЛЮДІ УКРАЇНИ)

Outstanding People of Ukraine (Видатні люди України) 372
Taras Shevchenko (Тарас Шевченко) 373
Modern Ukrainian Writers (Сучасні українські письменники) 376
Oles Honchar (Олесь Гончар) 376
Roman Ivanychuk (Роман Іваничук) 378
Ukrainian Painters (Українські художники) 379
Vasyl Kasiian (Василь Касіян) 379
Ilia Repin (Ілля Рєпін) 380
Ukrainian Musical Culture (Українська музична культура) 382
Ukrainian Musicians (Українські музиканти) 384
Mykola Lysenko (Микола Лисенко) 384
Ukrainian Scientists (Українські вчені) 385
Eugene Paton (Євген Патон) 385
Valentyn Voino-Yasenetskyi (Валентин Войно-Ясенецький) 386

XIV. OUTSTANDING PEOPLE OF GREAT BRITAIN (ВИДАТНІ ЛЮДІ ВЕЛИКОБРИТАНІЇ)

Outstanding People of Great Britain (Видатні люди Великобританії) 389
British Writers (Британські письменники) 391
William Shakespeare (Вільям Шекспір) 391
Oscar Wilde (Оскар Уайльд) 392
Rudyard Kipling (Редьярд Кіпінг) 394
Charlotte Brontë (Шарлотта Бронте) 395
Robert Burns (Роберт Бернс) 397
British Painters (Британські художники) 399
Joseph Turner (Джозеф Тернер) 400
Thomas Gainsborough (Томас Гейнсборо) 402
John Constable (Джон Констебль) 403
British Musicians and Actors (Британські музиканти й актори) 403
George Handel (Джордж Гендель) 403
Henry Purcell (Генрі Перселл) 405
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thomas Betterton’s an Ideal Model for Actors</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Томас Беттертон — ідеальний приклад для акторів)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles Spencer Chaplin (Чарльз Спенсер Чаплін)</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Scientists (Британські вчені)</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Ісаак Ньютон — великий англійський учений)</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cecil Frank Powell (Сесиль Франк Пауел)</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James Clerk Maxwell (Джеїмс Кларк Максвел)</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander Fleming (Олександр Флемінг)</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ernest Rutherford (Ернест Резерфорд)</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV. OUTSTANDING PEOPLE OF AMERICA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ЗНАМЕНИТІ ЛЮДИ АМЕРІКИ)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Famous People of America (Знамениті люди Америки)</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Writers (Американські письменники)</td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ernest Hemingway (Ернест Хемінгвеї)</td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O’Henry (O’Генрі)</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark Twain (Марк Твен)</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theodore Dreiser (Теодор Драйзер)</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerome David Salinger (Джером Девід Селінджер)</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe Hill (Джо Хілл)</td>
<td>430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Painters (Американські художники)</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John Sloan (Джон Слоун)</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winslow Homer (Вінслоу Хомер)</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rockwell Kent and His Works (Роквелл Кент і його картини)</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Musicians (Американські музиканти)</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Louis Armstrong and Billie Holiday (Луї Армстронг і Біллі Холідей)</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>George Gershwin (Джордж Гершвін)</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Scientists (Американські вчені)</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander Bell (Олександр Белл)</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albert Einstein (Альберт Ейнштейн)</td>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI. OUTSTANDING PEOPLE, WHOSE WORKS I LIKE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ВИДАТНІ ЛЮДИ, ПРАЦІ ЯКИХ МЕНІ ПОДОБАЮТЬСЯ)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Favourite Writers (Мої улюблені письменники)</td>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Favourite Writer (Мій улюбленений письменник)</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Favourite Painters (Мої улюблені художники)</td>
<td>447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Favourite Composers (Мої улюблені композитори)</td>
<td>448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Favourite Books (Мої улюблені книги)</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Зміст</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>My Favourite Literary Character</strong> (Мій улюблений літературний персонаж)</td>
<td>451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sherlock Holmes — a Famous Literary Character</strong> (Шерлок Холмс — знаменитий літературний герой)</td>
<td>453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>XVII. MASS MEDIA</strong> (ЗАСОБИ МАСОВОЇ ІНФОРМАЦІЇ)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass Media in Our Life (Засоби масової інформації в нашому житті)</td>
<td>455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass Media in the English-Speaking Countries (Засоби масової інформації в англомовних країнах)</td>
<td>456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UK Newspapers</strong> (Преса у Великобританії)</td>
<td>459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>American Press</strong> (Преса в Америці)</td>
<td>461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Press in Ukraine</strong> (Преса в Україні)</td>
<td>462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>XVIII. PROTECTION OF ENVIRONMENT</strong> (ЗАХИСТ НАВКОЛИШНЬОГО СЕРЕДОВИЩА)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Map of the World (Карта світу)</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Earth (Земля)</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>World Problems of Ecology</strong> (Світові проблеми екології)</td>
<td>468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protection of Environment in Ukraine</strong> (Захист навколишнього середовища в Україні)</td>
<td>470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Environmental Protection in Our Country</strong> (Захист навколишнього середовища в нашій країні)</td>
<td>471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Environmental Protection in Britain</strong> (Захист навколишнього середовища у Великобританії)</td>
<td>473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protection of Environment in the UK</strong> (Захист навколишнього середовища в З’єднаному Королівстві)</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protection of Environment in the USA</strong> (Захист навколишнього середовища в США)</td>
<td>476</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>XIX. SEASONS AND WEATHER</strong> (ПОРИ РОКУ І ПОГОДА)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Seasons and Weather</strong> (Пори року і погода)</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Seasons</strong> (Пори року)</td>
<td>481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring (Весна)</td>
<td>481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summer (Літо)</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autumn (Осінь)</td>
<td>483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter (Зима)</td>
<td>484</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### My Favourite Season (Моя улюбленна пора року)

485

### Today’s Weather and My Attitude to It
(Сьогоднішня погода і моє відношення до неї).

487

### The Weather Forecast (Прогноз погоди)

488

### XX. Life of Youth (Життя молоді)

#### Life of Youth in Great Britain and the USA
(Життя молоді в Англії і США)

490

#### The Life of American Youth (Життя молоді в Америці)

491

#### The Life of Ukrainian Youth (Життя української молоді)

492

#### Your Readiness to Help Someone
(Твоя готовність допомагати людям)

495

#### Politeness — a Sign of Culture
(Ввічливість — ознака культури)

496

### TEXTS FOR TOPICS

#### 1. Education

- Schools in Britain ............................................................... 498
- How Ukrainian and American Schools Differ ............................. 499
- Out-of-School Activities in British Schools .................................. 500

#### 2. People and Professions

- Mother Teresa ........................................................................... 501
- Princess Diana .......................................................................... 502
- Columbus, Christopher (1451—1506) (Spanish Cristybal Colyn) .... 504
- Ford, Henry (1863—1947) .......................................................... 505
- Disney, Walt(er Elias) (1901—1966) .......................................... 506
- Leonid Kadeniuk, the First Astronaut of the Independent Ukraine .... 507
- A Teacher .................................................................................. 508
- A Translator ............................................................................... 508
- A Diplomat ............................................................................... 508
- An Interpreter .......................................................................... 509
- A Secretary in a Busy Office ..................................................... 509

#### 3. Science. Inventors and Inventions

- Science in Ukraine .................................................................... 510
- The National Law Academy of Ukraine Named after Yaroslav Mudry 511
- Einstein ..................................................................................... 511
- Fahrenheit, Gabriel Daniel (1686—1736) .................................... 512
- Babbage, Charles (1792—1871) .................................................. 513
3міст

1. Celebration
2. Health
3. Sport
4. Literature. Arts
5. Sports
6. Health
7. Celebrations

4. Literature. Arts
   Daniel Defoe, the author of “Robinson Crusoe” ............................................. 525
   Arthur Conan Doyle .................................................. 526
   Agatha Christie ......................................................... 527
   Libraries ................................................................. 528
   The History of a Portrait .............................................. 529
   The Aivazovskyi Picture Gallery .............................................. 530

5. Sports
   Cheerleaders .......................................................... 532
   Popular Sports Around the World ........................................... 532
   American Football ....................................................... 534
   Football Association or Soccer .......................................... 535
   From the History of Tennis ............................................. 536
   The Most Popular Sports ............................................... 538
   Racing Driver .......................................................... 538

6. Health
   Good Health! .......................................................... 539
   Nutrition ............................................................... 540
   Smoking ............................................................... 541
   Drinking Smoke ...................................................... 541
   Alcohol ............................................................... 542
   Prepare for Battle .................................................... 543
   Invasion of the Viruses .............................................. 543

7. Celebrations
   Christmas in Ukraine .................................................. 544
   April Fool’s Day ..................................................... 545
   From the History of Easter ............................................. 546
   From the History of Halloween ........................................ 547
   Origins and Customs of Halloween ...................................... 548
   Bonfire Night Celebrations ........................................... 549
   Which New Year? ...................................................... 550
8. **Food**
   - Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) .......................................................... 551
   - Food Safety Act ......................................................................................................... 552
   - McDonald's ............................................................................................................... 552
   - Hamburger .................................................................................................................. 553
   - Peanut Butter ............................................................................................................. 553
   - Popcorn ...................................................................................................................... 554
   - Coca-Cola ................................................................................................................... 555
   - The Hot Dog ............................................................................................................... 555

9. **Leisure**
   - Pop Styles ................................................................................................................... 556
   - American Jazz ............................................................................................................ 557
   - My Favourite Singer Elvis Presley, the King of Rock and Roll .................................. 557
   - Triumph of Britney Spears ........................................................................................ 558
   - Robbie Williams ......................................................................................................... 560
   - The Beatles .................................................................................................................. 561
   - Jodie Foster is one of Hollywood’s most Respected Actresses ................................... 562
   - Whitney Houston ....................................................................................................... 563
   - Material Girl ................................................................................................................ 563

10. **Travelling, Traditions**
    - Travelling .................................................................................................................. 564
    - Holidays ..................................................................................................................... 564
    - How Are Your Telephone Techniques? .................................................................... 565
    - Road Safety ................................................................................................................. 566
    - A British Hotel .......................................................................................................... 567
    - Greeting Cards .......................................................................................................... 568
    - Cards, Hundreds of Cards! ....................................................................................... 568
    - “Politically Correct” English ..................................................................................... 570

11. **Nature**
    - Farm Work .................................................................................................................. 572
    - Pollution ....................................................................................................................... 573
    - Air Pollution ............................................................................................................... 574
    - Acid Rain .................................................................................................................... 575
    - The Disappearing Rainforest ..................................................................................... 576
    - Greenhouse Effect ..................................................................................................... 577
    - Ozone Layer ............................................................................................................... 578
    - Nuclear Safety ............................................................................................................. 579
    - Chernobyl .................................................................................................................... 580
    - Energy Conservation ................................................................................................. 582
    - Clean Air Act ............................................................................................................... 583
    - Friends of the Earth (FoE or FOE) ............................................................................ 583
    - Green Peace ............................................................................................................... 583
    - Natural Environment Research Council (NERC) ..................................................... 584
### 12. Ukraine

- The Ukrainian Language ........................................ 586
- Ukrainian Cuisine ................................................ 586
- Ukrainian Dwelling ............................................. 588
- Life of Youth in Ukraine ....................................... 589
- Culture and Science in Ukraine .............................. 590
- Ukrainian Hetmans ............................................. 591
- Khortytsia Island .............................................. 592

### 13. London

- Royal Family of Windsor ....................................... 592
- British Houses .................................................. 593
- Everything about Time ......................................... 595
- Some Facts about London ...................................... 596
- London ........................................................... 597
- The Best London Museums .................................... 597
- Sights of London ................................................ 599
- West End — Westminster Abbey— Changing of the Guard 601
- Travelling around London ..................................... 602

### 14. The UK

- English History .................................................. 602
- English Channel .................................................. 604
- Cities and Towns of England ................................ 605
- Stratford-upon-Avon ........................................... 608
- Cambridge ....................................................... 609
- Oxford ............................................................ 609
- Edinburgh ......................................................... 611
- The Edinburgh Festival ........................................ 612
- Cardiff (Welsh Caerdydd) ...................................... 613
- Belfast ............................................................. 613

### 15. English-speaking countries

- Canada .............................................................. 614
- Places to Visit in the USA ...................................... 615
- Los Angeles ....................................................... 616
- Museums in Washington ....................................... 617
- Canberra .......................................................... 618
- Art of the Australian Aborigines ............................ 618
- Wellington ....................................................... 619
- Ottawa ............................................................. 620
- American Indians ................................................ 620

**TOPICAL VOCABULARY** ........................................ 621
I. UKRAINE (УКРАЇНА)

● Ukraine
Ukraine is one of the largest countries of Eastern Europe.
Ukraine occupies an area of 603 700 km².
Its territory stretches for 893 kilometres from north to south and for 1316 kilometres from east to west.
It has state borders with Russia, Belarus and Moldova.
It also borders on Poland, Slovakia, Hungary and Romania.
In the south it is washed by the Black and the Azov Seas.
The major part of Ukraine is flat and only 5% of it is mountainous.
The two mountainous areas in Ukraine are the Carpathians and the Crimean Mountains.
The geographical position of Ukraine is very favourable because the country lies on the crossroads of the ways from Asia to Europe.
Ukraine has deposits of iron, manganese, coal, natural gas, oil and other mineral resources.
The main branches of industry are: coal and ore mining, iron and steel engineering, machine and ship building.

Besides, Ukraine has always been an agrarian country.
Traditionally crop-growing and cattle-breeding are being developed.

● Україна
Україна — одна з найбільших країн Східної Європи.
Україна займає площу 603 700 км².
її територія простягається на 893 км з півночі на південь і на 316 км зі сходу на захід.
Вона має державний кордон з Росією, Білорусією і Молдовою.
Вона також межує з Польщею, Словаччиною, Угорщиною і Румунією.
На північні вона омивається Чорним і Азовськими морями.
В Україні два гірських масиви — Карпати і Кримські гори.
Географічне положення України дуже сприятливе, оскільки вона розташована на перехресті шляхів з Азії в Європу.
В Україні є родовища заліза, марганцю, вугілля, природного газу, нафти й інших корисних копалин.
Основні галузі промисловості — вугільна, рудничодобувна, сталеліварна, верстатобудування і кораблебудування.
Крім того, Україна завжди була аграрною країною.
Тут традиційно займаються землеробством і тваринництвом.

Vocabulary:
to occupy [ˈɔkjupaɪ] — займати
to stretch [streɪtʃ] — простягатися
borders [ˈbɔːrdez] — кордони
Eastern Europe [ˈɪstən ˈjuərə] — Східна Європа

Carpathians [ˈkɑːrəθiən] — Карпати
Crimean Mountains [ˈkraɪmən maʊntənz] — Кримські гори
Asia [ˈeɪʃə] — Азія
Questions:
1. Where is Ukraine situated?
2. Which countries does it border on?
3. What seas is Ukraine washed by?
4. What natural resources is the country rich in?
5. What are the main products of Ukrainian industry?

We Live in Ukraine

We live in Ukraine.
Ukraine is a sovereign state. It has its own territory, government, national emblem, state flag and anthem.
The geographical position of Ukraine is very favourable for the development of its relations with the countries of Europe, as well as with the countries throughout the world.
It borders on Russia, Belarus, Moldova, Slovakia, Poland, Hungary, Romania.
It is washed by the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov.
The major rivers are the Dnieper, the Dniester, the Donets and others.
The territory of Ukraine consists mostly of plains.
The Ukrainian Carpathians and the Crimean Mountains make up only 5% of its area.
It is a well-developed industrial and agricultural country.
Ukraine has many natural resources.
The population of Ukraine is about 50 million people.
The biggest cities are Kyiv, Kharkiv, Zaporizhia, Dnipropetrovsk, Odesa, Lviv, Mykolaiv and others.
Ukraine has an ancient history. It has its own original culture and arts.

Ми живемо в Україні

Ми живемо в Україні.
Україна — суверенна держава.
Вона має свою територію, свій уряд, Національний Герб, Державний Прапор і Гімн.
Географічне положення України дуже сприятливе для розвитку відносин як з країнами Європи, так і всього світу.
Вона межує з Росією, Білорусією, Молдовою, Словаччиною, Польщею, Угорщиною і Румунією.
Вона омивається Чорним і Азовським морями.
Головні ріки — Дніпро, Дністер, Донець та інші.
Територія України в основному вкрита рівнями.
Українські Карпати і Кримські гори займають тільки 5% території.
У країні добре розвинені промисловість і сільське господарство.
В Україні багато корисних копалин.
Населення України складає біля 50 млн чоловік.
Найбільші міста — Київ, Харків, Запоріжжя, Дніпропетровськ, Оdesa, Львів, Миколаїв та ін.
Україна має давню історію.
У неї самобутня культура і мистецтво.
Over recent years people of Ukraine display a keen interest in the Ukrainian history and cultural heritage.

Nowadays Ukraine has established new relations with the countries throughout the world.

Ukraine is one of the members of the United Nations Organization (UNO) and participates in the work of many international organizations.

Scientists of Ukraine have made a great contribution to the world science.

**Vocabulary:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anthem</td>
<td>гімн</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>major</td>
<td>основний, головний</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well-developed</td>
<td>добре розвинений</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**United Nations Organization**

Організація Об’єднаних Націй

**Questions:**

1. What main cities do you know?
2. What mountains are there on the territory of Ukraine?
3. Name the mountains of Ukraine and how much do they make up of the whole area?
4. Has Ukraine an ancient history or a modern one?
5. What can you tell about recent years of independent Ukraine?

**State System of Ukraine**

The government of Ukraine underwent rapid change in the early 1990s.

The independence of Ukraine was proclaimed on the 24th of August, 1991.

Its sovereignty is now recognized by all the countries of the world.

Ukraine has its own state symbols, Constitution, currency and government.

According to the Constitution of Ukraine its territory is one and indivisible.

There is the Crimean Autonomous Republic in Ukraine, 24 administrative districts and the cities of Kyiv and Sevastopol.
Only the laws of Ukraine act on its territory. The power in the country is divided into legislative, executive and judiciary. The main legislative body of Ukraine is the Verkhovna Rada, which consists of 450 deputies. The elections to the Verkhovna Rada are held every 4 years on the last week of March. The deputies are elected by equal, secret or direct ballot. The highest executive body is the president. He can veto any decision of the Verkhovna Rada. The president is the commander-in-chief of the armed forces of Ukraine. He also represents the state in the international relations. Another part of the executive branch is the Cabinet of Ministers, which is headed by the Prime-Minister. The Cabinet of Ministers coordinates the daily administration of the government and may introduce bills to the Verkhovna Rada. The judiciary power belongs to the Constitutional Court and regional courts. The state symbols of Ukraine are the national flag and emblem. They root deeply in ancient times and have symbolic meaning. Azure-yellow state flag symbolizes the unity of blue sky and yellow wheat field. The little state emblem — trident — appeared first on the seals in times of Volodymyr the Great. The largest parties are the Communist party, the Socialist, the Democratic

На її території діють тільки закони України. Власть в країні поділяється на законодавчу, виконавчу і судову. Головним законодавчим органом в Україні є Верховна Рада, що складається з 450 депутатів. Вибори до Верховної Ради проводяться кожні чотири роки в останній тиждень березня. Депутати обираються рівним, таємним чи прямим голосуванням. Вищим виконавчим органом є Президент. Він може накласти вето на будь-яке рішення Верховної Ради. Президент є Головнокомандувачем Збройних сил України. Він також представляє державу в міжнародних відносинах. Інша частина виконавчої влади належить Кабінету Міністрів, очолюваному прем'єр-міністром. Кабінет Міністрів координує щоденну роботу уряду і може подавати закони до Верховної Ради.

Судова влада представлена Конституційним Судом і місцевими судами. Державна символіка України — Державні Прапор і Герб. Вони глибоко сягають коренями у давні часи і мають символічне значення. Синьо-жовтий Державний Прапор символізує єдність блакитного неба і стиглого пшеничного поля. Малий Державний Герб — Тризуб — з’явився вперше на печатках за часів Володимира Великого. Найбільші партії — комуністична, соціалістична, демократична,
and the Green parties and “Rukh” is the most famous social movement.

Vocabulary:

- administrative districts
  [ad′mɪnɪstrətɪv] — адміністративні області
- legislative
  [lɪdʒɪslətɪv] — законодавчий
- decision
  [dɪˈsɪʒn] — рішення
- elections
  [ɪˈlekʃnz] — вибори

Constitution of Ukraine

The Constitution is the main law of each state.

Each state enters into the Constitution the principles, according to which it lives.

That's why the Constitution is an integral part of the life of each state.

The Constitution of Ukraine was adopted on the 28th of June, 1996.

It confirmed the main principles of our state, the rights, freedoms and duties of every citizen.

It determines the order of the President elections, elections into the Verkhovna Rada, state symbols, independence and sovereignty of Ukraine.

The Constitution proclaims the freedom of speech, outlook and religion.

The church and different religious organizations are separated from the state, and from the school.

Questions:

1. When was the independence of Ukraine proclaimed?
2. How many administrative districts do you know? What district do you live in?
3. Who is the head of the state?
4. What is the highest legislative body of Ukraine?
5. What is the supreme judicial body?
That’s why it is impossible to make any religion compulsory or state. But the church and religion are not isolated from the society. The Constitution also proclaims the right for political unions, meetings and demonstrations and participation in governing the state. The duties of the citizens are also included into the Constitution. The family, childhood, maternity and paternity are guarded by the state. The military service and tax payment are also the duties of the citizens. Each citizen must observe the Constitution, preserve the freedoms and rights of other people and carry out his own duties.

Vocabulary:

- law [lɔː] — закон
- to adopt [ə'dɑːpt] — приймати
- symbol ['sɪmbəl] — символ
- church [tʃəʃ] — церква
- to separate ['seprərit] — розділяти, відділяти

Questions:

1. When was the Constitution of Ukraine adopted?
2. What did the Constitution confirm?
3. What does it proclaim?
4. Are the church and religion isolated from the society?
5. What duties of the citizens included into the Constitution do you know?

Geographical Position of Ukraine

Ukraine is situated in the south-east of Europe. It borders on Russia, Belarus, Moldova, Slovakia, Hungary, Poland and Romania. The territory of Ukraine is 603,700 km². The territory of Ukraine is mostly flat.
There are the Carpathian Mountains in the west and the Crimean Mountains in the south, but they are not high.

The main rivers are the Dnieper, the Dniester, the Buh, the Donets and others.

The Dnieper is one of the longest European rivers and one of the main sources of hydroelectric power in the country.

The coasts of the Azov Sea and the Black Sea are good for ports.

We have quite a lot of big sea ports, for example, Odesa, Kherson, Mykolaiv, Izmail, Mariupol and Kerch.

The geographical position of Ukraine is very favourable because the country lies on the crossroads of the ways from Asia to Europe.

Since the times of Kyivan Rus Ukrainian roads have been used for trade contacts.

Due to favourable climatic conditions, Ukraine is traditionally an agricultural country.

Wheat, maize and other corns, vegetables, all kinds of fruit are grown here.

The country is rich in natural resources, such as iron ore, coal, non-ferrous metals, oil, gas.

It has developed a varied industry, concentrated mostly in and around big cities, such as Kyiv, Zaporizhia, Dnipropetrovsk, Odesa, Kharkiv, Lviv, Mykolaiv and others.

Ukraine produces planes and ships, lorries and buses, electronic equipment and agricultural machines, TV and radio-sets and other goods.

На заході знаходяться Карпати, на півдні — Кримські гори, але вони не високі.

Головні ріки — Дніпро, Дністер, Буг, Донець та інші.

Дніпро — одна із найдовших рік Європи й одне з головних джерел гідроелектроенергії країни.

Узбережжя Азовського і Чорного морів гарні для портів.

У нас досить багато великих морських портів, таких як Одеса, Херсон, Миколаїв, Ізмаїл, Мариуполь і Керч.

Географічне положення України дуже сприятливе, тому що країна знаходиться на перехресті шляхів з Азії в Європу.

Із часів Київської Русі українські дороги використовувалися для торгово-вих контактів.

Завдяки сприятливим кліматичним умовам Україна традиційно є сільськогосподарською країною.

Тут вирощують пшеницю, кукурудзу й інші зернові культури, овочі, майже усі види фруктів.

Країна багата на корисні копалини, такі як залізна руда, вугілля, кольорові метали, нафта, газ.

У ній розвинені різні галузі промисловості, сконцентровані головним чином у зоні великих міст, таких як Київ, Запоріжжя, Дніпропетровськ, Одеська, Харків, Львів, Миколаїв та інші.

Україна виробляє літаки і кораблі, вантажівки і автобуси, електронне устаткування і сільськогосподарські машини, телевізори і радіоприймаčі та інші товари.
Vocabulary:

geographical [dʒɪˈɡræfɪkl] — географічний
favourable [ˈfeɪvərəbl] — сприятливий
Carpathian Mountains [ˈkɑːpəθjən maʊntənz] — Карпатські гори
Crimean Mountains [ˈkrɪmən maʊntənz] — Кримські гори
crossroads [ˈkrɔsˌrɔːdz] — перехрестя, роздоріжжя
trade [treɪd] — торговля

Questions:

1. Where is Ukraine situated?
2. What area does Ukraine cover?
3. What are the main rivers of Ukraine?
4. What are the main cities in Ukraine?

Climate of Ukraine

Ukraine occupies the territory that is situated in the eastern part of Europe.
There are the Carpathian Mountains in the west and the Crimean Mountains in the south.
Ukrainian territory is washed by the Azov Sea and the Black Sea.
These factors influence the climate of Ukraine.
It is mostly moderately continental.

But the Crimea differs greatly from the other parts of the territory.
The climate there is subtropical.
One can see the difference even in the average summer and winter temperatures.
The average summer temperature is 21—22 degrees above zero, but it is usually 23—26 °C in the Crimea.
The winter temperature in the Crimea is about 3 degrees above zero as the Crimean Mountains stop cold winds from the north.
The Carpathian Mountains differ from the rest of the Ukrainian territory in the amount of rains.

Клімат України

Україна займає територію, розташовану в Східній частині Європи.
На заході знаходяться Карпатські гори, а на півдні — Кримські.
Територія України омивається Азовським і Чорним морями.
Ці фактори впливають на клімат України.
Він здебільшого помірно континентальний.
Але Крим значно відрізняється від інших частин усієї території.
Клімат тут субтропічний.
Можна спостерігати різницю навіть між середньою літньою і зимовою температурами.
Улітку середня температура — 21—22 градуси вище нуля, а в Криму звичайно 23—26 °C.
Узимку температура в Криму близько трьох градусів вище нуля, тому що Кримські гори перешкоджають проникненню холодного вітру з північної.
Карпатські гори відрізняються від іншої частини української території кількістю опадів.
The highest rainfall is noticed in this part. 
Summer is usually dry and hot in Ukraine, but in the Carpathians showers and thunderstorms often occur.
Sometimes storms bring hail, which is very unfavourable for agriculture.
Winter is usually mild, without severe frosts.
Sleet is quite usual for Ukrainian cities and towns in winter.
Still winter snow cover is typical for the climate of Ukraine except the southern part.
Fogs are not frequent in this country, but they may happen in autumn or spring.
Due to its favourable climatic conditions, such as winter snow cover, enough amount of rains and hot days during the summer, Ukraine is traditionally an agricultural country.
It grows wheat, maize and other corns, vegetables and nearly all kinds of fruit.

Vocabulary:

- **mild** [maɪld] — м’який
- **sleet** [slɛt] — дощ зі снігом
- **maize** [meɪz] — кукурудза
- **fog** [fɒɡ] — туман

Questions:

1. What seas is Ukraine washed by?
2. What do you know about the Crimean climate?
3. What is the weather like in the Carpathian Mountains?
4. What weather is usual for Ukrainian cities?
5. What do you know about winter and summer in Ukraine?
Animals and Plants in Ukraine

Ukraine has mostly coniferous and deciduous trees, such as pine, oak, fir, beech and birch. The wealth of the forest includes not only timber, but also berries, mushrooms and medical herbs. The animal world of Ukraine is different. It has hundreds of species of animals and birds. They are: wolf, fox, badger, deer, elk, hamster, field mouse and so on.

The birds are: the sparrow, titmouse, grouse, owl. Some fur animals, such as mink, silver-black fox, musk-rat, brought into Ukraine, have aclimatized well.

In the rivers and lakes there are perch, bream, pike and carp. The Forest-Steppe zone contains the oak, elm, black poplar, willow, ash and pine. The animals include squirrels, foxes, hares and roes. The rivers and lakes are home to ducks, geese, storks and cranes. It also should be said that the animal life of the Carpathians is unique. Here you can find deer, brown bears, wild cats and pigs, black squirrels.

Bird life includes golden eagles and black woodpeckers. The plants of this region are also different and beautiful. It is well worth visiting, especially in spring.

Тварини і рослини України

В Україні переважно ростуть хвойні й листяні дерева, такі як сосна, дуб, ялина, бук і береза. Багатство лісів — це не тільки дерев, але і ягоди, гриби й лікарські трави.

Тваринний світ в Україні різноманітний. Він складається з тисяч видів тварин і птахів. Це вовк, лисиця, борсук, олень, лось, хом'як, польова миша і так далі.

Птахи — горобець, синиця, куріпка, сова. Деякі хутрові тварини, такі як норка, сріблясто-чорна лисиця, ондатра, привезені в Україну, добре акліматизувалися.

У ріках і озерах живуть окунь, ляще, щука і короп. У лісостеповій зоні ростуть дуб, в'яз, чорна тополя, верба, ясен і сосна.

З тварин водяться білки, лиси, зайцій і козулі. В ріках та озерах живуть качки, гусі, чаплі та журавлі. Треба сказати, що тваринний світ у Карпатах унікальний.

Тут ви можете знайти оленів, бурих ведмедів, диких котів і свиней, чорних білок.

До пташиного світу належать золотий орел і чорний дятел. Рослини цієї місцевості теж різні і красиві.

Це варто побачити, особливо на весні.
Questions:
1. What type of trees does Ukraine have?
2. What can you say about the animal world?
3. Are there fish in the rivers?
4. Describe the animal life of the Carpathians.
5. Describe the animals and plants of the region you live in.

Vocabulary:

- **coniferous** [kə'nɪfərəs] — хвойний
- **deciduous** [dɪ'sɪdʒuəs] — листяний
- **beech** [brɪtʃ] — бук
- **wealth** [welθ] — багатство
- **timber** ['tɪmber] — лісоматеріали
- **herb** [hɜːb] — трава
- **species** [ˈspɪəs] — види
- **badger** [ˈbædʒə] — борсук
- **perch** [pɜːtʃ] — окунь
- **Carpathians** [ˈkɑːrpaθəns] — Карпати
- **mink** [mɪŋk] — норка
- **musk-rat** [ˈmʌskræt] — ондатра

An Outstanding Event in Ukrainian History

There are such events in the life of every country that are kept through the passing centuries.

Ukraine has a long history which reflects different stages of its historical development, numerous periods of its prosperity and decay.

For a long period our country lived under the rule of Poland, Lithuania and Russia.

Ukraine formed part of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics under the name of Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic from 1922 to 1991.

On the 16th of July 1990 the Supreme Soviet of the Ukrainian republic adopted "The Declaration of the State Sovereignty of Ukraine".

Then on the 24th of August 1991 the Supreme Soviet adopted the "Act of the Independence of Ukraine".

It was a document of a great historical importance.

This document proclaimed the formation of the independent Ukrainian state.

Заменна подія в історії України

У житті будь-якої країни є події, що зберігаються протягом століть.

Україна має довгу історію, що відбиває різні стадії її історичного розвитку, численні періоди її процвітання й занепаду.

Довгий час наша країна жила під владою Польщі, Литви і Росії.

З 1922 по 1991 рік Україна входила до складу Союзу Радянських Соціалістичних Республік під назвою Українська Радянська Соціалістична Республіка.

16 липня 1990 року Верховна Рада Української республіки прийняла "Декларацію про державний суверенітет України".

Потім 24 серпня 1991 року Верховна Рада прийняла "Акт про державну незалежність України".

Цей文档 мав величезне історичне значення.

Він проголосив утворення незалежної Української держави.
From the moment of adoption of this act only the laws of Ukraine remained in action.

This historical decision was approved by the all-Ukrainian referendum which was held on the 1st of December 1991.

The Ukrainian people confirmed their wish to live in the sovereign and independent country.

Thus a new period in the history of Ukraine started.

It was the third attempt to achieve independence.

The first one was made by Bohdan Khmelnytsky in 1648—1654.

The second one may be considered the proclamation of the Ukrainian People’s Republic in 1917—1919.

Vocabulary:

- events [ˈɛvents] — події
- century [ˈsɛntəri] — сторіччя, вік
- to adopt [əˈdɒpt] — приймати
- to remain [riˈmein] — залишатися
- attempt [əˈtempt] — спроба
- Lithuania [ˌlɪθjuːˈeinjə] — Литва

Questions:

1. When was “The Declaration of the State Sovereignty of Ukraine” adopted?
2. When was Ukraine proclaimed an independent state?
3. Who was the first person to proclaim the formation of the independent Ukrainian state?
4. When was the proclamation of the Ukrainian People’s Republic?

An Episode from the History of Ukraine

I’d like to tell you about one of the episodes from the history of Ukraine.

During the war of independence of the Ukrainians in 1648—1654 the leaders of the war realized, that without the...
military help of Russia the complete victory over Poland was impossible. That’s why in 1648 Bohdan Khmelnytsky appealed to Russia with the request to admit Ukraine as a part of Russia. The tsar’s government started to give some military and economic help to Ukraine. In 1654 Khmelnytsky came to Pereyaslav, where he met Russian embassy headed by boyarin Buturlin.

General Rada was convoked in the city square. All layers of the population participated in it. Khmelnytsky in his speech at Rada explained the necessity of the union of Ukraine and Russia. All the participants of Rada vowed fidelity to Russia. Buturlin handed to Khmelnytsky the tsar’s order about the consent to admit Ukraine. Political and judicial status of Ukraine was determined by the terms of the treaty — so called March articles. 

Khmelnytsky vowed fidelity in the cathedral. The population vowed in their towns and villages. Economical, political and cultural relationships promoted the union. This union weakened the political role of Rech Pospolita, and defeated the plans of Vatican to catholicize Ukraine. It assisted the further development of Ukrainian people.

військової допомоги Росії остаточна перемога над Польщею неможлива. Тому в 1648 році Богдан Хмельницький звернувся до Росії з проханням прийняти Україну до її складу. Царський уряд почав надавати військову й економічну допомогу Україні. У 1654 році Хмельницький прибув до Переяслава, де зустрівся з російським посольством на чолі з боярином Бутурліним. На міській площі Переяслава була скликана загальна рада. У ній брали участь усі верстви населення. У промові на раді Хмельницький пояснив необхідність возз’єднання України з Росією. Всі учасники ради заприємлялися у вірності Росії. Бутурлін вручив Хмельницькому царський указ про згоду прийняти Україну до складу Росії. Політичне і правове становище України визначалося умовами договору — так званими Березневими статтями. Хмельницький дав клятву у соборній церкві. Населення приймало присягу на місцях. Економічні, політичні і культурні зв’язки сприяли возз’єднанню.

Це об’єднання послабило політичну роль Речі Посполитої і зруйнувало плани Ватикану обернути Україну в католицтво. Воно сприяло подальшому розвиткові українського народу.
Questions:
1. When did B. Khmelnytsky appeal to Russia?
2. What historical event happened in Pereyaslav?
3. Who headed Russian embassy?
4. Why did B. Khmelnytsky appeal to Russia?
5. What do you know about March articles?

Ukrainian Places of Interest

Ukraine is a country with the glorious past. It is rich in historical monuments and different places of interest.

Kyiv is the capital of Ukraine and one of the oldest cities in the Eastern Europe. It has already celebrated its 1500th anniversary. That’s why it is not surprising that a lot of interesting monuments are situated there, for example, the well-known to all Slavonic world St Sophia’s Cathedral and Kyivo-Pecherska Lavra. It is breathtaking to wander along the streets of the old town, to feel the breath of history.

But Ukrainian places of interest are situated not only in Kyiv. Near the small town of Kanev the monument to the Ukrainian national genius Taras Shevchenko is situated.

The museum, where the books, drawings and manuscripts of Shevchenko are kept, is situated in the village not far from Kanev.
Even the house, where he was born, is preserved.
It is very interesting to look at it.
One may come to Poltava and visit the museum of the famous Poltava battle, the field where Peter the Great defeated the Swedes.
One may also go to Zaporizhia, to the island of Khortytsia, where the Ukrainian Cossacks’ organization was born.
One can go to Odesa and walk along the boulevards, where Pushkin walked a long time ago, and one can touch the trees, which Pushkin touched.

It is also possible to visit the last house of Chekhov (now the museum in Yalta), where Chekhov lived, and where he wrote his last works, and where he died.

One may visit the famous symbol of the Crimea — the castle “Swallow’s Nest” or the residence of Russian tsars in Livadia.

It is possible to go through Gogol places in the Poltava Region and see Dickanka, Sorochintsy.
One can continue this list, because there is also Western Ukraine with the Carpathians and their legends, feudal lords’ castles and cathedrals, with their unique culture and nature.

There are a lot of places to see in Ukraine and to be proud of.
And I am glad to live in such a country, with all those beautiful monuments.

Vocabulary:

to celebrate [ˈselɪbreɪt] — святкувати, відзначати
St Sophia’s Cathedral [ˈseɪnt sɒˈfaɪəz kɑːðrəl] — Собор Святої Софії
impossible [ˈposəbl] — можливий
Swallow’s Nest [ˈswɒləʊz ˈnest] — Ластівчине Гніздо
Slavonic [slaˈvɒnɪk] — слов’янський
Questions:

1. What is the capital of Ukraine?
2. What main places of interest of Kyiv do you know?
3. What do you know about Kanev, Poltava and Odesa?
4. Do you like your native city? What places of interest do you have in your city/town/village?

Sorochinsky Fair

There is an old and very good tradition among the people in the Poltava Region to have a fair in the village of Velyky Sorochintsy. This Sorochinsky fair usually takes place at the end of summer. The village of Sorochintsy is widely known in the whole world because of this fair. M. Gogol, an outstanding writer, described it in his famous works. The people of Sorochintsy organized this incredible fair very well. The people from the nearest and the distant villages come to the fair and sell their products and buy consumer goods. Many guests from different parts of Ukraine, Russia, Poland, Bulgaria and from many other countries come to Sorochintsy to take part in this fair. The representatives from many plants and factories bring their products to advertise and sell them. They make agreements on co-operation between different enterprises and try to do their best to co-operate with each other.

At the Sorochintsy fair one can meet many interesting and talented people, one can listen to folk songs. Different exhibitions will show you the works of famous Ukrainian artists and ancient folk crafts.
You may visit video saloon and take part in different entertainments. You are all welcome to Sorotchintsy fair during the last decade in August.

**Vocabulary:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>incredible</td>
<td>незвичайний</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to advertise</td>
<td>рекламувати</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fair</td>
<td>ярмарок</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entertainment</td>
<td>розвага</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>craft</td>
<td>ремесло</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions:**

1. What is a good and old tradition in the Poltava Region?
2. Where does the fair take place?
3. How do the people of Sorochintsy organize this incredible fair?
4. Who takes part in the famous fair?
5. What do the representatives bring to the fair?
6. Do they make agreements on co-operation between different enterprises?

---

**Health Service in Ukraine**

In Ukraine medical help is available in hospitals, polyclinics, and also in medical centres in such places as factories and schools.

Health service is based on local therapists as they are the first who diagnose.

Some certain district is appointed to a polyclinic and this district is divided into several areas.

Each area is appointed to a certain therapist.

All the people who live in that area visit their appointed doctor.

Average number of people, visiting their doctor every day, is 20—25, but when there is an epidemic of influenza, this number is 50—60 people a day.

There is a problem which is nowadays widely discussed, that a person him- or herself can choose the doctor he or she wants to visit.

---

**Охорона здоров’я в Україні**

В Україні медичну допомогу можна отримати в лікарнях, поліклініках, а також у медичних центрах, розташованих на заводах і в школах.

Основу системи охорони здоров’я складають районні терапевти, що ставлять первинний діагноз.

Відповідний район прикріплений до поліклініки, і цей район поділяється на кілька частин.

Кожна частина закріплена за відповідним терапевтом.

Усі люди, що проживають у цьому районі, відвідують свого лікаря.

У середньому терапевта щодня відвідують 20—25 чоловік, а під час епідемії грипу до 50—60 чоловік за день.

У наші дні широко обговорюється питання вибору пацієнтом лікаря, якого хоче відвідувати.
A person can call his local therapeutist so that the doctor will come and see his patient. A therapeutist examines a patient, assigns some treatment, prescribes some medicines and gives a medical certificate. In a hospital there is also a therapeutic department, where pneumonia, bronchitis or asthma are treated. There also exists a wide network of ambulance service in Ukraine. It was founded in Kharkiv in 1905.

Nowadays there are a lot of fee-paying clinics where one can get any kind of medical help. Many of them are specialized: dentist offices, optician centres, etc.

There also exist some medical associations in Ukraine, such as Ukrainian Diabetes Association. About 1 million people in Ukraine suffer from this disease. There people can get medical help or medicines free of charge.

Vocabulary:
certain [sə:tən] — визначений, певний
health service [helθ ’s3:vɪs] — система охорони здоров’я
therapeutist [θərə’pjuːtɪst] — терапевт
influenza [ɪnflju’enzə] — грип
pneumonia [njuː’mɔːnɪə] — пневмонія, запалення легень
tendency [’tendənsi] — тенденція
fee-paying clinic [fiː’piːŋ ’klinɪk] — платна клініка
diabetes [daɪə’betɪz] — діабет
to suffer [sʌfə] — страждати

Questions:
1. Where do you have medical help in Ukraine?
2. What is health service based on in Ukraine?
3. What does a therapeutist usually do when he visits a patient?
4. When was ambulance service founded in Ukraine?
5. Is there private treatment in Ukraine?
The Doctor. Our Health

When we are ill, we call the doctor, and he examines us and diagnoses the illness.

When we have a headache, a stomachache, a sore throat, a cold or a pain in some part of the body, we call the doctor.

He takes our temperature and our pulse.

He examines our heart, our lungs, our stomach or the part where we have a pain and tells us what is the matter with us.

He says: “You have a slight temperature”, or “You have the flu”, or “You have heart disease”.

The doctor prescribes medicine, and gives us a prescription, which we take to the chemist, who makes the medicine.

The doctor says: “Take the medicine twice a day or three times a day, before or after meals”.

If you follow the doctor’s orders, you get better; if you disobey the doctor you may get worse or even die.

If we have a temperature, we must stay in bed and take the medicine prescribed.

If we cannot get better at home, we must go to hospital.

If we are too ill to walk there, we go in the ambulance.

When we have a toothache, we go to the dentist.

The dentist examines our teeth.

He says: “That tooth has a cavity. I must put in a filling”.

If the tooth is too bad, the dentist extracts it.

---

Доктор. Наше здоров'я

Коли ми хворі, ми викликаємо лікаря, і він обстежує нас і ставить діагноз.

Коли в нас болить голова, живіт, горло, маємо застуду чи біль у якомусь органі, ми викликаємо лікаря.

Він міряє нашу температуру і пульс.

Він обстежує наше серце, легені, живіт чи той орган, що болить, і говорити, що з нами.

Він говорить: «У вас невисока температура», чи «У вас грип», чи «У вас хворе серце».

Лікар прописує ліки і дає нам рецепт, який ми несемо в аптеку, де роблять ліки.

Лікар говорити: «Приймайте ліки 2 рази чи 3 рази на день, до чи після їжі».

Якщо ви виконуєте розпорядження лікаря, ви видужуєте, якщо ні — може стати гірше чи можна навіть померти.

Якщо в нас температура, ми по-винні залишатися в постелі й приймати запропоновані ліки.

Якщо ми не видужуємо вдома, потрібно лягти до лікарні.

Якщо ми дуже слабкі, щоб добратися туди пішки, нас відвезуть «шидкою допомогою».

Якщо в нас болить зуб, ми йдемо до дантиста.

Зубний лікар оглядає наші зуби.

Він говорити: «У тім зубі отвір. Його потрібно запломбувати». Якщо зуб дуже поганий, лікар вириває його.
Вocabulary:

to examine [igˈzæmɪn] — обстежувати
sore throat [ˈsɔːr ˈθrou] — хворе горло
temperature [ˈtemprətʃə] — температура
lungs [lʌŋz] — легені
flu [fluː] — грип
prescription [prɪˈskrɪpʃən] — рецепт

chemist [ˈkemɪst] — аптекар

to disobey [ˌdɪsəˈbeɪ] — ослухатися
ambulance [æmbjʊləns] — швидка допомога
cavity [ˈkævɪtɪ] — порожнина

to extract [ɪksˈtrækt] — видаляти

Questions:

1. What do we do when we are ill?
2. What does the doctor take?
3. Where do we take a prescription to?
4. What must we do if we have a temperature?
5. When do we go to the dentist?

Relations between Ukraine and English-Speaking Countries

There is no denying the fact that not so long ago Ukraine had very weak connections with other countries in the world.

But at present the situation has changed for the better.

As now Ukraine is a sovereign state it establishes new relations with the countries throughout the world.

Ukraine is one of the members of the United Nations Organization and participates in the work of many international organizations.

We have wide relations with Canada, the USA and Great Britain in policy, economics and culture.

Foreign Embassies of these countries work in Kyiv.

We have some joint political projects with the United States of America and Canada.

A lot of joint ventures have appeared in Ukraine recently.

Зв’язки України з англомовними країнами

Не будемо заперечувати того, що не так давно Україна мала слабкі зв’язки з іншими країнами світу.

Але в даний час ситуація змінилася на краще.

Оскільки Україна тепер є суверенною державою, вона встановлює нові стосунки з країнами усього світу.

Україна — один із членів Організації Об’єднаних Націй і бере участь у роботі багатьох міжнародних організацій.

У нас широкі зв’язки з Канадою, США і Великобританією в політиці, економіці й культурі.

У Києві працюють іноземні посольства цих країн.

Ми маємо кілька спільних політичних проектів зі США і Канадою.

Останнім часом в Україні з’явилося багато спільних підприємств.
Such big plants of ours as Cherkasy joint-stock company “Azot”, Gorlivka chemical plant “Stirol”, Kharkiv aircraft plant sell their products at the international market.

Scientific cooperation is also very important.

We have joint projects for space exploration with the USA and Canada. Cooperation in culture, education and sport is very important, too.

We exchange students and teachers with these countries.

The Ukrainian orchestras, pop and opera singers, ballet dancers are warmly received abroad.

A lot of tourists from English-speaking countries visit Ukraine every year.

It’s very important to mention that many people who are Ukrainians by origin live in Canada.

So we have particular relations with this country.

Canada was the first among the western states that recognized the state independence of Ukraine.

Many of the Ukrainians living now in Canada and other English-speaking countries don’t lose connections with Ukraine.

A lot of public organizations, educational establishments, religious organizations make considerable contribution to the development of our culture, literature and art.

Vocabulary:

to deny [di'nai] — заперечувати
relations [rɪ'leɪnз] — відносини
embassy [embæsɪ] — посольство

plant [plæ:nt] — завод

Questions:
1. What countries does Ukraine have relations with?
2. What program do we have with the countries abroad?
3. Where do Ukrainians by origin live?
4. What can you say about the cooperation in culture?

**Foreign Affairs of Ukraine**

Ukraine has different relations with many countries of the world.
We have wide relations with Canada, the USA, Great Britain and other countries.
Recently a great number of various joint ventures and economic, cultural and political projects have appeared in Ukraine.
Our specialists in different scientific fields improve their qualification abroad.
We also have programmes of students' and schoolchildren's exchange.
English, Canadian and American children visit Ukrainian families, go to Ukrainian schools, while Ukrainian children stay at their host families abroad.
These exchange programs help us to understand each other better, to study culture and traditions of other countries.
A lot of Ukrainians have emigrated to Great Britain.
That’s why in 1947 the Association of Ukrainians in Great Britain was founded.
This association has some Help Funds that sponsor different important actions.
The association gives help to the Ukrainian students who study in British Universities.
The same associations and societies exist in many other countries.

**Українські міжнародні відносини**

Україна має відносини з багатьма країнами світу.
У нас широкі зв'язки з Канадою, США, Великобританією й іншими країнами.
Останнім часом в Україні з’явилася велика кількість різних спільних підприємств та економічних, культурних і політичних проектів.
Наші фахівці в різних галузях науки підвищують свою кваліфікацію за кордоном.
У нас також діють програми по обміну студентами і школярами.
Англійські, канадські й американські діти живуть в українських родинах, ходять в українські школи, у той час як українські діти гостюють у їхніх родинах за кордоном.
Ці програми по обміну допомагають нам краще порозумітися, вивчити культуру і традиції інших країн.

Багато українців емігрували до Великобританії.
Тому в 1947 році у Великобританії було засновано Асоціацію українців.
У цій асоціації є фонди допомоги, що спонсують різні важливі акції.
Асоціація допомагає студентам з України, що навчаються в британських університетах.
Подібні асоціації і товариства існують у багатьох інших країнах.
From year to year the number of spheres of our relations with the countries abroad grow.

Every year a lot of tourists visit Ukraine, while the Ukrainians go to the countries abroad.

We hope that our relations with other countries will go on growing.

Vocabulary:
specialist  [ˈspeʃəlist] — фахівець
project  [ˈprədʒekt] — проект
exchange  [iksˈtnəndʒ] — обмін
fund  [fʌnd] — фонд

Questions:
1. What countries does Ukraine have relations with?
2. What are the exchange programs meant for?
3. What associations do you know in Great Britain?
4. Who visits our country every year?

The Political Situation in Ukraine and Abroad

The grave economic crisis in Ukraine greatly influences the political situation in this country.

The Ukrainian society, nowadays, is split into those who believe that the economic reforms must be continued and those who think that their course must be changed.

Many politicians criticise the Ukrainian Government for its inability to solve the urgent economic problems among which are the rise of unemployment, the delay of wage payments and the falling of industrial and agricultural production.

Another problem that splits the Ukrainian society is whether to develop more close relations with the West European countries or with...
the Russian Federation and other countries of the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS).

The newspapers are also discussing the reforms of the education system and the public health services.

Nowadays, many political parties hold their congresses to discuss the current political situation and to nominate their candidates for forthcoming elections.

The Ukrainian mass media also report on the work of the Verkhovna Rada and the Government.

They also inform about the visit of the Ukrainian President to any country and the official negotiations with the political leaders of this country.

Every evening our family watch TV news — we want to know what events are taking place at home and abroad.

At present, there are several hot points in the world: the civil wars rage in Angola, Afghanistan and Yugoslavia.

The heavy battles are reported in Angola and in Afghanistan: many refugees flee from the regions of conflict to the neighbouring countries every day.

There are also reports about terrorist attacks which have taken place recently in Northern Ireland, in Chechnya and in the Middle East: Arab terrorists exploded several bombs in public places in Israel.

The mass media also report the further integration of the European countries which have already had common currency — the Euro.

The political situation in the present day world is, sometimes, very dramatic but I believe that the mankind is steadily moving towards a better future.

Федерацією й іншими країнами Співдружності Незалежних Держав (СНД).

Газети також обговорюють реформи систем освіти й охорони здоров’я.

Сьогодні багато політичних партій проводять свої з’їзди, щоб обговорити поточну політичну ситуацію і висунути своїх кандидатів на наступних виборах.

Українські засоби масової інформації розповідають про роботу Верховної Ради й уряду.

Вони також інформують про візит українського президента в яку-небудь країну і про офіційні переговори з політичними лідерами цієї країни.

Щовечора наша родина дивиться телевізійні новини — ми хочемо знати, які події відбуваються в країні і за кордоном.

Зараз у світі існує кілька гарячих точок: громадянські війни бушують в Анголі, Афганістані й Югославії.

Повідомляють про важкі бої в Анголі й Афганістані; щодня багато біженців тікають із вогнищ конфлікту в сусідні країни.

Є також повідомлення про терористичні акти, що були недавно в Північній Ірландії, у Чечні і на Близькому Сході: арабські терористи підірвали кілька бомб у громадських місцях в Ізраїлі.

Засоби масової інформації також повідомляють про подальшу інтеграцію європейських країн, що вже мають загальну валюту — євро.

Політична ситуація у світі зараз дуже драматична, але я вірю, що людство поступово рухається до кращого майбутнього.
Voting in Ukraine

The political power in Ukraine is divided into three branches: executive, legislative and judicial.

The Verkhovna Rada, the Ukrainian Parliament, is the highest legislative body.

The executive power in Ukraine belongs to the President.

Both President and members of the Verkhovna Rada are elected.

The election takes place every four years.

All citizens of Ukraine who have reached the age of eighteen have the right to vote.

But only those, who have reached the age of twenty-one, have the right to be elected to the Verkhovna Rada.

Questions:

1. What influences the political situation in Ukraine? What do mass media inform about every day?
2. How do the mass media report about the work of the Verkhovna Rada (the Ukrainian President)?
3. Do you watch TV news in the evening? And what about your parents and other members of the family?
4. What are hot points in the world nowadays?
5. Are you an optimist or a pessimist as for the future of the mankind? Give arguments to prove your opinion.

Голосування в Україні

Політична влада в Україні розділена на три галузі: виконавчу, законодавчу і судову.

Верховна Рада, український парламент, є вищим законодавчим органом.

Виконавча влада в Україні належить Президенту.

І Президент, і члени Верховної Ради обираються.

Вибори відбуваються кожні чотири роки.

Усі громадяни України, що досягли вісімнадцяти років, мають право голосувати.

Але тільки ті, хто досягаєдвадцяти одного року, мають право бути обраними у Верховну Раду.
The candidates to the Presidency must be not younger than thirty years of age. The candidates to the Presidency or to the Verkhovna Rada can be nominated by a political party or any other political or social organisation or even by a group of voters.

During the election campaign the candidates make their programmes public. These political programmes are widely discussed in the mass media and on television.

When election day comes (it is usually Sunday), the people in Ukraine go to the polls to elect the members of the Verkhovna Rada or the President of Ukraine.

A voter gives his name and shows his passport. Then he receives his ballot-paper and may go to a cubicle to vote. Voting is secret. Then the voter casts his ballot-paper in the ballot box. Often the elections of the local government take place simultaneously with the elections to the Verkhovna Rada.

Vocabulary:

- **executive** [ɪgˈzekjʊtɪv] — виконавчий
- **judicial** [dʒuˈdɪʃl] — судовий
- **voter** [ˈvɔːtə] — виборець
- **to go to the polls** [ɡəʊ tju ə də′pɔːlz] — іти на вибори
- **ballot-paper** [ˈbælət ˈpeɪpə] — виборчий бюлетень
- **cubicle** [ˈkjuːbɪkl] — кабіна для голосування
- **ballot box** [ˈbælət bɔks] — урна для бюлетенів
- **simultaneously** [sɪməlˈtɛniəslɪ] — одночасно

Questions:

1. What branches is the political power in Ukraine divided into?
2. How often do the elections to the Verkhovna Rada take place?
3. Who can nominate the candidates to the Presidency or to the Verkhovna Rada?
4. How are the elections organized in Ukraine?
The Kyiv Region is an administrative region in northern Ukraine on both banks of the Dnieper River, formed on the 27th of February 1932.

In the north it borders on Belarus.

Its total area is 28 100 km$^2$.

The region is divided into 25 districts and 24 cities.

The region centre and national capital is Kyiv.

The region is located on the rolling plain of the middle Dnieper Basin.

Its northern part is located in the Polisia Lowland.

Its central and southwestern parts lie in the Dnieper Upland.

The main river is the Dnieper and its tributaries are the Prypiat, Uzh, Irpin, Desna and others.

The vegetation of the region’s central and southern parts is of the forest-steppe variety.

Forests cover 516 000 hectares of the area.

The region lacks mineral resources, but it has deposits of the building materials, kaolin, brown coal, and in the southwestern part there are deposits of gold, peat, diamonds.

The climate is temperate-continental and it is rather mild.

Ukrainians constitute 92.1 per cent of the population.

The Kyiv Region is an industrial and agricultural region.

---

Київська область

Київська область — адміністративна територія, розташована в північній Україні на берегах Дніпра й утворена 27 лютого 1932 року.

На півночі межує з Білорусією.

Її загальна площа 28 100 км$^2$.

Область поділяється на 25 районів і 24 міста.

Центр області і столиця країни — Київ.

Область розташовується на горбкуватій рівнині на території середньої течії Дніпра.

Північну частину створює Поліська низовина.

Центральна і південно-західна частини розташовані в межах Придніпровської височини.

Найбільша ріка — Дніпро з притоками Прип'ять, Уж, Ірпінь, Десна і іншими.

Рослинність центральної і південної частин області належить до лісоспівової.

Ліси займають 516 000 гектарів території.

В області мало корисних копалин, але є поклади будівельних матеріалів, каоліну, бурого вугілля, а в південно-заходній частині — поклади золота, торфу, алмазів.

Клімат помірно континентальний, досить м’який.

92,1 % населення — українці.

Київська область — індустріальна і сільськогосподарська.
It produces electrotechnical equipment.

Agricultural machines, excavators, refrigerators and different appliances are also produced there.

Agriculture mostly specializes in animal husbandry and plant growing.

Unfortunately it is not possible to use many soils of the region after the Chernobyl disaster.

Many famous Ukrainians were born there.

They are the hetman I. Mazepa, the author of the Ukrainian anthem P. Chubynsky, the cosmonaut P. Popovych and the painter K. Bilokur.

Vocabulary:

to border [ˈbɜːdrə] — межувати
rolling plain — горбкувата рівнина
to lack [læk] — відчувати нестачу
kaolin [ˈkeɪəlɪn] — каолін

pea[t [pi:t] — торф
appliances [əˈplaiənsiz] — прилади
disaster [dɪˈzaːstə] — катастрофа
anthem [ˈænθəm] — гімн

Questions:

1. Where is the Kiev Region situated?
2. What is its total area and population?
3. What resources deposits does it have?
4. What do the Kyiv Region’s enterprises produce?
5. What famous people were born there?

Kyiv — the Capital of Ukraine

According to the chronicles Kyiv’s first citadel was built in the period from the sixth to eighth centuries.

Kyiv bears the name of prince Kyi, who lived on the old Kyiv Hill in the sixth century.

Under the rule of Yaroslav the Wise Kyivan Rus with Kyiv as its capital reached the height of its power.

Київ — столиця України

Літописи говорять, що перше Київське укріплене поселення виникло у період з 6 по 8 століття. Київ має ім’я князя Київ, що жив на старокиївському пагорбі в 6 столітті. За часів правління Ярослава Мудрого Київська Русь і Київ як столиця досягли вершини могутності.
Nowadays Kyiv is a large political, industrial, scientific and cultural centre. Its population is about 3 million.

The city lies on both banks of the Dnieper. Kyiv is a garden city; only a seventh part of its territory is occupied by buildings. Kyiv has a well-developed industry.

Its factories and plants produce sea and river transport vessels, air liners, computers, motorcycles, consumer goods.

Kyiv is also one of the largest scientific centres. The Ukrainian Academy of Sciences and many research institutes are famous for their discoveries.

More than 10 000 students study at Kyiv Shevchenko National University.

There are over 20 higher educational establishments in Kyiv. Kyiv is also the centre of political life in Ukraine.

All major political events take place here. Kyiv is the largest ancient centre of national Ukrainian culture.

There are 20 museums, 1300 libraries, 41 theatres, 121 parks. Kyiv is growing and is being built, it also becomes younger and more beautiful.

Vocabulary:

hill [hɪl] — пагорок, пагорб
scientific [ˈsɛntɪfɪk] — науковий
to become [bɪˈkʌm] — ставати

ancient [ˈeɪnt] — стародавній, прадавній
Questions:
1. Where is Kyiv situated?
2. Whose name does Kyiv bear?
3. What is Kyiv nowadays?
4. What can you say about the cultural establishments in Kyiv?
5. Is Kyiv one of the largest scientific centres of Ukraine?

Places of Interest in Kyiv

Ukraine has a long history and rich culture.
That is why there are many places of interest there.
It is natural that the capital of the country, Kyiv, has the greatest number of them.
It is one of the oldest cities in Europe.
From time immemorial Kyiv has been the centre of Slavonic culture.
There are many ancient cathedrals and churches, museums and monuments, beautiful streets and squares in it.
The main street of Kyiv is certainly Khreshchatyk.
If you have never been to Kyiv you should start your sightseeing there.

The street is only one kilometre long but very impressive.
Kyiv is famous for its Kyivo-Pecherska Lavra.
More than 80 buildings were constructed on its territory during 900 years of the monastery’s existence.
Tourists always go to have a look at the monument to Bohdan Khmelnytsky, the outstanding Ukrainian statesman and military leader.
There are many other places of interest in Kyiv.
One of them is the State Historical Museum of Ukraine.
There are more than 50,000 exhibits on display.
The exposition tells us about the history of Ukraine and its culture from antiquity to the present days.
The Golden Gates, the Andreyevskaya Church, the monuments to Prince Volodymyr and Taras Shevchenko are worth seeing.
Kyiv Shevchenko Opera and Ballet House, Kyiv Ivan Franko Drama Theatre are well-known all over the country.
Any place is interesting in its own way and visiting it we come to know and love this country more.

Vocabulary:

natural [ˈnætʃrəl] — природний
immemorial [ɪmˈmiːmərɪəl] — незапам’ятний
famous [ˈfeɪməs] — відомий
to construct [kənˈstrʌkt] — будувати, споруджувати

Questions:
1. Is Kyiv an ancient city?
2. How old is Kyiv?
3. What is the main street in Kyiv?
4. What is Kyiv famous for?
5. Is Kyiv a garden city?

Khreshchatyk

The main street of Kyiv is certainly Khreshchatyk and you’d better start your sightseeing there.

The street is not very long but very impressive.
Khreshchatyk looks especially beautiful in spring when chestnut trees are in blossom.
The building of this street began at the end of the 18th century. The first houses were wooden. The forming of Khreshchatyk as a street began in the 1830s-40s. Three-storeyed buildings with shops, offices and banks were built at this time. In 1892 the first electric tram in the country connected Khreshchatyk with Podil. At the beginning of the 20th century Khreshchatyk became the shopping centre of the city. During the Second World War Khreshchatyk was destroyed. While being reconstructed the street was twice widened and a lot of new multistoreyed buildings appeared. All the buildings are built after the same architectural design. Beside government offices and administrative buildings, one can see cinemas, restaurants and cafes in this street. A lot of people go to Khreshchatyk every day. Some of them go shopping because there are many good shops and big markets there. Other people go to the cinema, look at the fountains or sit on the benches. People like the main street of Kyiv. It is one of the places of interest in Kyiv.

Vocabulary:

main [meɪn] — головний
reconstruction [rɪkənˈstrʌkʃn] — реконструкція

government [ˈgʌvənmənt] — уряд
to appear [əˈpɪə] — з’являтися
Questions:
1. What is the main street of Kyiv?
2. How long is it?
3. When did the building of Khreshchatyk begin?
4. When does Khreshchatyk look especially beautiful? Why?
5. Why do people like to go to Khreshchatyk?

The Autonomous Republic Crimea

The republic is situated on the Crimea peninsula.

It is between the Black Sea in the west and south, and the Sea of Azov — in the east.

In the east the Crimea is separated from Russia by the Kerch Strait.

The total area of the republic is 26100 km², population is 2,137,700.

It is divided into 15 regions and 15 cities.

Simferopol is the administrative centre of the Crimea.

The Crimea consists of two very different parts — treeless steppe of the Crimean Lowland in the northern and central parts, and the Crimean Mountains in the south.

The Crimean steppe, with its continental climate and steppe soils, occupies four-fifths of the territory.

The Crimean Mountains consist of a narrow range of foothills and a low mountain chain covered with forests and high pastures.

Below the mountains in the south there is a narrow coastal lowland — the Crimean southern shore — with a Mediterranean climate and vegetation.

The rivers are short and shallow.
On the northern slopes of the Crimean Mountains we find the Chorna, the Belbek, the Kacha, the Alma, the Salhyr and other rivers.

There are also salt lakes there, such as the Sasyk, the Aktash and others.

It is rich in natural resources, such as iron ore, natural gas, building materials, and salt from the lakes.

Russians constitute 67.2 per cent of the population, Ukrainians — 26.5 per cent and there are 300 000 Tatars.

Food production is the Crimea’s main industry.

It is followed by iron-ore mining, metallurgy and machine-building.

The main sea-ports are Kerch, Teodosia, Yalta, Sevastopol, and Yevpatoria.

The Crimea is also the main resort and tourist area of Ukraine.

Food industry produces canned goods, fish and wines.

Agriculture mostly specializes in plant-growing, vine-growing and animal husbandry.

The artist I. Ayvazovsky and the polar explorer I. Papanin were born in the Crimea.

The grave of the Ukrainian poet S. Rуданський is in Yalta.

Questions:

1. Where is the Crimea situated?
2. What do you know about the geography of the peninsula?
3. What natural resources is it rich in?
4. Who lives in the Crimea?
5. What do you know about the industry of the republic?
Cherkasy Region

The land of Cherkasy gave birth to Bohdan Khmelnytsky who was destined to become the leader of the nation which was surviving difficult times and who was the first to lay the foundation of Ukrainians' own state.

A great deal is being done on the territory of Cherkashchyna to restore the historical past, to bring back to the people the names of our countrymen. They are Ivan Padalka, a world-known artist, Todos Osmachka, a writer, Vasyl Avramenko, a choreographer, and many others.

The monuments and memorial plaques have been put up to commemorate their activities.

The place to which Ukrainians from all over the world make a pilgrimage is the Taras Shevchenko Memorial sites-zvenigorodka area and the sacred Kaniv Mountain where the soul of the nation's spiritual father rests in its eternal peace.

Among the seven historical and cultural reserves the world-famous Sofievka Dendrological Park in Uman is a real pearl.

The reform of our economy is the main direction of the changes to be effected.

Those ones in the Cherkasy Region who work in the agrarian sector are changing their attitude to the economic reforms.

In general, with regard to foreign investments into economy the Cherkasy Region occupies the fourth place among the other regions of Ukraine. The most beneficial contracts were signed with the firms from the USA, Germany, France, Poland and other countries.

Черкаська область

Черкаська земля дала життя Богдану Хмельницькому, якому було призначене стати лідером нації, що пережила різні часи, і він був першим засновником української держави.

Багато чого робиться в Черкаській області для відновлення історичного минулого, щоб співвітчизники знали імена героїв минулих років.

Це такі імена, як Іван Падалка, всесвітньо відомий художник, Тодось Осмачко, письменник, Василь Авраменко, хореограф, і багато інших.

Пам’ятники і меморіальні дошки були встановлені під час святкування їхніх ювілеїв на згадку про їх діяльність.

Місце паломництва украинців з усього світу — Шевченківський меморіальний комплекс — звенигородська земля і священна Канівська гора, де душа нації, її духовний батько спочиває у вічному спокої.

Серед семи історичних і культурних пам’ятників знаходиться всесвітньо відомий Софіївський дендропарк в Умані — справжня перлина.

Реформа нашої економіки — головний напрямок змін, що відбуваються.

Ті, хто працює в аграрному секторі, змінюють своє ставлення до економічних реформ.

У цілому, завдяки іноземним капіталовкладенням в економіку Черкаської області, вона посідає четверте місце серед інших регіонів України.

Найвигідніші контракти були підписані з фірмами зі США, Німеччини, Франції, Польщі й інших країн.
Vocabulary:

to destine ['destain] — призначати

to survive [sər'vaiv] — пережити

(to події)
to restore [ris'tɔː] — поновлювати; повернути

to commemorate [kə'meməreit] — святкувати (річницю)

pilgrimage ['pilgrimidʒ] — паломництво

regard [rɪ'gɑːd] — повага

with regard to — mɑːm: завдяки

beneficial [benə'fɪʃəl] — вигідний

investment [in'vestmənt] — вклад; капіталовкладення

Questions:

1. Whose birth did the land of Cherkasy give to Ukraine?
2. Who was Bohdan Khmelnytsky?
3. What is being done on the territory of Cherkasy?
4. What Ukrainian countrymen became world-known?
5. What does the reform of our economy mean?

Cherkasy

The city is situated on the right bank of the Kremenchuk Reservoir, on the Dnieper.

The total area of the city is 75 km².

Its population is 297 200.

The city consists of two regions.

Cherkasy was first mentioned in documents in the 13th century as a fortified city in the Kiev principality of the Grand Duchy of Lithuania.

Later it became a county centre of Kyiv gubernia.

The historical monuments are the building of the former zemstvo council (1907—1912), the building of the “Slavianskaya” Hotel (the beginning of the 20th century), the building of the former commercial bank (1904).

Today Cherkasy is an important economic and cultural-educational centre.

The main branches of industry are the chemical industry, the machine-building industry, the food industry and light industry.
The famous plants are “Photopribor”, “Impulse”, the scientific-industrial association “Rotor”, meat processing and packing factory, a silk complex, and many others.

Cherkasy is a very green city.

Plants occupy 2470 hectares of its territory, among them there are 6 parks.

The places of interest are the Museum of Nature, the zoo, and a regional museum.

Theatre-goers and music-lovers have an opportunity to visit the Drama Theatre named after T. Shevchenko, the puppet theatre and the philharmonic society.

Cherkasy is the home of a Pedagogical University, the branch of the Kyiv Civil Engineering University, 8 technical secondary schools and 19 branches of scientific-research and planning institutions.

There is the river port, the airport, the railway station and the bus station in the city.


Черкаси — зелене місто.

Зелені насадження займають 2470 гектарів його території, серед них 6 парків.

До визначних пам’яток належать Будинок природи, зоопарк і краєзнавчий музей.

Театрали й аматори музики мають можливість відвідати драматичний театр ім. Т. Шевченка, ляльковий театр і філармонію.

Великими центрами освіти є педагогічний університет, філія Київського політехнічного університету, 8 технікумів і 19 філій науково-дослідних і проектних інститутів.

У місті є річковий порт, аеропорт, залізничний вокзал і автовокзал.

**Vocabulary:**

- **reservoir** [ˈrezərvə:] — водосховище
- **Kyiv principality** [ˈkɪjɪv, prɪnsəˈpælɪtɪ] — Київське князівство
- **Duchy** [ˈdʌtʃi] — герцогство
- **association** [əˌsəʊsɪˈeɪʃn] — об’єднання
- **fortified** [ˈfɔrtɪfaɪd] — зміцнений
- **a silk complex** — шовковий комбінат
- **planning institution** — проектний інститут

**Questions:**

1. Where is the city situated and what is its area?
2. When was it first mentioned?
3. What are the historical monuments?
4. Why is it an important economic centre?
5. Is it a green city? Why?
**Chernihiv Region**

Geopolitical situation of the Chernihiv Region is of a rather peculiar character.

Russian Bryansk Region and Belarus Gomel Region are Chernihiv’s old-time neighbours.

The Friendship monument situated on State borders of Ukraine, Russia and Belarus is the Chernihiv Region visiting-card.

The Chernihiv Region is a “potato land”, it is the land of flax growing and processing, the land of cattle breeding.

It is also the land of “big chemistry”, gas and oil, it is Ukraine’s textile shop.

Though difficult economic situation of recent years made them change their economic directions in some cases, and step backward in others, they managed to hold up economic recession in all spheres and to improve social situation.

The regional centre is divided into 2 districts: Desnyansky and Novozavodsky.

There are 1200 rivers in the region. The main waterway is the Desna river.

It is the only region in Ukraine that produces fire trucks, cord fabrics, pianos and several kinds of equipment for agrarian and industrial complexes.

The priority industrial branches are the food industry, the light industry, the fuel industry, the machine building industry and the metalworking industry.

Agriculture is an important part of the region’s national economy.

---

**Чернігівська область**

Досить своєрідний характер геополітичної ситуації в Чернігівській області.

Давніми сусідами Чернігова є Брянська область Росії і Гомельська область Білорусії,— така візитна карта Чернігівського регіону.

Чернігівська область — це «kartопляна земля», земля вирощування і переробки льону, земля тваринництва.

Це також земля «великої хімії», газу і нафти, «tekstильна фабрика» України.

Хоча важке економічне становище останніх років змусило в деяких випадках змінити напрямок економічного розвитку і відступити назад, їм удалось зупинити економічний спад у всіх сферах життя і поліпшити соціальну ситуацію.

Регіональний центр поділяється на 2 райони: Деснянський і Новозаводський.

В області 1200 річок. Головна водяна артерія — Десна.

Це єдиний регіон в Україні, що робить пожежні машини, шнурі, піаніно, кілька видів устаткування для аграрного і промислового комплексів.

Пріоритетними галузями є харчова, легка, паливна, машинобудівна і металообробна промисловість.

Сільське господарство — важлива складова народного господарства регіону.
Vocabulary:
peculiar [ˈpɜːkjuəri] — особливий
flax [flæks] — льон
breeding [ˈbrɪdɪŋ] — розведення
recession [riˈsefn] — спад
fabric [ˈfæbrik] — тканина
priority [praɪəˈrɪti] — пріоритет
fuel [ʃjuːl] — пальне

Questions:
1. How is the regional centre divided?
2. What is the main river in Chernihiv?
3. What does Chernihiv produce?
4. What are the priority industrial branches in Chernihiv?

Chernihiv

Chernihiv is situated on the high right bank of the Desna River. Its total area is 64 km², and its population is 301 100.

The city is divided into two districts. Chernihiv is one of the most ancient cities of Ukraine. It was founded in the 7th century. It was named by the prince Chorny.

The first mention of Chernihiv in the chronicles occurred in 907. The city was incorporated into Kievan Rus in the 9th century and became one of the most important and wealthiest cities of the realm. In the 14th century it was incorporated into the Grand Duchy of Lithuania. In 1503 it came under Moskovy’s rule. During this period the city was very enlarged. Then it was transferred to Poland and in 1654 it became a part of Russia. The old centre of the city is called “Ditynets”.

Чернігів

Чернігів розташований на високому правому березі Десни. Місто займає площу 64 км², кількість населення 301 100 жителів.

Місто розділене на два райони. Чернігів — одне з найдавніших міст України. Він був заснований у 7 сторіччі. Свою назву одержав від князя Чорного.

Перша згадка, відповідно до літопису, припадає на 907 рік. Місто увійшло до складу Київської Русі в 9 столітті і стало одним з найбільш важливих і багатих міст держави.

У 14 сторіччі Чернігів належав до Великого Литовського князівства. У 1503 році став частиною Московської держави. У цей період місто було розширене.

Потім воно відійшло до Польщі, а в 1654 році стало частиною Росії. Старий центр міста називається «Дитинець».
There are some historical monuments such as the Cathedral of the Transfiguration (11th century), the Borys and Hlib Cathedral (1120—1123), the Catherine Church (sanctified in 1715). There is also a famous Yeletsky Monastery there.

The main branches of industry are food-processing, light industry and woodworking, the building materials industry. The major industrial enterprises include the industrial association “Pozhmachina”, “Chernihivmebel”, “Tiutiun”, machine-building plants, and a woodworking plant.

The museums of the city are worth visiting. There is a historical museum, the M. Kotsiubynsky Literary-Memorial Museum, and an art museum. There is also the Music and Drama Theatre, a young spectator’s theatre, and the philharmonic society in the city.

Chernigiv is the city of education and science. The school-leavers can enter the pedagogical and technological universities and 8 technical secondary schools. There are a lot of scientific-research and planning institutions.

Vocabulary:

ancient [æŋˈjənt] — стародавній
Cathedral of the Transfiguration [kæθədrəl əv də `trænfsɪgərəˈneɪʃən] — Преображенський Собор

Questions:

1. When was Chernihiv founded?
2. Who was it named by?
3. How is the city centre called?
4. What are the major industrial enterprises?
5. What are the museums and historical monuments in the city?
Chernivtsi Region

The Chernivtsi Region is one of the youngest in Ukraine. It was formed on the 7th of August, 1940 as a result of integration of the northern part of Bukovyna and the Khotyn district of Bessarabia into Ukraine.

The region is divided into 11 administrative districts.

The ethnic structure of the Chernivtsi Region is quite varied — Ukrainians, Romanians, Moldavians, Russians, Jews, Poles, Belorussians.

The climate is moderate continental.

The region has deposits of mineral resources such as: gas, oil.

Near the Dniester and in the basin of the Prut, there are large deposits of gypsum and limestone.

The lands of the Chernivtsi Region contain mineral waters.

The Chernivtsi Region is unique in production of certain types of equipment for thermal power plants, oil-refineries, knitwear factories, and semiconductor instruments.

The main kinds of farming products of the region are grain cultures, sugar beets, potatoes, vegetables, fruit, flax, milk, eggs, pork, beef.

There is a significant scientific potential concentrated in the Chernivtsi Region.

Chernivtsi State University, Chernivtsi Medical Institute and Chernivtsi branch of Kyiv Trade and Economy Institute offer higher education to many people.

Чернівецька область

Чернівецька область — одна з наймолодших областей України. Вона була утворена 7 серпня 1940 року у результаті приєднання північної частини Буковини і Хотинського району Бессарабії до України.

Область поділяється на 11 адміністративних районів.

Етнічна структура Чернівецької області дуже різноманітна — українці, румуні, молдовани, росіяни, євреї, поляки, білоруси.

Клімат помірно континентальний.

Область має у своєму розпорядженні поклади мінеральних ресурсів, таких як газ, нафта.

Поруч із Дністром і басейном Пруту є велика кількість покладів гіпсу і вапняку.

У ґрунтах Чернівецької області є джерела мінеральних вод.

Чернівецька область унікальна у виробництві певних видів устаткування для теплоенергетичних і нафтоочищувальних заводів, трикотажних фабрик і напівпровідникових інструментів.

Головні види сільськогосподарської продукції області — зернові культури, цукровий буряк, картопля, овочі, фрукти, льон, молоко, яйця, свинина, яловичина.

У Чернівецькій області сконцентрований важливий науковий потенціал.

Чернівецький державний університет, медичний інститут і філія Київського торгово-економічного інституту дають багатьом можливість одержання вищої освіти.
There is also the institute of National Academy of Sciences of Ukraine, Chernivtsi branches of the institute of world economy and international relations, the institute of material studies and a number of other scientific-research institutions.

Vocabulary:

varied [ˈveərid] — різноманітний

gypsum [ˈdʒɪpsm] — різновид гіпсу

to refine [rɪˈfain] — очищати

knitwear factory [ˈnɪtwə ˈfæktəri] — трикотажна фабрика

pork [pɔ:k] — свинина

beef [bɪ:f] — яловичина

semiconductor [ˈsemɪkənˈdəktə] — напівпровідник

significant [ˈsɪɡnɪfɪkənt] — значний, великий

Questions:

1. What is the Chernivtsi Region like?
2. When was it formed?
3. What districts is the region divided into?
4. What can you say about the ethnic structure of the Chernivtsi Region?
5. What are the main kinds of farming products?

Chernivtsi

Chernivtsi is situated in the Western Ukraine on both banks of the Prut River.

Its total area is 153 km² and it is divided into 3 districts.

Its population is 257 300.

The city was founded in the second part of the 12th century.

The first mention of Chernivtsi in the chronicles occurred in 1207.

In the middle of the 14th century it belonged to Moldavia and stood on its border with Poland.

In 1744 it became a part of Austria, and since 1917 — a part of Romania.

In 1940 the Southern Bukovyna joined the Ukrainian Republic.

Чернівці

Чернівці розташовані в Західній Україні на обох берегах ріки Прут.

Місто займає площу 153 км² і розділене на 3 міських райони.

Чисельність населення складає 257 300 жителів.

Місто було засновано в другій половині 12 століття.

Перше згадування в літописі припадає на 1207 рік.

У середині 14 століття місто належало Молдавії і знаходилося на кордоні з Польщею.

У 1744 р. воно стало частиною Австрії, а з 1917 — частиною Румунії.

У 1940 р. Південна Буковина приєдналася до Української Республіки.
The Prut divides the city into two parts. Chernivtsi is a green city with the Botanical Gardens, the arboretum, 8 parks and many public gardens. The architectural monuments are the building of the Chernivtsi University, the former residence of the Bukovynian metropolitan, the city hall, St Nicholas's Church (1607) and the building of the theatre. Chernivtsi is the city of theatres, museums and libraries. It is famous for the Chernivtsi University, the Medical University, the Institute of Trade and Economy, 12 technical secondary schools and many scientific-research institutions. The Kobylanska Music and Drama Theatre, the puppet theatre and the philharmonic society are very popular among the people. In Chernivtsi the writer Yu. Fedkovych, the composer V. Ivasiuk, the singer M. Yaremchuk were born. The museums are worth visiting. They are the Yu. Fedkovych Memorial Museum, the O. Kobylanska Memorial Museum, an art museum, and a regional-history museum. The major branches of industry in Chernivtsi include light industry, the food-processing, the machine-building and metal-working industries. The well-known enterprises include the Fedkovich fine goods factory, the “Bukovyna” souvenir factory, the furniture factory and many others.

Vocabulary:

arboretum [əˈbɔːrɪtəm] — дендрарій
metropolitan [ˌmɛtrəˈpolɪtən] — митрополит
the city hall — ратуша
regional-history museum — краєзнавчий музей
border [ˈbɔːdə] — кордон
Questions:
1. When did the first mention of Chernivtsi occur in the chronicles?
2. What divides the city into two parts?
3. Why is it a green city?
4. What are the architectural monuments?
5. What famous people were born there?

Dnipro Region

The Dnipro Region is an administrative region in southeastern Ukraine lying in the middle and lower basin of the Dnieper River.

Its area is 31,900 km², and its population is 3,745,000.

It is divided into 22 regions and 20 cities.

The region’s capital is Dnipropetrovsk.

Its western section is a part of the Dnieper Upland, in the south — the Black Sea Lowland.

The main river is the Dnieper with its tributaries.

They are the Mokra, the Inhulets, the Orel and the Samara.

The small rivers become very shallow in the summer.

The Dnipro Region is rich in mineral resources.

It contains large deposits of iron ore, manganese ore, nickel, anthracite coal, natural gas and gold, lignite, and building materials.

The climate is temperate-continental, with rather cold winters, and hot summers.

Ukrainians constitute 73 per cent of the population.
The Dnipropetrovsk Region is one of the leading industrial areas of Ukraine.

Ferrous metallurgy is the most important branch of industry.

It is followed by machine-building, light industry, and food industry.

Machine-building and metal-working industries produce metallurgical and mining equipment, metal products, manufacturing equipment, electric and transport equipment, agricultural machinery.

The Dnipropetrovsk Region is a region of intensive grain growing, animal husbandry, and dairying.

The main crops are sunflowers, grains, winter wheat and vegetables.

The region has a dense network of railways.

Questions:
1. Where is Dnipropetrovsk Region situated?
2. What can you say about its geographical position?
3. What rivers are there?
4. What products are produced there?
5. What does the region’s agriculture specialize in?
The city is one of the main industrial, cultural and scientific centres of Ukraine.

Such branches of industry as metallurgical, chemical, light and food industries are well-developed in Dnipropetrovsk.

The city is a centre of space rocket production in Ukraine.

Nine higher educational establishments, including the University, work in the city.

As Dnipropetrovsk is a large cultural centre of Ukraine, it has 5 theatres, 3 museums, including the Museum of Fine Arts and the Historical Museum, the Philharmonic Society and observatory.

The city was founded in 1776.

Since the 18th century the Palace of Potyemkin, now the Students' Palace, has preserved.

Another famous building is the Preobrazhensky cathedral, built in the 19th century.

The city is situated on both banks of the Dnieper.

Different parts of the city are connected with each other by three bridges.

The underground line, which has been recently opened, also runs under the river.

Vocabulary:

- space rocket production ['speis ˈrǝkit prəˈdækʃn] — космічне ракетобудування
- to connect [kǝˈnekts] — зв'язувати
- railway junction [ˈreɪli ˈdʒʌŋkʃn] — залізничний вузол

Questions:

1. Where is Dnipropetrovsk situated?
2. What are the main branches of industry in Dnipropetrovsk?
3. How many theatres and museums are there in the city?
4. When was it founded?
5. What are the famous buildings in Dnipropetrovsk?
Donetsk Region

The Donetsk Region is the easternmost region of southern Ukraine. Its southern part is washed by the Sea of Azov. Its total area is 26 500 km$^2$. The population of the region is 5 000 900. It is divided into 18 regions and 48 cities. Donetsk is the region’s capital. The Donetsk Region consists of an undulating plain dissected by river valleys, ravines, and gullies. The southeastern part consists of the Donets Ridge (up to 350 m in elevation). In the northwest the ridge meets the Dnieper Lowland; in the west, the Zaporizhia Ridge; and in the south, the Azov Upland (elevation 300 m), which slopes southward and changes into the Azov Lowland. The largest river of the region is the Donets, with its tributaries the Kazennyi Torets, the Bakhmutka, and the Luhanka. The region lies in the steppe belt. Forests and thickers cover 5 per cent of the territory. The region is rich in mineral resources, such as bituminous coal, rock salt, clay, mercury and others. The climate is temperate-continental, with hot summers and cold winters. Ukrainians constitute more than 50 per cent of the population of the region.

Донецька область

Донецька область — це східний район південної України. З півдня вона омивається водами Азовського моря. Її загальна площа 26 500 км$^2$. Населення області 5 000 900 жителів. Вона поділяється на 18 районів і 48 міст. Обласний центр — місто Донецьк. Горбкувата рівнина з багатьма річковими долинами, ущелинами і ярами створює рельєф області. У південно-східній частині знаходиться Донецький гірський кряж (висотою над рівнем моря до 350 м). На північному заході кряж межує із Дніпровською низовою: на заході — із Запорізьким гірським кряжем, а на півдні — з Азовською височиною (висота над рівнем моря — 300 м), що опускається до півдня і переходить в Азовську низовину. Найбільша ріка області — Донець із притоками Казенний Торець, Бахмутка і Луганка. Область розташована в степовій зоні. Ліси і хащі займають 5 % території. Область багата на корисні копалини: кам’яне вугілля, кам’яну сіль, глину, ртуть та інші. Клімат помірно континентальний, зі спекою влітку і холодною зимою. Українці складають більше 50 % населення області.
The Donetsk Region is one of the most developed industrial regions of Ukraine. It contains the principal mining and metallurgical complex of Ukraine. It is a large producer of energy and has strong chemical, construction, light-manufacturing, and food industries. The region ranks first in Ukraine in coal extraction. There are about 120 mines there. Agriculture mostly specializes in meat- and dairy-cattle raising.

On the banks of the Donets a lot of famous people were born. They are: the poet V. Sosiura, the writer, actor and film-director L. Bykov, the artist Kuindzhi, the singer A. Solovianenko, the composer S. Prokofiev, the cosmonaut L. Kyzym and literary critic I. Dziuba.

Vocabulary:

- **undulating plain** [ˈʌndjʊleɪtɪŋ plɛɪn] — горбкувата рівнина
- **dissected** [dɪˈsektɪd] — розсічений
- **ridge** [rɪdʒ] — гребінь гори
- **bituminous coal** [bɪˈtjuːmɪnəs kɔul] — кам'яне вугілля
- **tributary** [ˈtrɪbjʊtəri] — приплив
- **to rank** [ræŋk] — посідати перше місце
- **extraction** [ɪkˈstrækʃn] — видобуток
- **manufacturing** [mænjuˈfæktʃərɪŋ] — виробництво
- **gully** [ˈgʌli] — глибокий яр

Questions:

1. Where is the Donetsk Region situated?
2. What is it washed by?
3. What can you say about its geography?
4. Why is it a developed industrial Region of Ukraine?
5. Name famous people, who were born there.

**Donetsk**

Donetsk is a large industrial, scientific and cultural city of Ukraine.

**Донецьк**

Донецьк — велике промислова і культурне місто України.
It is the centre of coal-mining industry.
It is also the main fuel base of Ukraine.

It was founded in 1869.
Until 1924 it was called Uzovka.

From 1924 to 1961 it was called Stalino, and only in 1961 it became Donetsk.
The city is situated on the river Kalmius.
It is very famous for its waste banks.
Now the city produces metallurgic and mining equipment, refrigerators, bicycles.
Food and light industries are also well-developed in Donetsk.
Donetsk houses five higher educational institutions.
Among them there is a well-known Donetsk Medical Institute and Donetsk Polytechnical Institute, that train highly-qualified specialists.
There are 3 theatres and two museums in the city: Donetsk Opera and Ballet House, Donetsk Museum of Fine Arts are among them.

Vocabulary:
coal [kɔʊl] — вугілля
waste banks [ˈweɪst ˈbæŋks] — терикони
food [fjuːd] — їжа, харч

Questions:
1. What kind of city is Donetsk?
2. What kind of centre is it?
3. When was it founded? How many names did it have?
4. What river is it situated on?
5. What is Donetsk famous for?
**Ivano-Frankivsk Region**

The Ivano-Frankivsk Region is located in the south-west of Ukraine at the juncture of the East-European Plain and the Ukrainian Carpathians.

Its territory is 13,900 km². Population — 1.5 million people.

The Ivano-Frankivsk Region is the 18th region of Ukraine as for the population and the 22nd as for the territory.

It comprises 14 administrative districts and 5 cities and towns of the regional subordination.

The region is rich in natural resources.

There are the deposits of oil and gas, peat, phosphates and magnesium salts, large deposits of clay, gypsum, limestones and gravel.

Forests of the region occupy a large territory with a lot of valuable industrial species of timber.

The agricultural lands are valuable too.

As for local water resources, the Ivano-Frankivsk Region ranks the second among the regions of Ukraine.

The largest rivers of the region are the Dniester, the Cheremosh, and the Prut.

The economy of the region is of industrial-agricultural character.

The industrial potential of the region is mainly concentrated in Ivano-Frankivsk, Kolomyya.

---

**Івано-Франківська область**

Івано-Франківська область розташована на південному заході України на з’єднанні Східноєвропейської рівнини й Українських Карпат.

Її територія складає 13 900 км². Населення — 1,5 млн чол.

Івано-Франківська область посідає 18-те місце в Україні за чисельністю населення і 22-ге — за площу.

Вона складається з 14 адміністративних районів і 5 великих і маленьких міст обласного підпорядкування.

Регіон багатий на природні ресурси.

Є поклади нафти і газу, торфу, солей фосфору і магнію, великі запаси глини, гіпсу, вапняку і гравію.
Vocabulary:

juncture [dʒʌŋktʃə] — з’єднання
plain [pleɪn] — рівнина
to comprise [kəmˈpraiz] — включати в себе
subordination [səbədəˈdʒɪnən] — підпорядкування, субординація

peat [pi:t] — торф
clay [kleɪ] — глина
magnesium salt [mæɡˈnɪzəzjəm] — магнієва сіль

Questions:
1. Where is the Ivano-Frankivsk Region located?
2. What is its territory?
3. Is Ivano-Frankivsk the 18th region of Ukraine as for the population?
4. How many administrative districts are there in the Ivano-Frankivsk Region?
5. What can you say about natural resources in this region?

Ivano-Frankivsk

Ivano-Frankivsk is an important railway and highway junction, the second largest city in Galicia.

It is situated in the western part of Ukraine in very picturesque surroundings near the confluence of the Bystrytsia-Nadvirnianska and Bystrytsia-Solotvynska, which are the tributaries of the Bystrytsia.

The total area of the city is 3890 hectares.

It was called Stanislav until 1962.

Its population is 233,000.

Ukrainians constitute the most part of the population.

They care about the national culture and their language.

Among the city’s architectural monuments are the city hall (now the regional museum, rebuilt in 1870), the former Jesuit college and church, the former Armenian baroque church with two steeples.
There are a lot of monuments in the city. They are the monuments to T. Shevchenko, Ivan Franko and Adam Mytkyvtch. Tourists can visit different museums.

Located in the city are the Ivano-Frankivsk Ukrainian Music and Drama Theatre, a puppet theatre, a region philharmonic society, different clubs and cinemas. The main educational institutions in Ivano-Frankivsk are the institutes of pedagogy, medicine, petroleum and gas. The city’s enterprises produce electronic equipment, compression machinery. The city is famous for the industrial complex «Carpathpressmash». Light industry, textile industry and food processing are also developed there.

There is a railway station, bus stations and an airport in the city. Railway connects the city with all other cities of Ukraine and other countries. Ivano-Frankivsk is a very green city. It has many parks and a 38 hectares artificial lake.

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>picturesque surroundings</td>
<td>мальовнича місцевість</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steeple</td>
<td>єзуїтська колегія</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petroleum</td>
<td>нафта</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compression machinery</td>
<td>компресорне устаткування</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artificial</td>
<td>штучний</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Questions:
1. What is the total area of Ivano-Frankivsk?
2. What do the people care about?
3. Are there any architectural monuments in the city?
4. What do the city’s enterprises produce?
5. Why is the city an important transport junction?

Kamianets-Podilskyi

Kamianets-Podilskyi is one of the oldest cities of Podillia, Ukraine and Europe.
The city stands out on the high banks of the Smotrych River and is fortified by high stone walls, old towers and bastions.
Every historic period changed the topography and architecture of the Old Town.
Here we can see Orthodox and Catholic temples.
The Turks even built their own church during their 27 years reign of Kamianets-Podilskyi.
But in spite of this strange mixture of buildings of different ages and styles the architecture of the city is an example of historic development and unity.
And there are more than 60 historic architectural relics in Kamianets-Podilskyi among which the fortress with its numerous towers and a stone (Turkish) bridge which connects the fortress with the Old Town and takes a particular place.
It connects years and centuries.
Of course, every city, every village merits a separate detailed story.
Yet the world knows little about them.

Kam’янець-Подільський

Кам’янець-Подільський — одне із найстаріших міст Поділля, України і Європи.
Місто піднімається на високих берегах ріки Смотрич, укріплене високими кам’яними стінами, старими вежами і бастіонами.
Кожен історичний період змінював топографію, архітектуру Старого міста.
Ми можемо бачити тут православний і католицький храми.
Турки навіть побудували в Кам’янець-Подільському свою церкву під час свого 27-літнього панування.
І, незважаючи на дивне змішання будинків різних століть і стилів, архітектура міста є прикладом історичного розвитку і єдності.
У Кам’янець-Подільському є понад 60 історичних архітектурних реліквій, серед яких фортеця з численними вежами і кам’яним (турецьким) мостом, що з’єднує фортецю зі старим містом і займає особливе місце.
Він з’єднує роки і сторіччя.
Звичайно, кожне місто, кожне село заслуговують на окрему докладну історію.
І все-таки світ мало про них знає.
In spite of all different historical circumstances, natural culture, literature and the spirit of the nation have not died.

**Vocabulary:**
- **to fortify** ['fɔːtɪfaɪ] — укріпляти, зміцнювати
- **orthodox** ['ɔːθədɒks] — православний
- **relic** ['relik] — реліквія
- **to merit** ['merɪt] — заслуговувати
- **circumstances** ['sə:kəmstənsiz] — обставини
- **temple** ['templ] — храм
- **reign** ['reɪn] — царювання, володарювання
- **spirit** ['spɪrɪt] — дух

**Questions:**
1. What is one of the oldest cities of Podillia?
2. Where does this city stand?
3. Every historic period changed the architecture of the Old Town, didn’t it?
4. What did Turks build there?
5. What is the architecture of the city like?

**Kharkiv Region**

The region is situated in the northeastern part of Ukraine and it used to be called Slobozhanshchina. The region borders on Russia. The area of the Kharkiv Region is 31 400 km². Its population is about 3 000 000 people. There are 27 districts and 17 cities in the region. Kharkiv is the administrative centre of the region. The most part of the territory is situated in the Dnieper Lowland. The region is rich in mineral resources, especially natural gas. It also contains oil, bituminous and brown coal, rock salt, sand, chalk, fire clay, ochre and mineral springs.

**Харківська область**

Область розташована в північно-східній частині України, що колись називалася Слобожанщиною. Область має кордон з Росією. Площа — 31 400 км². В області проживає близько 3000000 чоловік. Область поділяється на 27 районів і 17 міст. Обласний центр — місто Харків. Велика частина території розташована в Придніпровській низовині. Область багата на корисні копалини, особливо природний газ. Є також нафта, кам’яне і буре вугілля, кам’яна сіль, пісок, крейда, вогнетривка глина, вохра, джерела мінеральної води.
The climate of the Kharkiv Region is moderate continental with cold winters and hot summers.

The longest river is the Siverskyi Donets with its tributaries the Udy, the Mozh, the Oscol, the Velykyi Burluck.

The region is situated mainly in the forest-steppe zone.

The Kharkiv Region is one of the well-developed regions in Ukraine.

Machine-building and metal-working are the most important branches of industry.

Such industrial giants as Kharkiv tractor plant, “Serp and molot”, “Communar”, the turbine plant, “Electrotyzhmesh”, “Ukr-electromash” and others are well-known outside Ukraine.

These enterprises produce turbines for power stations, generators and electric motors.

The city and its region supply the country with diesel locomotives, planes, bycicles, instruments, ball-bearings, bulldozers, lathes and equipment for many branches of industry.

Light, printing, sugar and food processing industries are also well-developed in the region.

Agriculture specializes in grain and sugar-beet growing, and meat- and dairy-processing.

The Kharkiv Region has a dense network of the roads.

The biggest railway junctions are Kharkiv, Lozova, Kupiansk, Merepha and Lyubotyn.

A lot of famous people were born in the Kharkiv Region.

Клімат помірно континентальний з прохолодною зимою і спекою влітку.

Найбільша ріка — Сіверський Донець із притоками Уди, Мож, Оскіл, Великий Бурлук.

Більша частина області розташована в лісостеповій зоні.

Харківська область — одна з найрозвиненіших областей України.

Машинобудування і металообробна промисловість є найголовнішими галузями.


На цих підприємствах виготовляють турбіни для електростанцій, генератори, електромотори.

Місто й область постачають країні тепловози, літаки, велосипеди, інструменти, підшипники, бульдозери, верстати й устаткування для багатьох галузей господарства.

Досить добре розвинена в області легка, поліграфічна, цукрова і харчова промисловість.

Сільське господарство спеціалізується на вирощуванні зернових культур і цукрового буряку, а також на виробництві м'ясної та молочної продукції.

В області густа транспортна мережа.

Найбільші залізничні вузли — Харків, Лозова, Куп'янськ, Мерефа і Люботин.

Багато видатних людей народилось у Харківській області.
They are: writers H. Kvitka-Osnovianenko and H. Khotkevych, the historian D. Yavornytskyi, the founder of Kharkiv University V. Karasin, artists I. Repin and S. Vasylkovskiyi.

A great Ukrainian philosopher and poet H. Skovoroda spent here last years of his life.

Vocabulary:

bituminous coal [bɪ'tjuːmənəs kɔʊl] — кам'яне вугілля
tributaries ['trɪbjuːtəriz] — припливи (річки)
lathe [leɪθ] — верстат
ochre ['əʊkə] — вохра
turbine ['tɜːbain] — турбіна

Questions:
1. Where is the Kharkiv Region situated and what is its area?
2. What mineral resources is the region rich in?
3. What are the main rivers of the region?
4. Why is the Kharkiv Region one of the well-developed regions in Ukraine?
5. What famous people were born there?

Kharkiv

Kharkiv is quite an old city.
It was founded about 350 years ago.

The city is situated on the plateau surrounded by the Kharkiv and the Lopan rivers.

According to the popular legend the city is named after Cossack Kharko.
Kharkiv is the historical capital of Slobidska Ukraine.

With the foundation of Kharkiv University in 1805 the city became an important educational and cultural centre of Ukraine and the Russian Empire as a whole.

Such cultural figures as Kvitka-Osnovianenko, Hulack-Artemovsky, Kostomarov, Repin lived and worked in Kharkiv.
Kharkiv was the capital of Ukraine since 1919 till 1934. Today Kharkiv is the second largest city in the country. About 2 million people live here. Kharkiv is one of the largest industrial centres in Ukraine. Its numerous enterprises produce planes, tractors, electronic, mining and medical equipment, TV-sets, refrigerators, paints and cosmetics, clothing and textiles. Furniture and printing industries are well developed in Kharkiv. Kharkiv is one of the major cultural and scientific centres of Ukraine. There are many schools, higher educational establishments, research institutes in Kharkiv. There is the Scientific Library, the Historical and Natural Science Museums and the Museum of Fine Arts in Kharkiv. The city supports a circus and six professional theatres. Kharkiv is very beautiful, especially in spring. There are over 2500 streets and 26 squares in the city. The largest parks are Gorky Park, Shevchenko Garden with the Zoo, Artem Park, the Forest Park and some others. The city is ornamented with a large number of monuments. The most prominent of them is the one to T. Shevchenko built in 1935.

Vocabulary:

quite [kw۶ːt] — досить, достатньо
legend [ˈledʒənd] — легенда
capital [ˈkæpitl] — столиця
equipment [ ekˈwɪpment] — обладнання
establishment [ɪsˈteɪblmənt] — установа, заклад
Questions:
1. Where is Kharkiv situated?
2. What is the population of Kharkiv?
3. When was the city founded?
4. How many streets and squares are there in Kharkiv?
5. What is the most prominent monument in Kharkiv?

Kherson Region

The Kherson Region is situated in the south of Ukraine, the zone of steppes, which reaches the Dnieper.

The territory of the region is situated on the Black Sea Lowland.

The area is 28 500 km².

The population is more than 1 000 000 people.

Administrative division: the area consists of 18 rural districts and 3 municipal districts in the Kherson city.

The region has 9 cities, 3 of them are regional subordinates, 30 towns and many villages.

There are more than 50 nationalities in the region.

The share of the Ukrainians is the biggest.

Agricultural-climatical conditions: the region is divided into 6 zones: cereals and industrial crops are cultivated in the northern and eastern areas, vegetable-growing, gardening, vinegrowing are cultivated in the southern and central areas.

The last years are characterised by the basic tendency of the land transmission to the farmers and population.

The public sector remains the main producer of the agricultural production.

Херсонська область

Херсонська область розташована на півдні України, у зоні степів, що досягають Дніпра.

Територія області розташована в Причорноморській низовині.

Площа складає 28 500 км².

Населення більше 1 000 000 чоловік.

Адміністративний розподіл такий: 18 сільських районів і 3 муніципальних райони в Херсоні.

В області 9 великих міст, три з них обласного підпорядкування, 30 районних центрів і безліч сіл.

В області проживає більше ніж 50 національностей.

Більша частина — українці.

За сільськогосподарськими кліматичними умовами регіон поділяється на шість зон — хлібні і промислові: зерно вирощують у північних і східних районах, овочеві, садово-городні і виноробні культури — на півдні й у центральних районах області.

Останні роки характеризуються тенденцією до передачі землі фермерам і населенню.

Громадський сектор залишається головним виробником сільськогосподарської продукції.
Vocabulary:

- **lowland** [ləʊˈlænd] — низина
- **administrative** [ədˌmɪnɪstrətɪv] — адміністративний
- **division** [dɪˈvɪʒn] — розподіл
- **vinegrowing** [vaɪnˈgrəʊɪŋ] — виноградарство
- **rural** [ˈrʊrəl] — сільський
- **municipal** [mjʊˈnɪsɪpəl] — муніципальний
- **cereal** [ˈsiərɪəl] — хлібний
- **transmission** [trənzˈmɪʃn] — передача; трансмісія

Questions:

1. Where is the Kherson Region situated?
2. Is the territory situated on the Black Sea Lowland?
3. What can you say about the population of the Kherson Region?
4. How many districts are there in the Kherson Region?
5. The region is divided into 6 zones, isn’t it?

● Kherson

Kherson is the region capital, a large sea and river port and railway junction.

It is situated in the steppe of the Black Sea Lowland on both banks of the Dnieper River directly north of the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov.

Kherson was founded in 1778 as a fortress to protect the southern frontiers.

The first mention of Kherson in the chronicles occurred in 1737.

Among the city’s architectural monuments are the remnants of the fortress walls and gates, the Black Sea Hospital, the naval arsenal (18th century), and the Cathedral of the Transfiguration (1781).

The city’s many museums and theatres are open to the visitors.

There is a regional-history museum, an art museum, a planetarium.

Theatre-goers have an opportunity to visit the Ukrainian Drama Theatre, a puppet theatre and a philharmonic orchestra.

● Херсон

Херсон — обласний центр, великий морський і річковий порт і залізничний вузол.

Він розташований у степах Причорноморської низовини на берегах Дніпра на північ від Чорного й Азовського морів.

Херсон був створений у 1778 році як фортеця для захисту південних кордонів.

У літописах уперше згадується в 1737 році.

До архітектурних пам’яток належать залишки фортеці, Чорноморський госпіталь, Оруженна палата (18 століття) і Преображенський собор (1781 р.).

Двері багатьох музеїв і театрів відкриті для відвідувачів.

Тут є краєзнавчий музей, художній музей, планетарій.

Театри мають можливість відвідувати Український драматичний театр, ляльковий театр і філармонію.
It is a large educational centre. It has 4 higher educational institutions, 14 technical secondary schools and several research institutes.

The total area of Kherson is more than 200 km², the most part of it is covered with parks and public gardens. There are two arboreta and the Botanical Gardens. The population of the city is 362 000.

And they work on the city’s enterprises. Ocean tankers, freighters, agricultural machinery, electric machines, glass products are produced there. There is an oil-refining plant, fat-processing plant, and many wine-making factories.

Highways, air and railway lines connect the city with all other cities of Ukraine and Russia.

Questions:
1. What is the geographical position of Kherson?
2. When was it founded and first mentioned in the chronicles?
3. What are the city’s museums and theatres?
4. Is it a green city? Why do you think so?
5. What can you say about the population of the city?

Vocabulary:

to protect [prəˈtektn] — захищати
frontier [ˈfrʌntɪə] — кордон
chronicles [ˈkrənɪklz] — літопис
Cathedral of the Transfiguration [kəθəl də trænsfɪgəreɪn] — Преображенський Собор

Questions:
1. What is the geographical position of Kherson?
2. When was it founded and first mentioned in the chronicles?
3. What are the city’s museums and theatres?
4. Is it a green city? Why do you think so?
5. What can you say about the population of the city?

Khmelnyskiy Region

The Khmelnyskiy Region is located in the western part of Ukraine in the Volyno-Podilska highlands.

Questions:
1. What is the geographical position of Kherson?
2. When was it founded and first mentioned in the chronicles?
3. What are the city’s museums and theatres?
4. Is it a green city? Why do you think so?
5. What can you say about the population of the city?
The region borders on Vinnytsia in the east, Ternopil in the west, Rivne in the north-west and Chernivtsi in the south.

The area of the Khmelnytskyi Region is 20600 km².

As for its administrative division, the region has 13 cities, 20 districts and many villages.

The largest cities are Khmelnytskyi, and Kamianets-Podilskyi.

The other cities and towns are rather small as for their population.

Population of the Khmelnytskyi Region is 1 509 000.

The region is located in a favourable geographical area.

It is a gateway to both the East and the West.

The transport system of the region is quite developed.

The most important railway and other roads of Ukraine go through the territory of the Khmelnytskyi Region.

The highspeed railways “Kyiv-West” and the “Western Europe-Kyiv” are being designed and will go through the Khmelnytskyi Region.

The region energetics is based upon extracted coal and oil, natural gas and local peat-bed.

The light industry branch is represented by textile factories.

There are shoe, knitted-goods, haberdashery and other factories in Khmelnytskyi.

In short, this is Khmelnytchyna.

It is generously opened for all those who want to see the roads and paths of a small but beautiful land.

Область межує з Вінницькою облас­тью на сході, Тернопільською на заході, Рівненською на північному заході і Чернівецькою на півдні.

Площа Хмельницької області — 20 600 км².

Щодо адміністративного розподі­лу — в області 13 міст, 20 районів і багато сіл.

Найбільші міста — Хмельницький і Кам'янець-Подільський.

Інші міста досить невеликі за кіль­кістю населення.

Населення Хмельницької області — 1 590 000 чол.

Область розташована в сприятливо­му географічному поясі.

Звідси відкриваються ворота як на Схід, так і на Захід.

Транспортна система області до­сить розвинена.

Найважливіша залізниця й інші до­роги України проходять по території Хмельницької області.

Швидкісна залізниця «Київ — Захід» і «Західна Європа — Київ» знахо­диться в стадії будівництва і пройде через Хмельницьку область.

Енергетика області базується на видобутку вугілля і нафти, при­родного газу і місцевих торф'яних покладів.

Легка промисловість представлена текстильними фабриками.

У Хмельницькому є взуттєва, трико­тажна, галантерейна й інші фабрики.

Власне кажучи, це є Хмельниччина.

Вона щедро відкривається тим, хто хоче побачити дороги і стежини ма­ленької, але красивої землі.
Vocabulary:

- **highway** ['haɪweɪ] — шосе
- **to design** [dɪ'zaɪn] — проектувати; складати
- **highspeed** [haɪ'spiːd] — швидкісний
- **generously** [dʒenərəsli] — щедро
- **extracted** [ɪkˈstræktɪd] — добутий

Questions:

1. Where is the Khmelnytskyi Region located?
2. What does it border on?
3. Do you know the area of the Khmelnytskyi Region?
4. How many cities are there in this region? What are they?
5. Name the largest cities in the Khmelnytskyi Region.
6. Is the population more than one million?

**Khmelnytskyi**

Khmelnytskyi is situated in the Western Ukraine at the confluence of the Buh and its tributary the Ploska. According to the chronicles, Khmelnytskyi was founded in 1493 and was named Ploskivyir.

Until 1954 it was called Proskuriv, and then it was renamed to honour hetman B. Khmelnytskyi.

The total area of the city is 52 km². Its population is 241 000.

Khmelnytskyi is the city of science and education. There are a lot of higher educational institutions, planning organisations and 6 technical secondary schools.

There are lots of monuments to the soldiers who died during the Second World War. People who live in Khmelnytskyi are proud of the monuments to T. Shevchenko and B. Khmelnytskyi.

Machine building industry and electrical industry predominate in Khmelnytskyi.
The enterprises produce various machines, thermoplastics machinery, auto and tractor parts, furniture, footwear, and chemical products.

Khmelnytskyi is also the city of theatres and museums.

A Ukrainian Music and Drama Theatre, a puppet theatre, and a philharmonic orchestra are very popular among the people.

Many tourists visit a museum of regional studies, the H. Vereisky Memorial Museum.

A famous graphic artist was born here.

Khmelnytskyi is a very modern city and it is green.

There are two parks and the Botanical Gardens there.

The city is a railway junction.

There are also two bus stations and an airport in the city.

Vocabulary:

according to — згідно

to honour [ˈhɔn] — вшановувати

planning organisations — проектні організації

to predominate [prɪˈdəʊmɪneɪt] — переважати

thermoplastic machinery [ˌθɜːməˈplæstɪk ˈmɪnərəl] — термопластичне устаткування

graphic artist [ˈɡræfɪk ˈɑːtɪst] — художник-графік

Questions:

1. What rivers is Khmelnitskyi situated on?
2. When and how was the city named and renamed?
3. Why is it called the city of science and education?
4. What is produced in the city?
5. What is the people’s pride?
6. What is very popular among the people living in the city?

Kirovohrad Region

The Kirovohrad Region is located in the central part of Ukraine between the Dnieper and the South Bug in the southern part of Prydniprovska Upland.

Kirovogradskaya oblast

Kirovogradskaya oblast’ is located in the central part of Ukraine between the Dnieper and the South Bug in the southern part of Prydniprovska Upland.
It was established on the 10th of January, 1939.

Its territory is 24 600 km².

Administrative centre of the region is Kirovohrad.

The region is inhabited by 1 230 000 people.

Various kinds of population inhabit this region: Ukrainians, Russians, Moldovans, Belorussians, Jews, etc.

The region consists of 21 administrative districts.

The region has got a favourable geographical position and developed transport network.

Its territory is crossed by numerous railways, linking important industrial and agricultural areas of the south with the centre and the south-west of Ukraine.

Highways link Ukraine with central and southern Europe.

Extended telephone network allows to communicate with most of the countries.

The Kirovohrad Region is a unique centre of the Ukrainian culture.

This is the birthplace of the Ukrainian professional national theatre founded by such coryphaei of the stage as M. Kropyvnytskyi and I. Tobilevych.

Prolisok dance ensemble, Yatran amateur ensemble, Vesna amateur folk ensemble, Regional children's philharmonic society are known far beyond the region and Ukraine.

A true festival of the national culture is “Veresnevi Samotsvity”, the annual professional and amateur art festival held in Nadiya village, one of the most picturesque places of the region.
There are a lot of clubs and cinemas, many public libraries, 2 theatres, 8 museums, many music schools and schools of art in the region.

The region has a considerable scientific potential.

The work of scientists has received a grant of the Soros International Foundation.

The region is also rich in sporting traditions.

Its sporting schools and colleges have trained a number of the world rank sportsmen, among them the world champions Olesya Dudnyk (gymnastics), Olena Sukhoruk (weight-lifting), and Alexander Koretsky (sambo).

Vocabulary:

to inhabit [ɪnˈhæbɪt] — жити; населяти

network [ˈnetwɜːk] — мережа (дротів)

Questions:

1. Where is the Kirovohrad Region located?
2. When was it established?
3. What’s this territory like?
4. What is the administrative centre of the region like?
5. Telephone network allows to communicate with other countries, doesn’t it?
6. Who founded the national theatre in Kirovohrad?
7. What ensembles are known far beyond the region?
8. What is a true festival of the national culture?
9. Has the region a scientific potential?
10. What are the world champions of the Kirovohrad Region?

Kirovohrad

A city and region capital Kirovohrad is situated in the southeastern Dnieper Upland on the Inhul River, at the confluence of the Suhokma and the Bianka rivers.

Кіровоград

Місто й обласний центр Кіровоград розташований на південному сході Придніпровської височини на березі ріки Інгул, при впаданні рік Сухокма і Б’янка.
Two big reservoirs were created there, and there are a lot of parks there.
The total area of the city is 105 km² and it consists of two districts.

Kirovohrad is comparatively young. It was founded in 1754. It became a town in 1765. In 1775 the town was named Yelysavethrad and belonged to Kherson gubernia. In 1924 it was renamed Zinovivske, Kirov in 1934, and Kirovohrad in 1939.

Among the cultural and historical monuments are the buildings and walls of the fortress, a Greek church, the Church of the Holy Protectress, and several 19th century buildings. It is worth visiting a historical museum of the city, the memorial museum of the famous Ukrainian writer S. M. Kropyvnytsky, the monument to the famous Ukrainian producer, playwright and composer M. L. Kropyvnytsky, the I. Karpenko-Karyi Memorial Museum.

There is the Ukrainian Music and Drama Theatre, a puppet theatre and a philharmonic society in the city. There are 3 institutes and a civil-aviation pilot’s university in the city. The population of Kirovohrad is 274 200.

Many of them work on the city’s enterprises, such as the joint-stock company “Chervona Zirka”, the industrial enterprises “Radyi”, “Drukmachina”, the “Hydrosyla” plant, the foundry and others.
The production of these enterprises is sent to many cities of Ukraine and abroad. There are also many private firms. Light industry, the clothing industry, and food processing are also developed in the city. Kirovohrad is a very important transport junction. There is a railway station, two bus stations and an airport there.

**Questions:**
1. Where is Kirovohrad situated?
2. When and how was the city named and renamed?
3. Who made it famous?
4. What would you visit in the city?
5. What can you say about Kirovohrad’s industry?

**Kolomyia**

Kolomyia is a pleasant small town on the Prut river. It was founded in the 13th century. First Kolomyia was an important station on the salt-trade routes between Galicia and the Black Sea. The town was often ruined by Tatars.

Kolomyia is a traditional centre of the Hutzuls, ethnic Ukrainians from the Carpathian Mountains. The centre of the town, with its market-place, shops and cafes lies around the Renaissance Square.

**Vocabulary:**
- **confluence** [ˈkɒnfljuəns] — злиття (рік)
- **comparatively** [ˈkɒmprətɪvli] — порівняно
- **Holy Protectress** ['hɔːl prəˈtektrɪs] — Свята Покровителька
- **playwright** [ˈpleɪrɔɪt] — драматург
- **joint-stock company** — акціонерне товариство
- **transport junction** — транспортний вузол
The highlight of the town is the Museum of Hutzul Folk Art.

Opened in 1935, the museum has more than 20 exhibition halls, carved wooden tools, boxes and furniture, traditional folk-embroidered clothes and ceramic tableware are exhibited.

Vocabulary:

- **salt-trade routes** - соляні шахти
- **to ruin** - руйнувати
- **ethnic** - етнічний
- **highlight** - основне місце
- **Folk Art** - народне мистецтво
- **carved wooden tools** - різьблені дерев'яні інструменти
- **folk-embroidered clothes** - вишиваний одяг
- **ceramic tableware** - керамічний посуд

Questions:

1. What river does Kolomyia stand on?
2. Who often ruined the town?
3. What ethnic group of Ukrainians lives in Kolomyia?
4. Which museum is the highlight of the town?
5. What is exhibited in the Museum of Hutzul Folk Art?

● Kremenets

Kremenets is one of the nicest small towns in Ukraine, with an ancient history.

It lies not far from the famous Pochayiv Monastery.

It makes Kremenets a pleasant and relaxing place.

The fortress offers beautiful views over the town and countryside.

Ever since a stone castle was built in the 12th century, it was a place of many battles.

After a long period of Polish rule, Cossacks stormed the castle in 1648.

● Кременець

Кременець — одне з кращих маленьких міст в Україні, що має давню історію.

Місто розташоване недалеко від Почаївського монастиря.

Це робить Кременець приємним місцем для відпочинку.

З фортеці відкривається чудовий вид на місто і його околиці.

Відтоді, як у 12 столітті була побудована кам'яна фортеця, воно стало місцем багатьох битв.

Після тривалого польського правління козаки атакували фортецю у 1648 році.
In 1795 the town became a part of Russia.
The main road passing the town is Shevchenko street.
Across it you can see St Nicholas Cathedral, built in 1636.
The Kremenets Regional Museum tells about the town’s history from the Cossack and Polish battles to the Nazi massacre in the village of Shypkolisy on the 14th of July, 1943.
About 300 men, women and children were killed and 240 houses burnt on that tragic day.

Vocabulary:
monastery [mənəstri] — монастир
relaxing place [rɪ'leksɪŋ] — місто для відпочинку
rule [ruːl] — правління
view [vjuː] — вид
battle [ˈbætl] — битва
to storm [stɔːm] — штурмувати
massacre [ˈmæsəkə] — різанина

Questions:
1. Where is Kremenets situated?
2. When was the stone castle built?
3. When did Kremenets become a part of Russia?
4. Which is the main road over the town?
5. What tragic event does the Kremenets Regional Museum tell about?

Luhansks Region
It is an administrative territory in southeastern Ukraine.
It borders on Russia.
Its total area is 26 700 km², and its population is 2 673 800.
Luhansk is the region’s centre.
The Donets River, which flows in a southeastern direction, divides the region into two distinct zones.
The northern part consists of a hilly plain rising from the Donets Lowland to spurs of the Central Upland.
The southern region consists of the Donets Ridge, an undulating plain with an elevation of up to 200—250 metres dissected by river valleys and ravines.

The largest river is the Donets with its tributaries — the Luhan and the Velyka Kamianka on the right bank and the Krasna, the Borova, the Aidar, and the Derkul on the left.

There are also lakes there.

The region is located in forest-steppe and steppe zones.

The region is rich in lignite and natural gas deposits, as well as limestone, chalk, and clay.

The climate is continental: summers are hot and dry, and winters are cold and snowless.

Ukrainians constitute 53 per cent of the population, and Russians — 43 per cent.

It is an industrial region.

The main industries are the fuel industry, machine-building and metalworking industries, the chemical industry, light industry and food processing.

The biggest industrial centres are: Luhansk, Lysychansk, Krasnyi Luch.

Agriculture specializes in the winter wheat and corn growing.

Animal husbandry is a very important branch of agriculture.

Horticulture and vine-growing are also developed there.

The region has a very dense network of railways and highways.

Many famous people were born in the Luhansk Region.

They are V. Dal, V. Liakhov, O. Bakhmutsky, and others.
Luhansk

Luhansk is one of the regional centres of Ukraine.
It is situated on the banks of the Luhan and the Vilkhova rivers.
The city is a large industrial centre.

It is called the cradle of southern metallurgy.
Such branches of industry as machine building, locomotive building, coal-mining, light and food are well-developed there.
There are five higher educational establishments in the city.
There are also two theatres — the Ukrainian Music and Drama Theatre and the Puppet Theatre — in Luhansk.

Beside them there is the Philharmonic Society, a circus and different museums in it.
The most famous of them is the museum of V. I. Dal.
The place, where Luhansk is situated now, was inhabited in the first half of the 17th century.

Луганськ

Луганськ є одним з обласних центрів України.
Він розташований на берегах рік Лугань і Вільхова.
Місто є великим промисловим центром.
Його називають колискою південної металургії.
Тут розвинені такі галузі промисловості, як машинобудування, тепловозобудування, вугільна, легка, харчова й інші.
У Луганську знаходиться п’ять вищих навчальних закладів.
У місті є два театри — української музичної драми і театр ляльок.

Vocabulary:

distinct [dɪˈstɪŋkt] — окремий
spur [spa:] — вершина
ravine [rəˈvain] — лощина, яр
dissected [dɪˈsektɪd] — розсічений
limestone [ˈlaɪmstəʊn] — вапняк
fuel [ˈfjuːəl] — паливний
horticulture [ˈhɔːtɪkəltʃər] — садівництво
vine-growing [ˈvaɪnɡrəʊɪŋ] — виноградарство
dense network — густа мережа

Questions:

1. Where is the Luhansk Region situated?
2. What can you say about the region’s landscape?
3. What kind of region is it?
4. What is produced there?
5. What famous people were born there?
In the 17th—18th centuries that territory was owned by the Don Cossacks Army. Luhansk as a town was founded in 1795. Nowadays it is a modern city with new districts, wide streets and marvellous parks.

**Vocabulary:**
- **regional** [ri'dʒənəl] — обласний
- **bank** [bæŋk] — берег
- **cradle** [kredəl] — колиска
- **to be inhabited** [in'hæbɪtɪd] — бути заселеним
- **district** [ˈdɪstrɪkt] — район

**Questions:**
1. What rivers is Luhansk situated on?
2. What kind of city is it nowadays?
3. What branches of industry are well developed in Luhansk?
4. How many theatres are there in Luhansk?
5. Is it a modern city of Ukraine?

**Lviv Region — Area of the Developed Economic Cooperation**

The Lviv Region is one of the most developed regions of the Dnieper Right bank due to its diverse economic and cultural potential.

In the domestic and international economic division and cooperation the region specializes in the machine-building, medical equipment and household appliances production, manufacture of chemical and light industry products, wood and paper-making.

It has also developed international transit transportation, economic recreation, scientific support and reforms in the agro-industrial sector.

The Lviv Region produces 4 per cent of the national income of Ukraine.

Львівська область — зона вільної економічної торгівлі

Львівська область — одна з найрозвиненіших областей правого берега Дніпра України завдяки розмаїтості економіки і культурному потенціалу.

За внутрішнім і міжнародним економічним розподілом регіон спеціалізується в машинобудуванні, випуску медичного устаткування і предметів домашнього побуту, хімічної і легкої промисловості, деревообробці і виробництві паперу.

Вона також розвиває міжнародні перевезення, економічні процеси, наукові розробки і реформи в аграрно-промисловому секторі.

Львівський регіон виробляє 4 % національного доходу України.
68 countries are involved in the stable and intensively developing foreign trade relations with the region.

Foreign trade turnover of the Lviv Region reached $545 mln last year.

The region exported buses, trucks, autocranes, industrial machinery and equipment, textile products and clothes, sugar, spirits, meat, various foodstuffs, wood and wood products, sulphur.

Poland is one of the main trade partners of the Lviv Region.

Main export items were the grain, organic and non-organic chemical products, steel products.

Polish enterprises have been investing their capitals into the Lviv Region economy rather intensely.

Among the largest enterprises today there are such joint ventures as “Ortol”, “Ilion”, “Mimosa”, “Merzah” and others.

One of the main tasks in the development of international relations of the region is to intensify the transborder cooperation.

Vocabulary:

diverse [daɪˈvɜːs] — різний, відрізняючий
manufacture [mænjuˈfæktʃə] — виробництво, виготовлення
income [ˈaɪnkəm] — прибуток
involve [ɪnˈvɔlv] — закладати
stable [ˈsteɪbl] — стабільний, міцний

Questions:

1. What is the most developed region of the Dnieper Right bank?
2. How many countries are involved in the trade?
3. What does the region export every year?
4. Have Polish enterprises been investing their capital into the Lviv Region economy?
5. What is the main task in the development of international relations of the region?
Lviv

Lviv, the capital of Western Ukraine, is a large industrial and commercial centre of Ukraine.

Its narrow old streets and its historic centre make it one of the best places in the country.

Lviv was founded as a fort in the mid-13th century by Danylo Halytsky and was named after his son Lev, which means lion.

The lion is the historic symbol of the city.

For centuries it has been the Western Ukraine’s main city.

Lviv’s main street is Freedom Avenue.

It runs from Mitskevych Square to the Ivan Franko Opera and Ballet Theatre.

Also in Freedom Avenue you can see the National Museum which used to be the Lenin Museum.

In the middle of the avenue there is a statue of Ukrainian national poet, Taras Shevchenko, and there are always a lot of flowers at its feet.

The Museum of Ethnography, Arts and Crafts, with a statue of Liberty in front, demonstrates furniture and porcelain.

Each room presents a different era.

Opposite Lviv University there is a monument to the Ukrainian poet Ivan Franko, from which Ivan Franko Park stretches towards the Hotel “Dniester”.

Lviv’s open-air Museum of Popular Architecture and Life is worth visiting.

About 100 old wooden buildings are divided into many ethnographic groups of Western Ukraine.

Львів

Львів, столиця Західної України, — великий промислово-річний центр України.

Його вузькі старі вулиці й історичний центр роблять його одним із кращих міст у країні.

Львів був заснований як фортеця в 13 сторіччі Данилом Галицьким і названий на честь його сина Льва.

Лев — історичний символ міста.

Століттями Львів був головним міс­том Західної України.

Головна вулиця Львова — проспект Свободи.

Він тягнеться від площі Міцкевича до театру опери і балету імені Івана Франка.

Також на проспекті Свободи знахо­диться Національний музей, раніше там був розташований Музей Леніна.

Посередині площі стоїть пам’ятник українському національному поету Тарасові Шевченку, біля підніжжя якого завжди лежать квіти.

Музей етнографії, мистецтв і ремесел, зі статуєю Свободи перед ним, демонструє меблі і порцеляну.

Кожний із залів представляє різні епохи.

Напроти Львівського університету ви можете побачити пам’ятник українському поету Іванові Франку, від якого до самого готелю «Дністер» розкинувся парк імені І. Франка.

Також варто відвідати Львівський музей архітектури і побути під відкритим небом.

Близько 100 старих дерев’янних будівель розділені по етнографічних групах Західної України.
Shevchenko Avenue attracts people with its beautiful buildings and various shops.

There you can find a statue of Mykhailo Hrushevsky, Ukraine’s most famous historian and the country’s first president in 1918.

The Museum of Old Ukrainian Culture has a nice display of small, carved wooden Carpathian crosses.

Lviv Picture Gallery has one of the largest collections of European paintings in the country, with over 1000 paintings on display, and 5000 in storage.

Lviv is also famous for its churches and monasteries, among which are the Roman Catholic Cathedral, Uspensky Church, St George’s Cathedral, Church of St John the Baptist, Jesuit Church and many others.

Lviv is also famous for its Museum of Historic Religions.

Inside the Town Arsenal there is the Museum of Old Arms, with a display of various arms taken from over 30 countries.

---

**Vocabulary:**

- **fort** [fɔːt] — фортеця
- **craft** [kraːft] — ремесло
- **porcelain** [ˈpɔːslən] — порцеляна
- **to stretch** [streʃt] — тягтися, простягатися
- **worth** [wɜːθ] — вартій
- **display** [dɪsˈpleɪ] — виставка
- **carved** [kɑːvd] — різьблений
- **ethnography** [æθnəˈɡræfi] — етнографія
- **cross** [krɔs] — хрест
- **storage** [ˈstreɪdiŋ] — зберігання, склад
- **church** [tʃɜːtʃ] — церква

**Questions:**

1. Who founded Lviv? When?
2. What can we see in Lviv’s main street?
3. Which of Lviv’s Museums are worth visiting?
4. Which of the monuments is never without flowers at its feet?
5. Are there many churches in Lviv?
**Mykolaiv Region**

The Mykolaiv Region is an administrative territory in southern Ukraine.

It lies in the steppe of the Black Sea Lowland on both banks of the Buh River.

Its total area is 24 600 km², and its population is 1 300 000.

It is divided into 19 regions, and 9 cities.

The Region’s centre is Mykolaiv.

The regions in the Buh valley are densely populated.

This river with its tributaries flows into the Black Sea.

The climate is temperate-continental: the summers are hot, dry, and windy.

Winters are mild and there is little snowfall.

The region is located in the steppe belt.

It is rich in granite, limestone, kaolin.

Salt, mineral waters, and curative muds are extracted from the coastal lakes.

The principal rivers are the Buh and its tributaries — the Inhul, the Kodyma, and the Hnylyi Yelanets.

The main industries are machine-building, the building-materials industry, light industry, and food processing.

Mykolaiv’s three shipyards build and repair freighters, tankers, and other seacraft.

Irrigation equipment and diesel engines are built in Pervomaisk.

The building-materials industry is based on local resources.

The “Alye Parusa” perfumery is well-known all over the country.

---

**Миколаївська область**

Миколаївська область — адміністративна територія на півдні України.

Розташована в степах Причорноморської низовини на обох берегах Південного Бугу.

Загальна площа 24 600 км², кількість населення 1300 000 жителів.

Поділяється на 19 районів і 9 міст.

Обласний центр — Миколаїв.

Найщільніше заселені райони Південного Бугу.

Ця ріка з притоками впадає в Чорне море.

Клімат помірно континентальний — літо жарке, сухе і вітряне.

Зима м`яка, малосніжна.

Область розташована в зоні степів.

Вона багата на граніт, вапняк, каолін.

Солі, мінеральні води і лікувальні грязі видобуваються в прибережних озерах.

Головні ріки — Південний Буг із притоками Інгул, Кодима і Гнілий Єланець.

Основні галузі господарства — машинобудування, виробництво будівельних матеріалів, легка і харчова промисловість.

Три суднобудівних заводи Миколаєва будують і ремонтують вантажні судна, танкери й інший морський транспорт.

Гідроапаратура і дизельні двигуни роблять у Первомайську.

Будівельна промисловість використовує місцеві ресурси.

Парфумерна фабрика «Червоні вітрила» відома по всій країні.
Animal husbandry is very important in the region's agriculture.
It also specializes in grain-growing.
In the Mykolaiv Region many famous people were born.
They are the brothers Tобylevych, М. Садовska, М. Arkas and others.

Vocabulary:
densely [densli] — густо
windy [windi] — вітряний
curative muds [kjuərətiv mʌdz] — цілющі гризі
to extract [ɪkˈstrækt] — добувати
coastal [ˈkɔːstl] — береговий
seacraft [ˈsiːkrɑːft] — морські судна
irrigation [ɪrɪˈgeɪʃn] — зрошення
perfumery [pɜːˈfjuːmərɪ] — парфумерна фабрика

Questions:
1. How large is the Mykolaiv Region?
2. What are the peculiarities of the climate?
3. What can you say about the region’s industry?
4. Name famous enterprises of the region.
5. What famous people were born there?

Mykolaiv
First of all Mykolaiv is known as a town of ship-builders.
And it is not by accident.
Mykolaiv was founded in 1789 as a shipyard.
The town is situated near the Black Sea and is a large sea and river port now.
That is why it is the centre of shipbuilding in Ukraine.
Besides there are also such industries as light, perfumery and food processing there.
Mykolaiv is also a large transport junction.
Mykolaiv has two higher educational establishments — Mykolaiv shipbuilding institute and the pedagogical institute.
One of Mykolaiv sights is its astronomical observatory.

Among cultural institutions there are the theatres of Ukrainian and Russian Drama, of Music Comedy, the Puppet Theatre, the Philharmonic Society.

The most famous museums in Mykolaiv are the museum of shipbuilding and the Fine Arts museum named after Vereshchagin.

**Vocabulary:**

- ship-builder [ˈʃɪpˈbɪldə] — суднобудівник
- to be situated [ˈtəʊ bi ˈsɪtjuətɪd] — бути розташованим
- port [pɔrt] — порт

**Questions:**

1. What is Mykolaiv?
2. Where was it founded?
3. Why is it the centre of ship-building in Ukraine?
4. What museums are the most famous in Mykolaiv?

**Odesa Region**

The Odesa Region is situated in south-western Ukraine.

In the south it is washed by the Black Sea.

Its total area is 33 300 km², and its population is about 2 500 000.

It is divided into 26 districts, and has 18 cities.

Its capital is Odesa.

Although it lacks mineral resources, the Odesa Region is rich in granite, limestone, and sand, which are used for the building materials production.

The moderate continental climate is characterized by hot summers and mild winters.

**Oдє́ська область**

Одє́ська область розташована на південному заході України.

На півдні омивається водами Чорного моря.

Загальна площа 33 300 км², населення — близько 2 500 000 жителів.

Поділяється на 26 районів і 18 міст.

Обласний центр — місто Одеса.

Хоча область бідна на корисні копалини, є поклади граніту, вапняку, піску, що використовуються у виробництві будівельних матеріалів.

Помірно континентальний клімат характеризується спекою влітку і м’якою зимию.
The major rivers are the Danube (along the southern boundary), the Dniester, the Kodyma, and the Savranka (two tributaries of the Buh). There are several freshwater lakes and some salt-water lakes along the Black Sea coast.

The region lies in the steppe belt. Small oak, beech, linden, and ash forests are found in river valleys and ravines.

The main industries are machine building and metalworking.

Shipyards that repair ships are in Odesa, Illichivsk, Izmail.

The food industry includes canning, flour milling, fish processing, meat packing and wine-making.

The major seaports are Odesa, Illichivsk, Izmail, Reni, Kiliia, and Bilhorod-Dnistrovskyi.

The main highways are Odesa — Mykolaiv, Odesa — Izmail, Odesa — Kishinev (Moldova).

There are two airports in Odesa.

The Odessa Region is also an important health resort area.

The famous people who lived and worked in Odesa were M. Pirogov, A. Kovalevsky, K. Kostandi and others.

**Vocabulary:**

- **moderate continental**  ['modərət ,kəntənəntəl] — помірно континентальний
- **mild**  [maɪld] — м’який
- **boundary**  ['baʊndri] — кордон
- **linden**  [lɪndən] — липа
- **ash**  [æʃ] — ясен
- **flour milling**  [flɔʊər mɪlɪŋ] — борошномельний

**Questions:**

1. Where is the Odesa Region situated?
2. What mineral resources is the region rich in?
3. What are the main industries of the region?
4. What is the Odesa Region famous for?
Odesa

Odesa is the Black Sea gateway to Ukraine. It is the country’s largest commercial Black Sea port and a large industrial city. Odesa is a crossroads of cultures, languages and trade. Pushkin lived here in exile during the 1820s, and also it was home to writer and film director Alexander Dovzhenko. The site of Odesa was controlled from 1526 to 1789 by the Ottoman Turks.

In the 18th century Russia took this region and constructed a new port at Odesa. It was named after the ancient Greek colony Odessos. By the 1880s it was the second-biggest Russian port and an important industrial city. Odesa was a hotbed of the 1905 revolution.

The beauty of Odesa is in Prymorsky boulevard with its beautiful buildings and the Potemkin Steps. Film director Eisenstein used Potemkin Steps in his film “Battleship Potemkin”.

The 193 steps, built between 1827 and 1841, descend from the statue of Duc de Richelieu. At the eastern end of Prymorsky boulevard Pushkin statue and a British cannon from the Crimean War stand in front of the Odesa City Hall.

Odesa

Одеса — чорноморські ворота в Україну. Це найбільший чорноморський торгівельний порт і велике промислове місто України. Одеса є перехрестям культур, мов і торгівлі.

У 1820-х роках тут жив на засланні Пушкін, Одеса була також домівкою для письменника і режисера Олександра Довженка.

Місце розташування Одеси контролювалося отоманськими турками з 1526 по 1789 р.

У 18 столітті Росія захопила цей регіон і побудувала новий одеський порт. Він був названий на честь давньої грецької колонії Одесос.

 До початку 1880-х Одеса була найбільшим російським портом і важливим промисловим містом.

Одеса була колискою революції 1905 р.

Окраса Одеси — Приморський бульвар з його вигадливими будинками і Потьомкінськими сходами.

Режисер Ейзенштейн використовував Потьомкінські сходи у своєму фільмі «Броненосець Потьомкін».

193 сходинки, побудовані між 1837 і 1841 роками, спускаються від статуї Джюка де Ришельє.

На східному кінці Приморського бульвару стоїть пам’ятник Пушкіну, а перед будинком Одеської міської ради — британска гармата часів Кримської війни.
Several of the city's fine museums are the Museum of Maritime History, the Literature Museum, the Pushkin Museum, the Museum of Western and Oriental Art and others.

The Archaeology Museum is the first museum of this kind in the former Russian Empire. Its Gold Room has jewellery and coins from early Black Sea civilizations, including the first Slavic coins of St Volodymyr with the trident symbol on them.

Odesa is famous for its beaches. The southern beaches are less crowded and more picturesque than the northern ones. The Arkadia area is the most popular and has lots of restaurants and activities.

Vocabulary:
- gateway [ˈgeɪtvə] — ворота
- exile [ˈeksaɪl] — заслання
- site [saɪt] — місцеположення
- hotbed [ˈhɒtbed] — тут: колиска
- to descend [dɪˈsend] — спускатися
- beach [biːtʃ] — пляж
- cannon [ˈkænən] — гармата
- trade [treɪd] — торгівля

Questions:
1. Why is Odesa called the Black Sea gateway to Ukraine?
2. What famous people lived in Odesa?
3. Which place is considered the beauty of Odesa?
4. What famous museums are there in Odesa?
5. Why is Arkadia called the most popular beach area?

Ostroh

The small town of Ostroh is one of the oldest settlements in Ukraine. It was founded in 1100. In the 16th century a Greek-Latin-Slavonic collegium and printing centre were established here.

Oстрог

Невелике місто Острог — одне з найстаріших поселень в Україні. Місто було засноване в 1100 році. У 16 столітті тут був заснований греcko-латино-слов'янський колегіум і друкарський центр.
Today this little town has a small but impressive fortress and two nice museums.

The fortress, known as “Castle Hill”, was built on the place of an older settlement in the 14th century.

Inside the fortress is the regional Ethnography and History Museum.
Its displays confirm documentally the town’s rich history.

In the museum you can see a model of the town as it looked 900 years ago.

The other well-known place of interest is the History of Books and Printing Museum.

Among many books is a little Slavonic alphabet book written in 1578 and a copy of the famous “Ostroh Bible” written in 1581.

It is the first Bible, printed in the old Slavic language by Ivan Fedorov.

The museum also presents the 17th-century “Ostroh Chronicles”, a history book of Volyn and Galicia between the 16th and 17th centuries.

Questions:
1. How old is Ostroh?
2. When was a printing centre established in Ostroh?
3. What museums are there inside the “Castle Hill”?  
4. What famous books are displayed in the History of Books and Printing Museum?
5. Who printed the famous “Ostroh Bible”?  

Vocabulary:  

settlement ['setlmənt] — поселення
printing centre ['prɪntɪŋ 'sentə] — друкарський центр
impressive [ɪmprɛsɪv] — вражаючий
fortress [fɔːtrɪs] — фортеця
“Castle Hill” [ˈkæsl hɪl] — «Замкова гора»

ethnography [ˈæθnɒɡrəfi] — етнографія
display [dɪˈspleɪ], exhibition [ɪkˈsɪbɪʃn] — виставка
copy [ˈkɒpi] — копія
bible [ˈbaɪbl] — Біблія
Poltava Region

The Poltava Region is situated in the central part of Left-Bank Ukraine. Its total area is 28 800 km², and its population is 1 693 100. It is divided into 25 regions, and it has 12 cities. Poltava is the region’s centre.

The Poltava Region lies on the Dnieper Lowland, which is dissected by river valleys and ravines. The main rivers are the Sula, the Psel, and the Vorskla, which flow southward to the Dnieper. The region has rich deposits of natural resources, such as natural gas, oil, iron ore, granite, clay, peat, sand.

There are mineral curative springs in Myrhorod, Novy Sanzhary.

The climate is moderate continental. Winters are not very cold, summers are warm.

The region lies at the southern edge of the forest-steppe belt. Forests cover 7.1 % of the land area. Vegetable-growing, meat- and dairy-processing, and grain farming are well developed in the region.

The main industries are machine-building, food-processing, light industry.

The largest machine-building enterprises are in Poltava (turbines, electric motors), Kremenchuk (motor vehicles and railway cars). Fabrics and clothing goods are also produced there.

Полтавська область

Область розташована в централь-ній частині Лівобережної України. Її загальна площа 28 800 км², насе-лення — 1 693 100 чоловік. Поділяється на 25 районів, має 12 міст. Обласний центр — місто Полтава.

Полтавська область знаходиться в Придніпровській низовині, пере-тнутій річковими долинами і ярами. Головні ріки — Сула, Псел і Ворскла, що течуть на південь і впадають у Дніпро.

Область багата на мінеральні ко-рисні копалини, такі як природний газ, нафта, залізна руда, граніт, гли-на, торф, пісок. Є джерела лікувальних мінеральних вод у Миргороді, Нових Санжарах.

Клімат помірно континентальний. Зима помірно холодна, літо тепле.

Область знаходиться на південній межі лісостепової зони. Ліси займають 7,1 % території. В області розвинені овочевість, м'ясо-молочне тваринництво, рос-линництво.

Основні галузі виробництва — ма-шинобудування, харчова і легка про-мисловість. Найбільші машинобудівні заводи в Полтаві (турбіни, електромотори), Кременчуці (автомобілі, вагони).

Тут також виробляються тканини і швейні вироби.
The main railway lines are the Kyiv — Poltava — Kharkiv, Kyiv — Poltava — Donetsk, Poltava — Kremenchuk — Odessa.

Kremenchuk is the largest river port.

There is an airport in Poltava.
The Poltava Region is famous by the Sorochinsky fair, that traditionally takes place there every year.
Many famous people were born there.

Among them H. Skovoroda, the singer M. Churai, the writers A. Teslenko, P. Myrny, N. Gogol, I. Kotliarevsky, and others.

Vocabulary:

- **ravine** [ˈrævɪn] — лощина, яр
- **iron ore** [ˈaɪrən ˈɔr] — залізна руда
- **peat** [pi:t] — торф
- **curative** [ˈkjuərətɪv] — цілющі
- **vehicle** [ˈvɪːkl] — транспортний засіб
- **fabrics** [ˈfebrɪks] — тканини
- **fair** [fiə] — ярмарок

Questions:
1. What is the geographical position of the region?
2. What natural resources is the region rich in?
3. What is produced in the region?
4. What do you know about the Sorochinsky fair?
5. What famous people were born there?

Poltava

Poltava — one of the most interesting towns of Ukraine — is situated on the picturesque bank of the river Vorskla.

Due to its history Poltava rouses great interest.

It was first mentioned in chronicles as Ltava in 1174.

This old name changed only in 1430.

The history of Poltava is full of different events.

Poltava

На мальовничому березі ріки Ворскла розташоване одне із найбільш цікавих міст України — Полтава.

Полтава викликає інтерес завдяки своїй історії.

Уперше вона була згадана в літописах як Лтава в 1174 році.

Ця стара назва змінилася тільки в 1430 році.

В історії Полтави відбулося багато подій.
Since 1569 it was a part of Poland.

And only in 1667 it became a part of Russia.

The town is also well-known thanks to Poltava battle, when Peter the Great with his army defeated the Swedish army of Karl XII.

The Ukrainian writer Kotlyarevsky wrote about Poltava in his works.

Poltava and its region is also connected with the name of M. V. Gogol, who described its landscapes in his stories.

Now Poltava is a modern town and a regional centre.

Machine-building, metal-working, food and light industries are well-developed there.

It is also a large railway junction.

Poltava has many scientific-research institutes and 5 higher educational establishments.

There are two theatres — the Ukrainian Music and Drama Theatre and the Puppet Theatre, and the Philharmonic Society in the town.

The Museum of Regional Studies is one of the oldest in Ukraine, it was founded in 1891.

There are more than 136 thousand displays, including unique collections of Ukrainian carpets, national costumes and antique weapon.

Vocabulary:

picturesque [ˈpɪktəresk] — мальовничий

history [ˈhɪstəri] — історія

army [ˈɑːmi] — армія

to be connected [kuˈnektid] — бути зв’язаним
Questions:
1. Where is Poltava situated?
2. When was it mentioned first?
3. What battle took place not far from Poltava?
4. Have you ever been to Poltava?
5. What museums can you visit in Poltava? What are they famous for?

Рівненська область

The Rivne Region was founded on the 4th of December, 1939.

It is situated in the north-western part of Ukraine and occupies the territory of 20 100 km².

It borders on the Zhytomyr, Khmelnytsky, Ternopil, Lviv and Volyn regions of Ukraine and the Brest and Gomel Regions of Belarus.

As to its administrative-territorial division the region includes 10 towns and 16 districts.

The population of the region is 1 200 000 people.

The region has a favourable geographical location and a developed transport system.

The Rivne Region possesses a certain potential of the natural resources.

They are: stones, limestone and other mineral building materials.

Large deposits of amber are of great importance.

Deposits of phosphorites, sources of mineral water and mud have been discovered.

The surface waters of the Rivne Region include 170 rivers, many lakes and ponds.

Industry and agriculture possess the leading place in the economy of the region.
Vocabulary:

division [diˈvɪʒn] — розподіл
amber [ˈæmbə] — бурштин

to possess [pəˈzɛs] — володіти
mud [mʌd] — грязюка

Questions:
1. When was the Rivne Region founded?
2. Where is it situated?
3. What countries does it border on?
4. How many districts does the region include?
5. Has the region a developed transport system?
6. What deposits have been discovered in the Rivne Region?
7. What place does the Rivne Region possess in the economy?

● Rivne

Rivne was founded in the 13th century.

In the 18th and 19th centuries it officially belonged to Russia, but in fact it was the capital of a private kingdom of the Polish Lubomirsky family which had its own army.

Their palace was burnt down in 1927.

During the World War II the Germans used Rivne as their administrative capital in Ukraine.

The city was fully destroyed as a result of fatal fighting.

Today the places of interest in the city are the Resurrection Cathedral, built in 1895 (formerly the atheism museum), the Music and Drama Theatre, the Regional Ethnographic Museum.

The Victims of Fascism monument is on the place of a concentration camp where the Nazis killed about 80,000 people.

Vocabulary:

private kingdom [ˈprɒvɪt ˈkɪŋdəm] — власне королівство
Resurrection Cathedral [rɪˈzɔːʃən ˈkæθədrəl] — собор Воскресіння

to burn (burnt) down [bɜːn] — спалити

● Рівне

Рівне було засноване в 13 сторіччі.

У 18 і 19 століттях офіційно місто належало Росії, але фактично воно було столицею власного королівства польської родини Любомирських, що мали навіть власну армію.

Їхній палац був спалений у 1927 році.

Під час Другої світової війни німці зробили Рівне своєю адміністративною столицею.

Місто було цілком зруйноване після фатальної битви.

Сьогодні визначною пам'яткою Рівного є Вознесенський собор (раніше музей атеїзму), музично-драматичний театр, обласний етнографічний музей.

Пам'ятник жертвам фашизму розміщений на місці концентраційного табору, де нацисти вбили близько 80 000 чоловік.

Vocabulary:

fatal fighting [ˈfeɪtl ˈfeɪtɪŋ] — фатальна битва
ethnographic [əˌθɛnəˈɡrafi�] — етнографічний
Questions:
1. When was Rivne founded?
2. Who did Rivne belong in the 18th century to?
3. How did the Germans use Rivne during the World War II?
4. What are the places of interest in Rivne?
5. Where is the Victims of Fascism monument situated?

**Sevastopol**

Sevastopol is a large port on the Black Sea.
It is a centre of shipbuilding industry.

A lot of docks are situated there.
The city also has well-developed light and food industries.
In ancient time the town of Khersones was situated on the territory of Sevastopol.

Then in 1783 a military sea fortress and port appeared.
It is well-known for its heroic defence in the Crimean War in 1854—1855 and during the Second World War.

Nowadays such industries as fishing and timber are the leading ones.

The aquarium of the Institute of Biology of the Southern Seas is situated in the city.

Sevastopol has a lot of old buildings and monuments in honour of great sea battles.

This beautiful city attracts tourists from many countries of the world.

**Vocabulary:**

dock [dɒk] — док
light industry [ˈlaɪt ˈɪndəstri] — легка промисловість

---

**Севастополь**

Севастополь є великим портом на Чорному морі.
Це центр суднобудівної промисловості.

Там розташовано багато доків.
У місті також розвинені легка і харчова промисловість.

У давні часи на місці Севастополя було розташоване місто Херсонес.

Потім у 1783 році з’явилися військово-морська фортеця і порт.
Він відомий своєю героїчною обо­роною у Кримській війні 1854—1855 років і під час Великої Вітчизня­ної війни.

На сьогодні провідними галузями промисловості є рибальство і деревообробна промисловість.

У місті розташований акваріум Інституту біології південних морів.

У Севастополі багато стародавніх будинків і пам’ятників на честь великих морських боїв.

Це красиве місто привертає туристів з багатьох країн світу.

**Vocabulary:**

fortress [ˈfɔːtrɪs] — фортеця
honour [ˈɔːnə] — пошана
defence [dɪˈfens] — захист
Questions:
1. What kind of city is Sevastopol?
2. Is it a centre of shipbuilding industry?
3. What city was situated on the territory of Sevastopol?
4. What is Sevastopol well-known for?

● Sumy Region

The Sumy Region is located in the north-eastern part of Ukraine.
It borders on the Kursk, Bryansk and Belgorod Regions of Russia in the north and east, and on the Poltava and Kharkiv Regions of Ukraine in the north and southeast, on the Chernihiv Region of Ukraine in the west.
The majority of population is Ukrainians.
The Sumy Region was founded on the 10th of January 1939.
There are 15 towns in this region.
The Sumy Region is rich in mineral resources such as oil, gas, brown coal, salt and others.
132 rivers flow through the territory of the Sumy Region.
The largest of them are the Desna, the Psel, the Sula and the Vorskla.
Thanks to favourable geographic conditions of the region there is an opportunity for harmonic development of it.
Main gas and oil pipelines are laid through the territory of the region.
As for the transport, loads and passengers are carried by railway and air.

● Сумська область

Сумська область розташована в північно-східній частині України.
Вона межує з Курською, Брянською і Бєлгородською областями на півночі й сході, Полтавською і Харківською на півночі і південному сході, на заході — з Чернігівською областью.
Більшість населення складають українці.
Сумська область була заснована 10 січня 1939 року.
У регіоні 15 міст.
Сумська область багата на корисні копалини, такі як нафта, газ, буреугілля, сіль та інші.
132 річки протікають територією Сумської області.
Найбільші ріки — Десна, Псел, Сула і Ворскла.
Завдяки сприятливим географічним умовам у регіоні є можливість гармонійного розвитку.
Головні газові і нафтові трубопроводи проходять через територію регіону.
Що стосується транспорту, то вантажні й пасажирські перевозки відбуваються за лінією і повітряним шляхом.

Vocabulary:

majority [ˈmədʒərətɪ] — більшість
favourable [ˈfeɪvərəbl] — сприятливий
opportunity [ˌɒpəˈtjuːnəti] — можливість
Questions:
1. Where is the Sumy Region located?
2. Where does the region border on its neighbours?
3. When was the Sumy Region founded?
4. What mineral resources is the Sumy Region rich in?
5. What are the biggest rivers in the region?

**Sumy**

A city situated at the confluence of the Psel and the Sumka rivers is a region’s centre.

Its area is 99 km$^2$.

Its population is 275,400.

The city is divided into two districts.

The first mention of Sumy in the chronicles occurred in 1652.

It became a town in 1780.

At first it belonged to the Kharkiv Region, later the Sumy Region was founded, and Sumy became a region’s centre.

The main architectural monuments are the guildhall (17th century), the Church of the Resurrection (1702), the Cathedral of the Transfiguration (1776), and St Elijah’s Church (1851), and the bell-tower (1908).

Sumy is a modern city, and it is very green.

There are six parks in the city.

Near the Psel there are many beautiful lakes, where people like to rest very much.

Today Sumy is one of the chief industrial and cultural centres in northern Ukraine.

Its main industries are machine building, microscope production, the chemical industry (the Khimprom Manufacturing Consortium), the food and light industry.

**Суми**

Місто, розташоване на злитті рік Псел і Сумка, є обласним центром.

Займає площу 99 км$^2$.

Кількість населення 275 400 жителів.

Місто розділене на два райони.

Перша згадка про Суми припадає на 1652 р.

Містом вони стали в 1780 р.

Спочатку Суми належали до Харківської області, пізніше була утворена Сумська область і Суми стали обласним центром.

Серед історичних пам'яток архітектури слід назвати Збори гільдії (17 сторіччя), Воскресенський собор (1702 р.), Преображенський собор (1776 р.), Ільїнську церкву (1851 р.), і дзвіницю.

Суми — сучасне місто з безліччю зелені.

У місті шість парків.

Біля Псела є багато красивих озер, де городяни дуже люблять відпочивати.

Зараз Суми — один з основних промислових і культурних центрів північної Україні.

Головними галузями виробництва є машинобудування, виробництво мікроскопів, хімічна промисловість (виробниче об’єднання «Хімпром»), легка і харчова промисловість.
The city’s enterprises produce compression machinery and pumps for nuclear and thermal power stations.

Its cultural facilities include an art museum, a museum of decorative and applied art, a regional museum, a theatre of drama and musical comedy, and a young spectator’s theatre.

The city has 3 institutes, 9 technical secondary schools and some research institutes.

**Vocabulary:**

- **confluence** [ˈkɒnfjuəns] — злиття
- **to belong** [bɪˈlɑŋ] — відноситися
- **guildhall** [ˈgɪldhɔːl] — місце збору гільдії, цеху
- **the Church of Resurrection** [də ˈtʃɪːʃ əv ˌrezəˈrɛkʃn] — Церква Воскресіння
- **bell tower** [ˈbel tɔːr] — дзвіниця

- **microscope production** [ˈmaɪrskrəʊskəp prəˈdʌktn] — виробництво мікроскопів
- **consortium** [ˈkɒnsətʃəm] — консорціум
- **pump** [pʌmp] — насос
- **nuclear** [ˈnjuəklər] — ядерний, атомний

**Questions:**

1. Is Sumy an ancient city?
2. What architectural monuments tell us about its history?
3. What industries are developed there?
4. What museums would you visit?
5. What can you say about the city’s educational institutions?

**Simferopol**

Simferopol is a city on the Salhyr River and it is the capital of the Crimea.

The town developed slowly as a trading and manufacturing centre.

In the early 19th century it held two annual fairs.

Its tobacco, brick, and lime factories and flour mills supplied the local demands.

**Сімферополь**

Сімферополь — місто, розташоване на річці Салгир, і столиця Автономної Республіки Крим.

Місто поступово розвивалося у торговий та промисловий центр.

На початку 19 століття тут проходили два щорічні ярмарки.

Його фабрики з виробництва тютюну, цегли і вапняку i млини забезпечували потреби міста.
The first school was opened in 1793. An amateur theatre was formed in the 1820s, a printing press was set up in 1830, and the gubernia newspaper began to come out in 1838.

The opening of the Kharkiv-Sevastopol railway line in 1874 ushered in rapid industrial growth. The city's population had increased. New fruit- and vegetable-canning factories, a confectionery factory, two tobacco-processing factories, several steam-flour mills, and a farming-implements foundry were opened.

The city expanded to the other bank of the river, where a fine district was developed. Today Simferopol is a transportation and industrial centre. Its food industry includes two canning plants, and an oil-manufacturing consortium. Its light industry manufactures leather goods, footwear, clothing, and knitwear. Its machine-building plants produce food-processing equipment, television sets, and farm-machine parts.

Higher education in the city is provided by a university, a medical and agricultural institutes, and a branch of the Dnipropetrovsk Institute of Civil Engineering.

There are a number of research institutions. Among the city’s cultural facilities are the theatres of Ukrainian Music and Drama and Russian Drama, a puppet theatre, a circus, a philharmonic orchestra, an art museum, and a regional museum.

Перша школа відкрилася в 1793 році. Аматорський театр був створений у 1820-х, а друкований верстат встановлений у 1830, і в 1830 році почала виходити губернська газета.

Відкриття залізничної колії (магістралі) Харків — Севастополь у 1874 році призвело до швидкого промислового розвитку міста. Збільшилося населення міста. Були відкриті нові заводи з консервування овочів і фруктів, кондиціонерська фабрика, дві тютюнові фабрики, кілька млинів і майстерня по виробництву сільськогосподарських інструментів.

Місто розрослося і на другий берег ріки, де був побудований красивий район. Зараз Сімферополь — транспортний і промисловий центр. Харчова промисловість включає два консервних заводи і нафтопереробний консорціум. Легка промисловість виробляє шкіряні товари, взуття, одяг і трикотаж. Приладобудівні заводи роблять устаткування для харчової промисловості, телевізори, запчастини до сільськогосподарських машин. Вищу освіту можна одержати в університеті, медичному і сільськогосподарському інститутах і філії Дніпропетровського інституту цивільної інженерії.

Є кілька науково-дослідних інститутів. У місті є театри: український музичний драматичний і російської драми, ляльковий театр, цирк, філармонія, музеї мистецтв і краєзнавчий музей.
The most interesting architectural monuments are the Taranov-Belozerov residence and the Vorontsov palace.

One of the old Tatar districts, with its winding, narrow streets and Oriental buildings, has been preserved.

**Vocabulary:**

- trading and manufacturing centre — торгівельний і промисловий центр
- to usher [ˈəʊʃə] — проводити
- rapid [ˈræpid] — швидкий
- confectionery factory [ˌkɒnʃɪˈfɛkərɪ] — кондитерська фабрика
- farming implements foundry — цех з виробництва сільськогос- подарських інструментів

**Questions:**

1. What territory has Simferopol as the capital?
2. What can you say about the development of the city?
3. Where is it situated?
4. Why is it an important industrial centre?
5. What are the city’s cultural facilities?

**Terнопільська область**

Тернопільська область — адміністративна територія в Західній Україні.

Загальна площа 13 800 км², населення — 1 200 000 чол.

Область складається з 14 районів, кількість міст — 16.

Область займає західну частину Подільської височини.

Тут є багаті родовища мінеральних будівельних матеріалів і вапняку, крейди, глини, паливних корисних копалин — бурого вугілля і торфу.
There are also mineral springs there.
The region has a temperate continental climate, with mild winters and warm wet summers.
The main rivers are left-bank tributaries of the Dniester — the Zolota Lypa, the Koropets, the Strypa, the Seret, and the Zbruch.
There are ponds and reservoirs.
The region’s vegetation belongs to the forest-steppe belt.
The main industries are food processing, light industry, machine building and also dairy- and beef-cattle raising.
Machine building enterprises producing farm machinery are concentrated in Ternopil.
Building materials plants are based on local resources and are located mainly in Ternopil, Berezhany.
There are also furniture factories there.
On the above-mentioned rivers the power stations are built.
The main railroad junctions are Ternopil and Chortkiv.
The main highways crossing the region are Vinnytsia—Lviv—Krakovets, Kamianets-Podilsky—Chortkiv—Ivano-Frankivsk.
There is a famous health resort in Za­leshchiky.

Vocabulary:

deposits [dɪˈpɒzɪts] — поклади
fuel resources [ˈfjuːər ˈrɛsərəz] — паливні ресурси
mineral springs ['mɪnərəl ˈsprɪŋz] — джерела мінеральних вод
reservoir ['rɛzərvə] — водоймище
dairy- and beef-cattle raising — молочно-м’ясне тваринництво
farm machinery [ˈfɔːrm ˈmeɪʃə(n)ɪ] — сільськогосподарське машинобудування
power stations [ˈpɔːə ˈsteɪʃənz] — електростанції
Questions:
1. What is the area and population of the region?
2. Where is it situated?
3. What can you say about the climate of the region?
4. What rivers of the Ternopil Region can you name?
5. What are the main industries in the region?

Ternopil is a Place of Culture

Ternopil land has got a glorious history.

Our predecessors created an everlasting culture here at the time of the Kyiv Rus and Galytsko-Volyn Principality.

They kept traditions and customs of Ukrainian national spirit when the land was under the power of Lithuania, Austria and Poland.

The glory of our compatriots Dmytro Vyshnevetskyi-Bayda — the founder of Zaporizhska Sich, Severyn Nalyvaiko — the leader of the peasant’s uprising, Nestor Morozenko — the cossacks colonel, will never die in the memory of the nation.

A famous opera singer Solomia Krushelnytska originated from Ternopil land.

An outstanding physicist — Ivan Pilyi derived inspiration and creativity from Ternopil land too.

The bards of the Sichovi Striltsi awoke the aspiration of the people for independence.

The Proclamation of the Independence of Ukraine has become a leading paper in the moral boost of the people.

The historical event has been of special significance for Ternopil residents.
Ternopil's people accepted the concept of a national school, national traditions and christian morality in the upbringing of children.

Ternopil is a place of the music and drama theatre, a concert hall, a Natural History Museum, an Art Museum and a gallery.

Regional review-contests dedicated to Oles Kurbas, Solomia Krushelnytska, Volodymyr Gnatyuk, Olena Kulchytska as well as festivals dedicated to famous town-fellows have become traditional.

The region is proud of 237 artistic groups, which have won the title "national".

Recently created museums after Bohdan Lepkiy in Berezhany, Ulas Samchuk in Tylyavtsy have become outstanding centres of renewal of historical truth of the past.

Numerous visitors of the region are attracted by the architecture of the Pochayiv Lavra and Monastery, as well as by the longest in the world caves located in the outskirts of Borshchov.

The regional Art Museum, opened in 1991, has turned to real school of study of fine arts.

Vocabulary:

- predecessor ['prɪdɪˌsesə] — предок
- compatriot [kəmˈpærətɪət] — співвітчизник
- uprising [ˈʌprəˌzaɪŋ] — бунт, повстання
- to originate [əˈɔrɪdʒɪnət] — брати початок
- boost [buːst] — музична самовідомість
- concept [ˈkɒnˌsept] — поняття
- upbringing [ˈʌprɪŋ] — виховання
- aspiration [ˌæspəˈreɪʃn] — бажання
- inspiration [ˌɪnspəˈreɪʃn] — натхнення
- resident [ˈrɛzɪdənt] — постійний житель
- renewal [rɪˈnjuːəl] — відродження
- truth [truːθ] — правда
Questions:
1. What history has Ternopil land got?
2. What did our predecessors create?
3. They kept traditions and customs of Ukrainian national spirit, didn’t they?
4. What was Solomia Krushelnytska?
5. Did she originate from Ternopil land?
6. Is Ternopil a place of the Music and Drama Theatre?

Transcarpathia is a Special Region

Transcarpathia, the youngest of the Ukrainian regions, is situated in the far west of the country.

Since January 22, 1946 it has been included into Ukraine as administrative and territorial unit.

The region is multinational.

Ukrainians constitute the major part of its population.

It is known that more than 75 nationalities live there.

Regional economy is closely connected with its natural resources, first of all, with forests and timber processing.

Transcarpathia is rich in minerals: constructing materials, brown coal, ores of non-ferrous metals, kaolin of high quality, rock salt and gas.

Regional industry specializes in timber processing industry, food industry, industry of building materials, light industry.

Regional agricultural complex is represented by 192 enterprises of public sector and more than a thousand farms.

Vocabulary:
non-ferrous [nɒnˈfɜːrəs] — кольоровий (про метал)
quality [ˈkwɒləti] — якість
ore [ɔː] — руда

Закарпатський особливий регіон

Закарпаття — наймолодша область — розташована в західній частині країни.

З 22 січня 1946 року вона включена в Україну як адміністративна і територіальна одиниця.

Область багатонаціональна.

Основну частину населення складають українці.

Відомо, що тут проживають більше 75 національностей.

Регіональна економіка тісно пов’язана з природними ресурсами, насамперед з лісами і деревообробкою.

Закарпаття багате на мінерали, будівельні матеріали, буре вугілля, руду кольорових металів, високоякісний каолін, кам’яну сіль і газ.

Регіональна промисловість спеціалізується на деревообробній, харчовій, легкій промисловості, виробництві будівельних матеріалів.

Регіональний сільськогосподарський комплекс представлений 192 підприємствами громадського сектора і більш ніж тисяччю фермерських господарств.
Questions:
1. Where is Transcarpathia situated?
2. When was it included into Ukraine?
3. What territory does it occupy?
4. Is the region multinational?
5. How many districts are there in the region?
6. What is regional economy connected with?

Uzhhorod

Uzhhorod (formerly Ungvar) is the southern gateway to the Ukrainian section of the Carpathian Mountains, and the main town of the Transcarpathian Region of Ukraine.

It lies four kilometres away from the Slovak border and 25 kilometres away from the Hungarian border.

Uzhhorod has existed since 903 A.D.

Transcarpathia was in Hungary and then in Czechoslovakia.

Only at the end of the World War II Transcarpathia with Uzhhorod as its centre became a part of Ukraine.

The river Uzh runs from east to west across the city.

Uzhhorod Castle in its present form was built in the 15th—16th centuries against the Turks.

The palace in the centre of the city houses the Transcarpathian Museum of Local Lore.

It has exhibitions on archaeology, the folk art and dress of the region.

The Museum shows great difference between the different ethnic groups.

Next to the Castle is the Transcarpathian Museum of Popular Architecture and Life.

Here you can see old wooden buildings, furniture, costumes and crafts.

Ужгород

Ужгород (колишній Унгар) — південні ворота до української частини Карпат, головне місто українського Закарпаття.

Місто знаходиться на відстані 4 км від словацького кордону і 25 км від угорського.

Ужгород існував, починаючи з 903 року нашої ери.

Закарпаття було частиною Угорщини, потім належало Чехословаччині.

Тільки наприкінці Другої світової війни Закарпаття й Ужгород як його центр стали частиною України.

Ріка Уж протікає зі сходу на захід через усе місто.

Ужгородський замок у сучасному вигляді був побудований у 15—16 століттях для захисту від турків.

У палаці в центрі міста розташовується Закарпатський музей краєзнавства.

Він має виставки з археології, національного мистецтва й одягу регіону.

Музей демонструє демонструють велику різничу між етнічними групами.

Поруч із замком знаходиться Закарпатський музей народної архітектури і побуту.

Тут ви можете побачити старі будинки, традиційні меблі, одяг і ремісниці інструменти.
The most interesting place here is the wooden St Michael Church.

Not far from the castle is the main building of Uzhhorod University with the University Botanical Gardens down the street.

The gardens have exotic trees from Tibet.

The Uzhhorod Philharmonia building is the former synagogue.

Behind the Philharmonia is a little railway run by children.

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>En</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to exist</td>
<td>існувати</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. D. = Anno Domini</td>
<td>нашої ери</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>castle</td>
<td>замок</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local lore</td>
<td>краєзнавство</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

exhibition — виставка
ethnic — етнічний
Folk Art — народне мистецтво
craft — ремесло

Questions:

1. How far is Uzhhorod from Slovak border and from Hungarian border?
2. When was Uzhhorod founded?
3. What river runs across the city?
4. What major museums are there in Uzhhorod?
5. What is the Uzhhorod University Botanical Gardens famous for?

● Vinnytsia Region

At present, the Vinnytsia Region is one of the largest agricultural and industrial, cultural and historical regions of the independent state of Ukraine.

The new region was founded on the 27th of February in 1932 and its territory makes up 4.5 per cent of the territory of state.

It is situated in the central part of the Right-Bank Ukraine and borders upon seven regions of Ukraine.

● Вінницька область

На сьогодні Вінницька область найбільша сільськогосподарська і промислова, культурна й історична область незалежної України.

Нова область була заснована 27 лютого 1932 року, і її територія складає 4,5 % території держави.

Вона розташована в центральній частині правобережжя України і межує з сімома регіонами України.
To the south-west of Vinnytschina, along the river Dniester, the area of 202 kilometres presents the frontier with the Republic Moldova.

According to the administrative division, the territory of the region consists of 27 districts and the regional centre consists of 3 municipal districts.

The population of Vinnytschina is about 2 million people.

Nowadays, Vinnytschina is a region of industry and highly mechanized agriculture, with a scientific basis. During the two recent years Vinnytschina became one of the 5 best regions of independent Ukraine on gross output. According to the gross output of agricultural production, the region takes the second place in the state.

Vocabulary:

- recent [ˈrɛːsnt] — нещодавній
- gross [ɡrəʊs] — валовий
- output [ˈaʊtput] — продукція
- basis [ˈbeɪsɪs] — основа

Questions:

1. When was the new region of Vinnytsia founded?
2. Where is it situated?
3. What can you say about the territory of the Vinnytsia Region?
4. Is Vinnychina a region of industry or agriculture?

Vinnytsia

Vinnytsia is a city on the Buh river and a region centre since 1932.

The total area of the city is 6100 hectares.

Its population is 391 700.

It is divided into 4 districts.

It was first mentioned in historical documents in 1363, as a Lithuanian fortress.

Вінниця

Вінниця — місто, розташоване на берегах Південного Бугу, і є обласним центром з 1932 р.

Місто займає площу в 6100 гектарів.

Число жителів складає 391 700.

Місто складається з чотирьох районів. Уперше в історичних документах згадується в 1363 р. як Литовська фортеця.
The settlement gradually developed from a farming village into a manufacturing and trading centre.

It became the region’s capital in 1932.

Its chief cultural institutions are the Ukrainian Music and Drama Theatre, a puppet theatre, a philharmonic society, a literary museum dedicated to M. Kotsiubynsky, who was born in Vinnytsia, and a regional studies museum.

The M. Pirogov Museum (established in 1947) is just outside the city.

The main architectural monuments are the Dominican (1624), Jesuit (1610—1617), and Capuchin (1760) monasteries and the wooden churches of St George (1726) and St Nicholas (1746).

Today Vinnytsia is a large industrial and communications centre.

Its machine-building and metalworking enterprises produce instruments, radio devices, ball bearings, and tractor parts.

The main chemical plants produce superphosphate fertilizers and paint.

The large food industry consists of meat-packing, oil and fat processing, canning, and confectionery manufacture.

Woodworking and furniture manufacturing make a big contribution to the economy of Ukraine.

The city is very green.

It has a lot of parks.

The city’s educational facilities include 12 technical secondary schools, 3 institutes (pedagogical, polytechnical, and medical), and branches of the Ukrainian Agricultural Academy and the Kyiv Trade and Economics Institute.
Vinnytsia is an important railway junction. There is the railway station, two bus stations and an airport there.

**Vocabulary:**

- **fortress** ['fɔːtrɪs] — фортеця
- **settlement** ['setlmənt] — поселення
- **gradually** ['ɡrədʒuəli] — повільно, поступово
- **dedicated** ['dedɪkeɪtɪd] — присвячений
- **Dominican** [də'mɪnɪkən] — домініканський
- **Capuchin** [kæpju'jɪn] — капуцин
- **devices** [dɪ'veɪsɪz] — пристрої, прилади
- **ball bearings** ['bɔːl beərɪŋz] — шарикопідшипники
- **fertilizer** [ˈfɜːtəlайzə] — добриво
- **contribution** [ˌkɒntrɪˈbjuːʃən] — внесок

**Questions:**

1. When was Vinnytsia first mentioned?
2. When did Vinnytsia become a region centre?
3. What cultural institutions is Vinnytsia famous for?
4. What is produced at the plants and factories of Vinnytsia?
5. What education can one get in Vinnytsia?

**Volyn Region**

Volyn is an integral part of the independent Ukraine. Its area is 20 200 km². The population of the region is 1 075 200 people. The region is situated in the north-western part of Ukraine. It borders on the Republic of Poland in the west and on the Republic of Belarus in the north. It also neighbours upon the Lviv and Rivne Regions of Ukraine in the south and east.

The Volyn Region takes a favourable geographical position and is situated on the crossroads of the European trade routes.

**Волинська область**

Волинь — невід’ємна частина незалежної України. Її площа складає 20 200 км². Населення — 1 075 200 чол.

Область розташована в північно-західній частині України. Вона межує з Польською республікою на заході і Білорусією на півночі. Вона також знаходиться по сусідству зі Львівською й Рівненською областями України на півдні та сході. Волинська область займає сприятливе географічне положення і розташована на перехресті торгово-європейських маршрутів.
The Volyn Region has a rich mineral and raw materials potential such as the coal, peat and clay fields, beds of various building materials that are being exploited for a long time.

The deposits of natural gas, copper, precious metals, phosphates and cement have been prospected.

The region possesses substantial recreational resources.

There are 220 lakes and 130 rivers.

Shatsk National Natural Park has been created in the region.

In the general structure of the economy the industrial production prevails.

The food, machine-building, light, fuel, building materials branches take the leading position.

Agriculture takes about 33 % in the gross national product of the region.

Meat and dairy, sugar beets, corn and flax are the main directions of the region’s agricultural activities.

Волинська область має багаті надра і сировинний потенціал, такий як вугілля, торф і глиняні поля, шари різних будівельних матеріалів, що розробляються довгий період часу.

Були досліджені поклади природного газу, міді, цінних матеріалів, фосфатів і цементу.

В області є джерела для створення баз відпочинку.

Тут знаходиться 220 озер і 130 рік.

У регіоні був створений природний національний Шатський парк.

У загальній структурі економіки переважає промислове виробництво.

Харчова, машинобудівна, легка, паливна, будівельна промисловість посідають основне місце.

Валовий національний продукт області в сільському господарстві складає близько 33 %.

Виробництво м'ясної і молочної продукції, обробка цукрового буряка, кукурудзи і льону — головні напрямки сільськогосподарської діяльності регіону.

Vocabulary:

substantial [ˈsʌbstænʃəl] — важливий, визначний
recreational [rɪˈkrɛəʃənl] — відбудовний
flax [flæks] — льон
dairy [ˈdeərɪ] — молочна промисловість
to prevail [prɪˈveɪl] — переважати

Questions:

1. What is the area of the Volyn Region?
2. What is its population?
3. What are its neighbours in the south and east?
4. Does Volyn take a favourable geographical position?
5. Is it situated on the crossroads of the European trade routes?
6. What substantial recreational resources does the region possess?
7. What is produced in the Volyn Region?
Lutsk — Centre of the Volyn Region

Lutsk, the main city of the Volyn Region, was founded about 1000 A. D. by Volodymyr of Kyiv. The old town is a place of wooden houses and green gardens. The central place in the old town is Lubbart’s Castle. It was built by the Lithuanian prince in the 14th century. The most interesting building here is the Jesuits’ complex on Cathedral Street. It looks like a big Easter egg from inside. Down Cathedral street you can see a little park and memorial to Pasha Savelova, a World War II partisan. She was burnt alive in the prison yard by the Nazis. Opposite the park there is Lutsk’s music academy. The Eternal Glory Memorial Complex is a small park commemorating Volynian World War II heroes and victims. On the wall you will read the names of 107 villages destroyed by the Nazis as well as other statistics — 165 339 killed Volynians, 47 960 lost in prison camps. Also you can read a verse which is translated as “These are not just numbers, but ashes and blood; these are not just numbers, but anguish and cries”.

Vocabulary:

- castle [ˈkɑːsl] — замок
- alive [əˈlaɪv] — живий
- prison [prɪzn] — в’язниця
- victim [ˈvɪktɪm] — жертва
- ash [æʃ] — попіл
- anguish [ˈæŋgwɪʃ] — страждання
Questions:
1. Who founded Lutsk? When?
2. Who built Lubart’s Castle? When?
3. What is the most interesting building in Lutsk?
4. Who was Pasha Savelova?
5. Whom does the Eternal Glory Memorial Complex commemorate?

● Zaporizhia Region
The Zaporizhia Region is an administrative territory in south-eastern Ukraine.
It is washed by the Sea of Azov.
Its total area is 27 200 km².
Its population is 2 023 800.

The region is divided into 20 districts and 14 cities.
The capital is Zaporizhia.
Its northeastern part lies in the Dnieper Lowland, its southern part in the Black Sea Lowland, and its southeastern part in the Azov Upland.

The main rivers are the Dnieper, the Molochna.
The region lies in the European forest-steppe zone.
Forests cover 3.4 % of the area and are located largely in the eastern part.

The region is rich in mineral resources: coal, iron and manganese ore, natural gas, and building materials (granite, limestone, clay).
The region has a moderate-continental climate with cold, dry winters and hot dry summers.
Ukrainians constitute 63.8 % of the population, and Russians — 31.1 %.
It is an industrial region.

● Запорізька область
Запорізька область — адміністративна територія на південному сході України.
Вона омивається Азовським морем.
Загальна площа області — 27 200 км².
Кількість населення складає 2 023 800 жителів.
Область поділяється на 20 районів і 14 міст.
Обласний центр — місто Запоріжжя.
Південно-західна частина області знаходиться на Придніпровській низовині, півдenna — на Причорноморській низовині, а південно-східна — на Приазовській височині.
Головні ріки — Дніпро, Молочна.
Область знаходиться в лісостеповій зоні.
Ліси займають 3,4 % території і розташовані переважно в східній частині.
Область багата на корисні копалини: вугілля, залізну руду, марганець, природний газ і будівельні матеріали (граніт, вапняк, глину).
Клімат області помірно континентальний з холодною, малосніжною зимию і жарким сухим літом.
63,8 % населення українці, 31,1 % — росіяни.
Це індустріальна область.
The major industries are machine building, the chemical and petrochemical industries.

Light industry and food processing are also developed.

Agriculture specializes mostly in animal husbandry.

The main branch is beef- and dairy-cattle raising.

Wheat, corn and sunflowers also grow there.

Zaporizhia is the main river port, and Berdiansk — the main sea port.

Both cities have an airport.

The largest cities of the Region are Zaporizhia, Melitopol, Berdiansk.

Many famous people were born there.

Among them are O. Slastin, I. Patorzhynsky, H. Chukhrai and others.

Vocabulary:

to cover [ˈkʌvər] — покривати, займати
manganese ore [ˈmæŋɡənəz ɔː] — марганець
petrochemical [ˌpɛtroʊˈkɛmɪkl] — нафтохімічна

to specialize [ˈspɛʃəlaɪz] — спеціалізуватися
dairy [ˈdeəri] — молочний
husbandry [ˈhʌzbəndri] — господарство
sunflowers [ˈsʌnflɔːz] — соняшник

Questions:
1. Where is the Zaporizhia Region situated?
2. What is the relief of the region?
3. What kind of region is it?
4. What industries are well developed there?
5. What is it famous for?

Zaporizhia

Zaporizhia is a historic region of Ukraine.

The centre of Ukrainian Cossacks, Zaporizka Sech, was situated there in the 16th—18th centuries.
It played a very important role in the struggle of Ukrainian people for their independence. Zaporizhia is considered to be a city since 1806. The city got its present name in 1921. Zaporizhia is situated on the Dnieper river. The most remarkable sight, the pride and adornment of the city is Khortytsia Island. Metallurgical, chemical, light and food industries are now well-developed in it. Zaporizhia produces nearly half of all stainless and ball-bearing steel in the country. It is the first home producer of Zaporozhets mini-car. Zaporizhia is also a large cultural and scientific centre of Ukraine. 23 scientific-research institutes work in the city and its region. There are 4 higher educational establishments, including the University, in the city. The city also has 3 theatres, 2 museums and a lot of palaces of culture. A TV centre works in the city.

**Vocabulary:**

- **present** [ˈprezənt] — сьогоденний
- **pride** [praɪd] — гордість
- **stainless** [ˈsteɪnlɪs] — неіржавіючий

- **mini-car** [ˈmɪni kɑː] — малолітражна машина

**Questions:**

1. Is Zaporizhia a historical region of Ukraine? Why?
2. Where is Zaporizhia situated?
3. What is the most remarkable sight of the city?
4. What does Zaporizhia produce?
5. How many scientific-research institutes work in the city?
Zhytomyr Region

Zhytomyr land is a beautiful, picturesque piece of north-western Ukraine.
It's area is about 30 000 km².
Population reaches almost 1 500 000.
The administrative centre of the region, the city of Zhytomyr, is more than 11 centuries old.
Thousand years of history have also such towns as Korosten, Ovruch, Malin.

Due to its advantageous geographical position the region has good connections with Kyiv, Lviv, Uzhgorod, Odesa, Kharkiv, Minsk, Moscow, Saint-Petersburg, as well as with the countries of Eastern and Central Europe.
The region is rich in natural resources.
There are decorative stones, marble, gems, raw materials for steel and constructing industries, lime-stone, brown coal, peat among them.
The Zhytomyr Region supplies the whole Ukraine with the titanium concentrate and exports it too.
The region is the first in Ukraine for the wood.
Almost one third of its territory is covered with forests and woods.
In agriculture, along with the production of grain and beans, sugar beets, milk and meat production, the region is in the first place in the country in the production of hop, flax and chicory.
The industrial basis of the regional economy are its machine building and machine tools factories.
The region has great capacities in the industrial ceramics production.

Житомирська область

Житомирська земля — красива, ма­льовнича частина північно­західної України.
Її площа складає 30 000 км².
Населення досягає майже 1 500 000.
Адміністративний центр області — місто Житомир, якому більше 11 сторіч.
За тисячолітню історію з’явилися такі міста, як Коростень, Овруч, Мalin.
Завдяки перевазі географічного положення, область має гарний зв’язок з Києвом, Львовом, Ужгородом, Одесьою, Харковом, Мінськом, Москвою, Санкт-Петербургом, а також із країнами східної і центральної Європи.
Регіон багатий на природні ресурси.
Є декоративні камені, мармур, коштовні камені, сировина для металургійної промисловості, вапняк, буре вугілля, торф.
Житомирська область забезпечує всю Україну збагаченим титаном, а також експортую його.
Регіон є первим в Україні за лісом багатствами.
Майже 1/3 території вкрита лісами.
У сільському господарстві по виробництву зерна і бобових культур, хмелю і цикорію, цукру, молока і м’яса регіон посідає перше місце в країні.
Промислова база регіональної економіки — це машинобудування і машинноінструментальні заводи.
Регіон має величезний обсяг виробництва керамічної продукції.
126 **Regions and Cities of Ukraine** ●

Private sector is expanding more and more in the region’s industry.  
Foreign trade is an important part of the development of the region.

**Vocabulary:**

gem [dʒem] — дорогоцінне каміння  
hop [hɔp] — хміль  
chicory [ˈtʃɪkəri] — цикорій  
advantageous [ədˈvɑːntɪdʒəs] — переважний

**Questions:**

1. Does the region have good connections with the countries of Eastern and Central Europe?
2. What are the ancient towns of the region?
3. What natural resources are there in the region?
4. Is the region the first in Ukraine for the wood?
5. What agricultural plants do the farmers grow?

**● Zhytomyr**

Zhytomyr is situated in the north of Ukraine on the Teteriv river.  
Its total area is 6100 hectares.  
The city is divided into two districts, and its population is 292 000.  
Zhytomyr was founded, according to the local legend, in the 9th century.  
It is first mentioned in the chronicles under the year of 1240, when it was destroyed by the Mongols.  
It became a town in 1444.  
The chief architectural monuments are the Jesuit monastery, a Roman Catholic church (1744), the Assumption Church (1752), the Transfiguration Cathedral (1866—1874), the city hall.  
There are a lot of museums in the city, which are worth visiting.  
They are: a regional studies museum, literary memorial museums, dedicated to M. Kotsiubynsky and V. Korolenko, and a memorial museum devoted to S. Koroliov.

**● Житомир**

Житомир розташований на півночі України на берегах ріки Тетерів.  
Загальна площа міста 6100 гектарів.  
Місто поділяється на два райони, населення — 292 000 чол.  
Житомир був заснований, відповідно до місцевих переказів, у 9 сторіччі.  
Уперше згадується в літописі близько 1240 року, коли він був зруйнований монголами.  
У 1444 році він одержав статус міста.  
До архітектурних пам’яток належать Єзуїтський монастир, римсько-католицька церква (1744 р.), Успенський собор (1752 р.), Преображенський собор (1866—1874 р.), міська ратуша.  
У місті багато музеїв, які варто відвідати.  
Це краєзнавчий музей, літературні меморіальні музеї, присвячені М. Коцюбинському і В. Короленку, і меморіальний музей, присвячений С. Корольову.
The city’s educational facilities include a pedagogical and an agricultural institute, a branch of the Kyiv Polytechnical University, 10 technical secondary schools.

There are several scientific-research institutes.

There are a lot of parks and public gardens in the city.

Their area is 45 000 hectares.

The Botanical Gardens of the agricultural institute is the place that is very popular among the people.

The cultural facilities include a picture gallery, a puppet theatre, the Ukrainian Music and Drama Theatre, and a philharmonic society.

Automobiles, synthetic-fabrics, tools, musical instruments are produced in Zhytomyr.

Zhytomyr contacts with Hungarian city Mikhailovgrad.

Vocabulary:

local legend [ˈləʊkl ˈledʒənd] — місцевий переказ
destroyed [dɪˈstrɔɪd] — зруйнований
Assumption Church [əˈsʌmpʃn ˈtʃɜːf] — Успенський Собор
dedicated [dɪˈdedɪktɪd] — присвячений
devoted [dɪˈvɔːtɪd] — присвячений
synthetic fabrics [ˈsɪnθetɪk ˈfæbriks] — синтетичні тканини
tools [tuːlz] — інструменти

Questions:

1. Where is Zhytomyr situated?
2. What is the total area of the city?
3. What are the city’s places of interest?
4. What people is the city famous for?
5. Why do you think the city was named Zhytomyr?

The Town Where I Live

My native town is situated in the Kharkiv Region.

It is an hour ride from Kharkiv.
Some people can't imagine their lives without theatres, multistoreyed buildings and broad avenues — all that's typical of every big industrial city.

There are no theatres, multistoreyed buildings and broad avenues in my town, but still I do like it because I was born here, my parents live here and I've spent almost all my life here.

You may think that the life in a provincial town is rather dull and far from being interesting.

Perhaps, you are right.

But I'll try to prove that this life has got quite a lot of advantages.

Every morning you get up and breathe in fresh air full of various scents depending on a season: in summer it is a smell of fresh grass and flowers, in winter it is a smell of frost and snow which covers everything with its white thick duvet.

My native town becomes especially beautiful in early spring when there is a great many rose-shrubs in flower-beds and everything is in blossom.

This time I like to tramp down the streets lined with chestnuts, mountain-ashes and limes.

Those who want to have some entertainment can go to the recreation park that is famous for its carrousels.

Those who prefer dancing may go to a disco.

It's rather popular with young people especially teenagers.

It's a pity we have no concert-halls or theatres but you may go to the cinema and see a film there.
We have a lot of opportunities to go in for sports because there are two big stadiums in the town.

I quite forgot to tell you that there are some good cafes in my town, you can call at any of them.

I am sure you’ll like it there if you want to have some ice-cream or coffee or just have a talk with your friends.

Vocabulary:

ride [raid] — їзда, поїздка
advantages [ædˈvɑːntædʒɪz] — переваги
scent [sent] — аромат
duvet [ˈdjuːvet] — ковдра

Questions:

1. Where is your native town situated?
2. Is your town full of parks and gardens?
3. When is your town especially beautiful?
4. How do you spend your free time in your town?

The Most Beautiful Place on Earth

I know some English proverbs and here is one of them — “There is no place like home”.

Really, the best place is our own town or village.

We never forget it when we leave it.

There are many beautiful places where people live.

They are near forests or woods, rivers or seas, lakes or ponds and even in the mountains.

Very often we think that such places are the most beautiful.

By the way, I think that other places have no fine parks and buildings.

Найкрасивіше місце на землі

Ми знаємо англійські прислів’я, от одне з них: «Немає кращого місця, ніж дім» («У гостях добре, а вдома краще» — українське прислів’я відповідає англійському).

Дійсно, найкращі місця — це наше місто чи село.

Ми ніколи не забуваємо його, коли йдемо.

Є багато чудових місць, де живуть люди.

Вони можуть жити біля лісів, річок чи морів, озер чи ставків і навіть у горах.

Дуже часто ми думаємо, що такі місця найчудовіші.

Між іншим, я думаю, що в інших містах немає таких чудових парків і будинків.
Not all of their streets are straight and nice.
But people who live there are proud of them and like them very much.
They like them because they live and work there.
The beauty of nature is a very good thing but there are things which may be more important and dear to people.
As for me, I am proud of the history of my town and its historical traditions.
I hope I am prepared to do more for its future.
My place is dear to me because I have so many friends here.
I go to school together with my friends and do a lot of interesting things in my school clubs.
We may work together at a plant or in an office when I leave school.
As an English proverb goes “Every bird likes its own nest”.
Let’s hope that I will like my own “nest” and will do everything to make it the most beautiful place on earth.

Vocabulary:

- nest [nest] — гніздо
- straight [streɪt] — прямий
- proud [praʊd] — гордий
- proverb [ˈprɒvəb] — прислів’я

Questions:

1. Is your town small or large?
2. Is it near a lake (a river)?
3. How many people are there in your town?
4. Has your town changed from year to year?
5. What was built in your town last year?
6. What was built in your town the year before last?
7. Why do people from other places come to your town?
8. Do you know veterans of labour and veterans of war in your town? Who are they?
9. Do they come to your school?
**My Home Town**

I live in Poltava.

Poltava is quite an old town.

It was founded in the middle of the 12th century.

During the Great Patriotic War Poltava became the scene of cruel fighting.

Since the war the town has risen from ruins and is now finer than ever.

My town is not very large.

There are about three hundred thousand people who live here.

There are many squares, large parks, wide streets with beautiful buildings, cinemas, theatres and shops.

Every year hundreds of tourists come to Poltava.

They want to visit the famous historical and other places of interest of the town.

We are proud of our museums: the Historical and Fine Arts museums.

The main street of our town is not very long but it has a lot of modern and old buildings, shops, cafes, restaurants and bars.

Our town is a town of youth.

Hundreds of young people study at many institutes, schools and colleges.

We also have sports grounds, swimming-pools, gymnasiums and other good places where young people may spend their free time.

**Vocabulary:**

cruel [kruːl] — жорстокий
to rise (rose, risen) [raɪz] — підніматися

to be proud of ['bɪ ˈpraːd əv] — пишатись

**Моє рідне місто**

Я живу в Полтаві.

Полтава — досить старе місто.

Воно було засноване у середині 12 століття.

Під час Великої Вітчизняної війни Полтава стала місцем запеклих боїв.

У повоєнний час місто піднялося з руїн і тепер краще, ніж було.

Моє місто не дуже велике.

У ньому живе близько 300 000 чоловік.

Тут багато площ, великих парків, широких вулиць із красивими будинками, кінотеатрів, театрів і магазинів.

Сотні туристів приїжджають до Полтави щорічно.

Вони хочуть відвідати знамениті історичні місця й інші визначні пам'ятки міста.

Ми пишаємося своїми музеями: історичним і художнім.

Головна вулиця нашого міста не дуже довга, але на ній багато сучасних і старих будинків, магазинів, кафе, ресторанів і барів.

Наше місто — місто молоді.

Сотні молодих людей навчаються у багатьох інститутах, школах, коледжах.

У місті є спортмайданчики, басейни, спортували й інші місця, де молоді люди можуть проводити вільний час.
Questions:
1. Where do you live?
2. When was your city/town founded?
3. What is the population of your town/city?
4. What historical monuments, buildings, places of interest are there in your city?
5. What museums do you know in your city?

Our Street
I live in Sosnova Street.
It is a very quiet street on the outskirts of our city.
It’s very green in spring and summer.
There are a lot of trees in it.
The side-walks are lined with lime-trees.
There are also many fruit-trees and lilacs in the people’s gardens.
In May the whole street turns into a blooming garden.
There isn’t much traffic in Sosnova Street.
The air is fresh, it isn’t polluted with gases.
I like to come back to our street after a day spent in the centre of the city.
I hate noise and crowds in downtown.
I wouldn’t like to live in a different street.

Vocabulary:
side-walk [saɪdˈwɔːk] — тротуар
lime-tree [ˈlaɪm triː] — липа
traffic [ˈtræfɪk] — транспорт
noise [nɔɪz] — шум

Questions:
1. What street do you live in?
2. Is it a busy street or a quiet one?
3. Are there a lot of trees in it?
4. Is there much traffic?
5. Why do you like your street?
Great Britain
The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is situated on the British Isles. They lie to the north-west of Europe.

The British Isles are separated from the continent by the narrow strait of water which is called the English Channel. The United Kingdom consists of four parts: England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. England, the central part, occupies the most of the island of Great Britain.

To the north lies Scotland and to the west the third part of the country, Wales, is situated. The fourth part is called Northern Ireland and is located on the second island. Each part has its capital. The capital of England is London, Wales has Cardiff, Scotland has Edinburgh and the main city of Northern Ireland is Belfast. Great Britain is a country of forests and plains. There are no high mountains in this country. Scotland is the most mountainous region with the highest peak, Ben Nevis. The rivers of Great Britain are not long. The longest rivers are the Thames and the Severn.

The capital of the United Kingdom, London, stands on the bank of the Thames.

III. GREAT BRITAIN (ВЕЛИКОБРИТАНІЯ)

З’єднане Королівство Великобританії і Північної Ірландії розташоване на Британських островах. Вони лежать на північному заході від Європи. Британські острови відділені від континенту вузькою протокою, що називається Ла-Манш.

З’єднане Королівство складається з чотирьох частин: Англія, Шотландія, Уельс і Північна Ірландія.

Англія — центральна частина — займає велику частину острова Великобританії. На півночі лежить Шотландія, а на заході розташована третя частина країни — Уельс.

Четверту частину називають Північною Ірландією, і вона розташована на іншому острові. Кожна частина має свою столицю.

Столиця Англії — Лондон, Уельсу — Кардіфф, Шотландії — Единбург і головне місто Північної Ірландії — Белфаст.

Великобританія — країна лісів і рівин.

У ній немає високих гір.

Шотландія — найбільш гористий район з найвищим піком Бен-Невіс. Ріки Великобританії не довгі.

Найдовші ріки — Темза і Северн.

Столиця Великобританії, Лондон, розташована на березі Темзи.
As the country is surrounded by many seas there are some great ports at the seaside: London, Glasgow, Plymouth and others.

Wales is a country of lakes.

It has the most famous lake in the world — Loch-Ness.

Seas and oceans influence the British climate which is not too cold in winter but never hot in summer.

Great Britain is a beautiful country with old traditions and good people.

Vocabulary:

- **kingdom** [ˈkɪŋdəm] — королевство
- **British Isles** [ˈbrɪtɪʃ ˈaɪlz] — Британські острови
- **The English Channel** [ði ˈɛŋɡliʃ ˈtʃænəl] — Ла-Манш

Questions:

1. Where is Great Britain situated?
2. What is the relief of Great Britain?
3. What are the parts of Great Britain? What are their capitals?
4. What influences the climate of the British Isles?
5. What region in Great Britain has the highest peak? Name it.

**UK Political System**

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is a constitutional monarchy.

The power of Queen Elizabeth II is not absolute.

It is limited by Parliament.

The legislative body, Parliament, consists of two chambers: the House of Lords and the House of Commons.

** Політична система Великобританії**

З’єднане Королівство Великобританії і Північної Ірландії — конституційна монархія.

Влада королеви, Єлизавети II, не абсолютна.

Ця влада обмежена парламентом. Законодавча влада — парламент — складається з палати лордів і палати громад.
The executive body consists of the central Government — that is the Prime Minister and the Cabinet of Ministers, who are responsible for initiating and directing the national policy.

The judiciary body is independent of both the legislative and the executive ones.

The Government derives its authority from the elected House of Commons.

General elections, for all seats in the House of Commons, must be held at least every five years.

The Government is normally formed by the political party which is supported by the majority in the House of Commons.

The leader of the party is appointed the Prime Minister by the Queen and chooses a team of ministers.

The second largest party becomes the Official Opposition with its own leader and the “Shadow Cabinet”.

The House of Lords is a hereditary chamber.

In Great Britain there is no written constitution, only customs and traditions.

Vocabulary:

* to be limited by [ˈlɪmitɪd] — бути обмеженим
* judiciary [dʒuˈdɪʃiəri] — судовий
* to derive [dɪˈraɪv] — одержувати, отримувати
* to be appointed [əˈpɔɪntɪd] — бути призначеним
* hereditary [hɪˈredɪtəri] — спадковий

Questions:

1. What can you say about the power of the Queen in Great Britain?
2. Is there a constitution in Great Britain?
3. What houses does the legislative branch consist of?
4. Who is the Queen of Great Britain?
5. The House of Commons is a hereditary chamber, isn’t it?
National Emblems in Great Britain

The red rose was the emblem of Lancastrians, the white rose that of the Yorkists, the two Houses fighting for the English throne in the War of Roses.

But their struggle ended by marriage of Henry VII, the Lancastrian with Princess Elizabeth, the Yorkist.

The red rose has since become the emblem of England.

The thistle is the national emblem of Scotland.

It happened in very old times when Norsemen wanted to settle in this country.

They came close to the Scots’ camps in the night and wanted to kill them in their sleep.

That’s why they took off their shoes so as to make no noise.

But one of the Norsemen stepped on a thistle and screamed.

The Scots woke up and put the enemy to flight.

The leek is the emblem of Wales.

Welshmen all over the world celebrate their national holiday St David’s Day by wearing leeks.

They do it because they believe St David have lived for several years on bread and wild leeks.

Irishmen wear their national emblem on St Patrick’s Day.

It’s a small white clover with three leaves on the stem.

It is called a shamrock.

Naціональні емблеми у Великобританії

Червона троянда була емблемою роду Ланкастерів, а біла — роду Йорків, двох будинків, що боролися за англійський трон у Війні Троянд.

Але їхня боротьба закінчилася весіллям Генрі VII Ланкастера і принцеси Єлизавети, роду Йорк.

З тих пір червона троянда стала емблемою Англії.

Національною емблемою Шотландії є будяк.

Це трапилося у дуже давні часи, коли норвежці хотіли осісти в країні.

Вони наблизилися до шотландських військових таборів вночі і хотіли убивти всіх сонними.

Тому вони зняли взуття, щоб не шуміти.

Але один норвежець наступив на будяк і скрикнув.

Шотландці прокинулися і повернули ворога навтіки.

Цибуля-порей — емблема Уельсу.

Уельсьці усього світу відзначають національне свято День Святого Девіда, приколюючи цибулю-порей до одягу.

Вони роблять це, тому що вірять, що Святий Девід кілька років жив, харчуючись хлібом і цибулею-пореєм.

Ірландці носять національну емблему в День Святого Патріка.

Це маленька біла коношка з трьома пелюстками на стеблинці.

Він називається трилисник.
Geographical Position of Great Britain

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland occupies the territory of the British Isles. They lie to the north-west of Europe. Once upon a time the British Isles were an integral part of the mainland. As a result of sinking of the land surface they became segregated. Great Britain is separated from the continent by the English Channel. The country is washed by the waters of the Atlantic Ocean. Great Britain is separated from Belgium and Holland by the North Sea, and from Ireland — by the Irish Sea. There are several islands along the coasts. The total area of the British Isles is 325 000 km². The main islands are the Isle of Man and the Isle of Wight.

Великобританія

З’єднане королівство Великобританії і Північної Ірландії розташоване на Британських островах. Вони лежать на північному заході від Європи. Дуже давно Британські острови були невід’ємною частиною материка. У результаті занурення земної поверхні вони відокремилися. Великобританія відділена від континенту протокою Ла-Манш. Країна омивається водами Атлантичного океану. Великобританія відділена від Бельгії і Голландії Північним морем, від Ірландії — Ірландським морем. Уздовж узбережжя розташовані кілька островів. Загальна площа Британських островів — 325 000 км². Найбільші острови — острови Мен і остров Уайт.
The surface of the country is much varied.
Great Britain is the country of valleys and plains.
The mountains in Britain are not very high.
Scotland is the most mountainous region with the highest peak, Ben Nevis.
The insular geographical position of Great Britain promoted the development of shipbuilding, different trading contacts with other countries.

It has also allowed the country to stay independent for quite a long period of time.

**Vocabulary:**

*integral* [ˈɪntɪɡrəl] — невіддільний, єдиний
*tobe washed* [ˈwɔːʃt] — омиватися

**Questions:**

1. Where is Great Britain situated?
2. What seas is Great Britain washed by?
3. Is Great Britain a mountainous country?
4. What does Great Britain consist of?
5. What kind of landscape is there in Scotland?

**Climate of Great Britain**

Great Britain is situated on the islands.
It is washed by seas from all the sides.
That’s why the climate and the nature of Great Britain are very specific.
It is not very cold in winter and never very hot in summer.
There is no ice on the lakes and rivers in winter.
It rains very often in all the seasons.
The weather changes very often.

**Клімат Великобританії**

Великобританія розташована на островах.
Вона омивається морями з усіх боків.
Тому клімат і природа Великобританії дуже специфічні.
Там не дуже холодно узимку і ніколи не буває пекуче влітку.
Озера і ріки не замерзають узимку.
Протягом року часто йде дощ.
Погода міняється дуже часто.
Mark Twain said about America: “If you don’t like the weather in New England, just wait a few minutes”, but it is more likely to have been said about England.

Besides, Britain is famous for its fogs.

Sometimes fogs are so thick that it is impossible to see anything within 2 or 3 metres.

The nature of the British Isles is picturesque.

There are many rivers and very beautiful lakes, but there are no great forests on the British Isles.

The mountains there are not very high, but very beautiful.

The most picturesque part of the country is Highlands in the North of Scotland.

This is a region of mountains and rivers, small towns and villages.

In Wales there are also many beautiful mountains and valleys.

The highest mountain in Wales is Snowdon.

Everyone who comes to England says that it looks like one great beautiful park.

The Englishmen love their country and take care of it.

Vocabulary:

weather [ˈweðə] — погода
specific [spəˈsɪfɪk] — особливий, специфічний
to wait [weɪt] — чекати
picturesque [ˌpɪktrəˈresk] — мальовничий
the Highlands [ˈhæl3ndz] — гори північної Шотландії

Questions:

1. Why are the climate and the nature of Great Britain very specific?
2. Does it often rain?
3. What did Mark Twain say about the weather of America?
4. What can you say about the British fogs?
5. What are the most picturesque places on the British Isles?
I want to describe an episode from the history of Great Britain.

It concerns the Roman conquest of Britain.

In 55 B. C. a Roman army of 10,000 men crossed the Channel and invaded Britain.

The Celts who inhabited Britain saw their ships approaching and rushed to attack the invaders in the sea as they were landing.

The Celts made a great impression on the Romans, who saw them for the first time in the battle.

On the occasion of the battle hair and moustaches were painted red and their legs and arms were painted blue.

With loud shouts they attacked the Romans in chariots and on foot.

The well-armed invincible Romans under one of the greatest generals of that time had to return to France.

In the next year, 54 B. C., Caesar came to Britain again, this time with larger forces (25,000 men).

The Celts fought bravely for their independence but they were not strong enough to drive the Romans off.

The Romans who had better arms and armour and were much better trained defeated the Celts in several battles.

This is how the Roman invasion of Britain started.

This invasion lasted till the year of 407 A. D.

As a result of the conquest signs of Roman civilization spread over Britain.
There had been no towns in Britain before the Romans conquered it. As soon as they had conquered Britain they began to build towns, splendid villas, public baths as in Rome itself. York, Gloucester, Lincoln and London became the chief Roman towns. The Romans were great road-makers and now a network of roads connected all parts of the country. The forests were cleared, swamps were drained, and corn-fields took their place. Today there are many things in Britain to remind the people of the Romans. The wells which the Romans dug give water today, and the chief Roman roads are still among the highways of modern England. Many of such remains as glass, statues, coins may be seen in the British Museum.

**Vocabulary:**
- to invade [ɪnˈvaɪd] — захопити
- Celts [ˈkɛlts] — кельти
- to rush [rʌʃ] — кидатися
- chariot [ˈtʃærɪət] — колісниця
- invincible [ɪnˈvɪnsəbl] — непереможний
- Caesar [ˈsiːzə] — Цезар
- Gloucester [ˈɡlʌstə] — Глостер
- to drain [dreɪn] — осушувати

**Questions:**
1. When did the Romans come to Britain?
2. What was the result of their first battle?
3. When did they come for the second time?
4. How did the Roman way of life influence the life of the Celts?
5. Are there any things in Britain to remind the people of the Romans?

**Outstanding Events in the Life of Great Britain**
There were many outstanding events in the history of Great Britain.
England was added to the Roman Empire in 43 A. D.
Roman invasion played a very important role in the history of the country.
The Romans built the first roads in the country, dug the first wells.
The Romans, who were great architects, constructed the first towns in Britain.
After the withdrawal of Roman legions in 410, different tribes tried to control the territory of Britain.

But the Normans influenced the British civilization most of all.
They came in 1066 under the leadership of William the Conqueror.
As the invaders spoke French, their speech influenced the English language.
That is why English comprises a lot of French words and word combinations.
In the 18th century technological and commercial innovation led to the Industrial Revolution.
The thirteen North American Colonies were lost, but replaced by colonies in Canada and India.
Once more the British had to face the French in 1805 at the battle of Trafalgar.
Then Admiral Nelson won a great victory over the French fleet.
In order to commemorate this event the main square in London is named after this battle.
And the monument to Admiral Nelson was erected on this square.
Many historical events and personalities led the country to the position of the powerful and highly-developed state.

У 43 році н. е. Англія була приєднана до Римської імперії.
Римське завоювання зіграло важливу роль в історії країни.
Римляни побудували перші дороги в країні, викопали перші колодязі.
Римляни, що були великими архітекторами, побудували перші міста в Британії.
Після відходу римських легіонів у 410 році різні племена намагалися контролювати територію Велико-британії.
Але нормани вплинули на британську цивілізацію найбільше.
Вони прийшли в 1066 році під проводом Вільяма Завойовника.
Тому що завойовники розмовляли французькою мовою, їхня мова вплинула на англійську мову.
Тому в англійській мові багато французьких слів і словосполучень.
У 18 столітті технологічні й комерційні нововведення призвели до промислової революції.
Тринадцять північноамериканських колоній були загублені, але їх замінили колонії в Канаді й Індії.
Ще раз Британія протистояла французам у 1805 році в битві при Трафальгар.
Тоді адмірал Нельсон здобув велику перемогу над французьким флотом.
На честь цієї події названа головна площа в Лондоні.
На цій площі споруджено пам’ятник адміралові Нельсону.
Багато історичних подій і особистостей зробили країну могутньою і високорозвиненою державою.
Vocabulary:

- to invade [ɪnˈvaɪd] — вторгатися
- colony [ˈkɒləni] — колонія
- Empire [ˈeməpɪə] — імперія
- to be named after [bɪ ˈneɪmd ˈɔːftə] — бути названим на честь
- Conqueror [ˈkɒŋkrər] — завойовник

Questions:

1. What traces of the Romans are there in Britain?
2. When did William the Conqueror come to Britain?
3. Why was he named the Conqueror?
4. What led to the Industrial Revolution?
5. Who was Nelson? Why is he so famous in Britain?

Tchaikovskyi in England

For the first time Tchaikovskyi visited England in 1861, as a travelling tourist. Twenty-seven years later, Tchaikovskyi came to England again to begin his first foreign concert tour. The London concert at which the great composer conducted his Serenade for Strings and his Suite No. 3 was an important event in the musical life of England’s capital. In 1884 Tchaikovskyi wrote that he was working hard at his English.

Later he mentioned that he had succeeded in reading Dickens in the original, which gave the novels a “fresh charm”.

Some of Tchaikovskyi’s most important symphonic music is based on themes taken from the works of great English poets: Shakespeare’s “The Tempest”, “Romeo and Juliet”, “Hamlet” and Byron’s “Manfred”.

In 1893, on the 50th anniversary of the founding of the Cambridge University Musical Society, Tchaikovskyi was elected Doctor of Music “Honoris causa”, together with the Norwegian composer Grieg, and the French composer Saint Saens.

Чайковський в Англії

Чайковський уперше відвідав Англію в 1861 р. як мандрівник і турист. 27 років потому Чайковський знову приїжджає в Англію, щоб дати свій перший концерт за кордоном.

Лондонський концерт, на якому великий композитор виконував «Струнну серенаду» і «Сюїту № 3», був важливою подією у музичному житті англійської столиці.

У 1884 р. Чайковський писав, що він багато працює над вивченням англійської мови.

Пізніше він згадував, що досяг успіху у читанні творів Дікенса в оригіналі, через що вони набули «свіжої чарівності».


У 1893 р. на 50-літньому ювілеї утворення музичного суспільства Кембріджського університету Чайковський був обраний почесним доктором музики разом з норвезьким композитором Григом і французьким композитором Сен-Сансом.
Great Britain

Vocabulary:

Serenade for Strings [serəˈneɪd] — Струнна серенада

Suite [swiːt] — сюїта

to mention [menʃn] — згадувати
to succeed [səkˈsɪd] — мати успіхи, досягати мети

considerable [kənˈsɪdərəbl] — значний
Norwegian [nɔrˈweɪdʒən] — норвезький

“Honoris causa” [ˈɒnərisˈkɔːs] (lant.) — почесний

Questions:

1. When did Tchaikovskyi first visit England for the first time?
2. Did he travel as a tourist?
3. Who conducted Serenade for Strings and Suite No. 3?
4. Was it an important event in the musical life of England’s capital?
5. What was Tchaikovskyi’s most important symphonic music based on?

London — the Capital of the UK

London is the capital of Great Britain, its political, economic and cultural centre.

It is one of the largest cities in the world.

Its population is more than 11 000 000 people.

London is situated on the river Thames.

The city is very old and beautiful.

It was founded more than two thousand years ago.

Traditionally London is divided into several parts: the City, the Westminster, the West End and the East End.

The City is the oldest part of London, its financial and business centre.

The Westminster is the aristocratic official part of London.

It includes Buckingham Palace, where the Queen lives, and the Houses of Parliament.

The West End is the part where rich people live.
It is the most beautiful part of London. The best hotels, restaurants, shops, clubs, parks and houses are situated there.

The East End is an industrial district of London. There are many factories and the Port of London there.

London has many places of interest. One of them is the Houses of Parliament, the seat of the British Government. There one can see the famous Tower Clock Big Ben, the symbol of London.

Big Ben is the real bell which strikes every quarter of an hour. Another place of interest is Buckingham Palace. It’s the residence of the Queen.

There are many other places of interest in London: Trafalgar Square, Regent’s Park, Westminster Abbey and, of course, the British Museum.

It’s impossible to describe all places of interest. The best way to know London is to visit it.

Vocabulary:

financial [fəˈnɛnsɪəl] — фінансовий
to be divided [dɪˈvɑːdɪd] — бути поділеним, ділитися

Questions:

1. What is the population of London?
2. Where is London situated?
3. When was the city founded?
4. What is Big Ben?
5. Do you know any places of interest in London?
History of London

London is an old city.
It grew up around the first point where the Roman invaders found the Thames narrow enough to build a bridge.
There has been a “London Bridge” in the same area ever since.
They founded a Celtic settlement then known as Londinium and later they had turned it into a large port and important trading centre with a long wall of stone and brick.
Inside the wall low houses were built with bright red tiled roofs.
The Tower of London was founded by Julius Caesar and in 1066 rebuilt by William the Conqueror.
It was used as a fortress, a royal residence and a prison.
Now it is a museum and also the place where the Crown Jewels are kept.
Time passed.
London grew and became a great city.
The coming of the railway changed London for ever.
The first underground railway was opened in 1863 between Paddington and the City.
Today London is the capital of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.
It is one of the most beautiful cities in the world.
There are many places of interest in it and this city is well worth visiting.

Vocabulary:

invader [in’veida] — завойовник
tiled roof [taild] — черепичний дах
settlement ['setlmənt] — поселення
Conqueror [kɔŋkərə] — завойовник
Questions:
1. Is London a young city?
2. What river does it stand on?
3. Who founded the Tower of London?
4. What is the Tower now?
5. When was the first underground opened?

Places of Interest in London
There are a lot of places of interest in London.
Among them there are: Westminster Abbey, the Houses of Parliament, Buckingham Palace, St Paul's Cathedral, London Bridge, the Tower of London.

London stands on the river Thames.
Crossing the river by the Tower Bridge you can see the Tower of London.
It is one of the oldest buildings of the city.
Many centuries ago it was a fortress, a royal palace and then a prison.

Now it is a museum of arms.
On the bank of the Thames, not far from the Tower of London, you can see Westminster Palace, or the Houses of Parliament.
It is the seat of the British government and it is one of the most beautiful buildings in London.
In one of its towers there is famous Big Ben, the largest clock of England. It strikes every quarter of an hour.
Buckingham Palace is the Queen's official London residence.
Tourists always go to see the ceremony of changing the Guard there.
London has many fine squares.

Визначні пам'ятки Лондона
У Лондоні дуже багато визначних пам'яток.
Серед них: Вестмінстерське абатство, будинок Парламенту, Букінгемський палац, собор Святого Павла, Лондонський міст і Тауер.

Лондон розташований на ріці Темза. Проходячи по Тауерському мосту, ви відразу бачите лондонський Тауер. Це один із найстаріших будинків міста.
Багато сторіч назад це була фортеця, потім королівський палац, а потім — в'язниця.
Тепер тут музей зброї.
На березі Темзи, недалеко від Тауер-ра, ви можете бачити Вестмінстерський палац чи будинок Парламенту.
У ньому засідає англійський уряд, а крім того, це один з найкрасивіших будинків Лондона.
Одна з його веж — це знаменитий Біг Бен, найбільший годинник Англії. Він б'є кожну четвер години.
Букингемський палац — це офіційна резиденція королеви в Лондоні.
Туристи завжди йдуть туди для того, щоб подивитися церемонію зміни варти.
У Лондоні багато красивих площ.
Some of them are quiet, others are busy like Trafalgar Square.

Trafalgar Square is the central square of the city.
To the right of the square there is the National Gallery which has a fine collection of European paintings.
St Paul’s Cathedral is the biggest English church.
Another famous church is Westminster Abbey where kings, queens, and many famous people are buried.
London is also famous for its beautiful parks.
Hyde Park is the most democratic park in the world, as anyone can say anything he likes there.
Regent’s Park is the home of London Zoo.

Vocabulary:

prison [ˈprɪzn] — в'язниця
cathedral [kæθi:dral] — собор

Questions:

1. What is the oldest building in London?
2. What is the Westminster Abbey famous for?
3. What places of interest are there in London?
4. What river flows through London?
5. What is the most democratic park in the world?

Main Theatres in London

There are four theatres in London of notable beauty: the Theatre, the Curtain Theatre, the Rose Theatre and the Swan Theatre.
In each of them a different play is daily performed to the audience.
Of all the theatres the largest and the most magnificent is the Swan Theatre: for it accommodates three thousand people.
It is built of a mass of flint stones, and is supported by wooden columns painted in such an excellent imitation of marble that it is able to deceive even the most cunning people.

The actual date of the building and opening of the Swan Theatre is uncertain, but it was probably about 1596.

Built by Francis Landley the Rose Theatre was probably opened in 1597.

The Theatre — the first and most appropriately named playhouse was erected in London in 1576.

Built by James Burbage the Curtain Theatre was London’s second playhouse, opened in 1577, the year after the Theatre.

There is no definite information as to who built it.

Every day at two o’clock in the afternoon in the city of London two or three comedies are performed at separate places.

The places are built so that the actors act on a raised platform, and everyone can see everything well enough.

Vocabulary:

- notable [nəʊtəbl] — видатний
- audience [ˈɔːdɪəns] — глядачі
- magnificent [mæɡˈnɪfɪsnt] — пишний, розкішний
- to accommodate [əˈkɒmədeɪt] — пристосовувати; містити
- flint [flɪnt] — кремінь
- marble [ˈmɑːbl] — мармур

Questions:

1. How many main theatres are there in London?
2. What are they?
3. What is the largest of them?
4. When are the comedies performed?
5. The places are built on a raised platform, aren’t they?
Shopping in London

Harrods is probably the world's most famous shop.

For Londoners, there is a love-hate relationship: most say they hate it but then assure you it is the best place for silk socks, toys, flowers, tea or whatever.

Its 230 departments on five floors spread over twenty acres where 4 000 staff serve 50 000 customers.

There are six restaurants, five bars, a library, bank, pet shop, dry cleaners, everything from Indian cigarettes to domestic equipment to buy, a ticket agency and departments for christening, weddings and funerals.

Not content with selling everyone else's goods, Harrods own-make goods fill an in-house shop and Harrods green buses do London tours.

Henry Charles Harrod, a tea merchant, founded the institution with a small grocery shop and was pleased if his weekly takings were twenty pounds.

But some years later his son had takings 1000 pounds a week and then lost everything in the fire.

Then he wrote to his customers: “I greatly regret to inform you, that in consequence of the above premises being burnt down, your order will be delayed in the execution for a day or two”.

Such service drew more buyers.

Mагазини в Лондоні

Харродс, імовірно, найвідоміший магазин у світі.

Лондонці і люблять його і ні; багато хто стверджують, що вони не люблять його, але потім запевняють, що це найкраще місце, де продаються шовкові шкарпетки, іграшки, квіти, чай і все що завгодно.

Його 230 відділів на п'ятьох поверхах розташовані більш ніж на 20 акрах; і штат у 4000 чоловік обслуговує 50 000 покупців.

Тут є шість ресторанів, п'ять барів, бібліотека, банк, зоомагазин, хімчистка, тут можна купити усе — від індійських цигарок до побутових приладів; є також квіткова каса і відділи товарів для хрестин, весіль і похорону.

Не задовольняючись продажем чужих товарів, Харродс також робить своєю продукцією для заповнення внутрішнього ринку, і зелені автобуси з маркою Харродс здійснюють екскурсійні поїздки по Лондону.

Генрі Чарльз Харродс, торговець чаем, заснував установу з маленькою бакалійною крамницею і був задоволений, якщо його тижневий прибуток становив 20 фунтів.

Але кілька років по тому його син мав прибуток 1000 фунтів за тиждень, а потім втратив усе через пожежу.

Тоді він написав покупцям оголошення: «Я з жалем повідомляю вам, що внаслідок пожежі виконання замовлень буде відкладене на день-два».

Це залучило більшу кількість покупців.
In 1901 the store was designed with mosaic friezes and tiles in the Food Halls.

At all times there are so many people in the store that it is easy to lose the way. Information desks inside most entrances will help you to find your way in the stores as well as “The Store Guide”.

**Vocabulary:**

- Harrods [ˈhɑrədз] — Harrods, найвідоміший магазин у Лондоні
- relationship [ˈrɪləʃɪp] — стосунок, відношення
- to assure [əˈʃʊə] — переконувати
- department [ˈdepts] — відділ
- to spread [spred] — простягатися
- acre [ˈeɪkə] — акр
- staff [stæf] — штат
- premise [ˈprɛmɪs] — розписка, вексель
- execution [ɪkˈskjuːn] — оформлення документів, замовлення
- Indian [ˈɪndɪən] — індійський
- equipment [ɪkˈwɪpmənt] — обладнання, прилад
- christening [ˈkrɪstənɪŋ] — хрещення
- merchant [ˈmɜːtʃənt] — купець, торговець
- to regret [rɪˈɡret] — шкодувати
- in consequence of [ɪn kənˈsesəns] — внаслідок
- frieze [frɪz] — фриз

**Questions:**

1. What is the most famous shop in London?
2. What can you buy there?
3. How many departments are there?
4. What does the shop contain?
5. Who founded the shop?
6. What can help you to find your way in Harrods?

---

**History of Wales**

The Celts who had first arrived in Wales in the 6th and 7th centuries B. C. were defeated by the Romans in 43 A. D.

The Romans also killed large numbers of Druids, the Celtic religious leaders.

These Druids could not read or write, but they memorized all the things about the laws, history, medicine necessary for the Celts.
The Saxons pushed the Welsh further and further towards the west until, in the 8th century, a Saxon king called Offa built a long ditch to keep them out of England.

Then came the Normans who built huge castles to protect themselves from attacks from the west.

The Welsh fought for many years to win back their freedom.

The Welsh king, Llywelyn the Great, tried to unite his people against the English, but his grandson, Llywelyn the Last, was finally defeated in 1282.

The English built great castles in Harlech and Caernarfon, and in 1301 Edward I of England made his eldest son prince of Wales.

This tradition has been kept until the present day and in 1969 such a ceremony took place again.

The Queen made her eldest son, Charles, Prince of Wales at Caernarfon castle.

Questions:
1. Who arrived first in Wales?
2. Who were the Druids?
3. What did the Saxons do?
4. Why did the Welsh fight?
5. What are the great castles in Wales?
Cities and Towns of Great Britain

Great Britain is a highly developed industrial country, and most of the people live in large cities. Naturally, the capital comes first among the biggest industrial cities of the country. Lots of things such as clothes, food, planes and cars are made in London.

Birmingham is the biggest town in the centre of England. Machines, cars and lorries are made here. TV- and radio-sets are also produced in Birmingham. Manchester is an industrial capital of the North of England. It is a very old city. It is the centre of cotton industry. Manchester was the first city in Great Britain to build an airport in 1929. Manchester has many libraries, museums, art galleries and theatres.

Edinburgh is the capital of Scotland. It is one of the most beautiful cities in Europe. Its main attractions are the Floral clock made of growing flowers, and the Edinburgh Art Festivals, the annual summer performances of operas, dancing, music and drama.

Glasgow is another great Scottish city. It is famous for its shipyards. Glasgow is a great industrial city and also the centre of Scottish culture. Cardiff is the capital of Wales.

Великі і малі міста Великобританії

Великобританія — високорозвинена промислова країна, і більшість людей живуть у великих містах. Звичайно, столиця стоїть на першому місці серед найбільших промислових міст країни. Безліч продукції, такої як одяг, продукти харчування, літаки й автомобілі, виробляється у Лондоні. Бірмінгем — найбільше місто в центрі Англії.

Там роблять устаткування, легкові та вантажні автомобілі. У Бірмінгемі також роблять телевізори і радіоапарати. Манчестер — промислова столиця півночі Англії.

Це дуже старе місто. Це центр текстильної промисловості. Манчестер був першим із британських міст, у якому в 1929 році побудували аеропорт.

У Манчестері багато бібліотек, музеїв, картинних галерей і театрів. Единбург — столиця Шотландії.

Це одне з найкрасивіших міст Європи. Головна визначна пам’ятка міста — квітковий годинник, зроблений із живих квітів, і Единбурзький фестиваль мистецтв, щорічні літні покази опери, танців, музики і драматично-го мистецтва.

Глазго — ще одне шотландське місто. Він знаменитий своїми верфями. Глазго — велике промислове місто, а також центр шотландської культури. Кардифф — столиця Уельсу.
It is a big port and ships come here from all over the world.

Cambridge and Oxford are the oldest university towns in Great Britain.

Many great men studied in these universities: Cromwell, Newton, Byron, Darwin and others.

**Vocabulary:**

- **highly developed** ['hiəli dr'ivoləpt] — високорозвинений
- **clothes** [kləudz] — одяг
- **Birmingham** ['bɪmənm] — Бірмінгем
- **cotton** ['kɒtən] — бавовна, текстиль
- **Edinburgh** ['ɛdɪnbərə] — Единбург
- **shipyard** ['ʃɪpja:d] — верф
- **university town** ['juːnɪvɚsɪti tɔ:n] — університетське містечко

**Questions:**

1. What big cities and towns are there in Great Britain? Name them.
2. What city is the centre of the cotton industry in Great Britain?
3. What city is situated in the heart of England?
4. What is the town of Edinburgh famous for?
5. Name the oldest university towns in Great Britain.

**Sights of Great Britain**

There are a lot of places of interest in Great Britain.

They are both modern and ancient monuments, like Stonehenge and Hadrian Wall, Durham castle and York Cathedral.

The famous Lake District is in Northern England.

In Embleside one can visit the Steam Boat Museum.

The oldest ship in this museum — her name is “Dolly” — is 150 years old.

In York the tourists are usually attracted by the National Railway Museum.

It contains the history of Stephenson’s invention of steam locomotive.

But the main attraction is London places of interest.
Among them there are: Westminster Abbey, the Houses of Parliament, Buckingham Palace, St Paul’s Cathedral, London Bridge, the Tower of London.

London is situated on the river Thames. Its population is more than 11 million people.

The city is very old and beautiful. It was founded more than two thousand years ago.

On the Houses of Parliament one can see the famous Tower Clock Big Ben, the symbol of London.

Big Ben is the real bell which strikes every quarter of an hour.

Another place which you can admire is Buckingham Palace.

It’s the residence of the Queen.

London is also famous for its beautiful parks.

Hyde Park is the most democratic park in the world, as anyone can say anything he likes there.

Regent’s Park is the home of London Zoo.

I’d like to see all the sights myself.

Sered nich: Вестмінстерське абатство, будинок Парламенту, Букінгемський палац, собор св. Павла, Лондонський міст, Тауер.

Лондон розташований на ріці Темза. Його населення понад 11 000 000 чоловік.

Це — красиве давнє місто. Воно було засновано понад 2000 років тому.

На будинку Парламенту можна побачити знаменитий баштовий годинник Біг Бен, символ Лондона.

Насправді ж Біг Бен — це дзвін, що відбиває кожні чверть години.

Ще один пам’ятник, що може вразити, — Букінгемський палац.

Це резиденція королеви.

Лондон також знаменитий своїми парками.

Гайд-парк — найдемократичніший парк у світі, тут кожен може сказати усе, що хоче.

Лондонський зоопарк знаходиться в Риджентс-парку.

Мені б хотілося все це побачити на власні очі.

Vocabulary:

Stonehenge [ˈstəʊnhaŋɡ] — Стоунхендж
Hadrian Wall [ˈhædriən] — Адріанів (Римський) вал
Durham Castle [ˈdɔːrm kɔːsl] — Даремський замок
Embleside [ˈembləsaid] — Емблсайд
Stephenson [ˈsti:vənsoʊ] — Стівенсон
thousand [ˈθaʊzənd] — тисяча
residence [ˈrezɪdəns] — резиденція
district [ˈdistrɪkt] — район

Questions:
1. Where is the Lake District situated?
2. Where are the Steam Boat Museum and the National Railway Museum situated?
3. When was London founded?
4. Who lives in Buckingham Palace?
5. Where is the home of London Zoo?
The English Mint

The English Mint has existed for over a thousand years.
It was founded by the English King Athelstane.
Many well-known names are connected with the mint.
For example, Isaac Newton held the position of “Master of the Mint” for thirty years.
The English mint has carried out orders from many countries.
Not long ago the English mint carried out a great and important task.

After a two years study a special government commission had taken a decision to reform the English monetary system.
The difficulty of the change of money is partly psychological, the English people have been accustomed to count twenty shillings in a pound, twelve pence in a shilling.
They are accustomed to using crowns (five shillings), half-crowns and sixpence coins.
The new decision to divide the pound into one hundred “cents” will modernize the old monetary system, but the change will not be easy for millions of people.

There are also many technical difficulties, connected with issuing at least six thousand million coins.

Vocabulary:

mint [mint] — монетний двір
to carry out [ˈkæri əut] — виконувати
psychological [saɪˈɒlədʒɪkəl] — психологічний
crown [kraʊn] — крона (монета)

issue [ˈɪʃjuː] — випуск
to modernize [ˈməʊdənaɪz] — модернізувати
to be accustomed [əˈkʌstəmd] — звикати
Questions:
1. How many years has the English mint existed?
2. Who founded it?
3. How is Newton’s name connected with the mint?
4. Has a special government commission taken a decision to reform the English monetary system?
5. Why is it difficult to change the money?

UK Health Service

The National Health Service provides free treatment for people living in Britain and gives emergency treatment for visitors.

The greater part of the cost is met from taxes taken from people’s wages.

People also pay some money every month as a sort of insurance.

The National Health Service consists of three main parts: the general practitioners, the hospital and specialist services, and local health authority services.

Local health authorities are responsible for medical education, hospital building, environmental health, vaccination service and so on.

The centre of National Health Service is the general practitioner (GP).

Each person is registered with a certain doctor in his or her area.

The GP diagnoses, gives medical certificates, prescribes medicines.

Dentists and opticians usually have separate clinics.

They are not parts of health centres.

Oхорона здоров’я у Великобританії

Британська система охорони здоров’я забезпечує безкоштовну медичну допомогу населенню Великобританії і надає першу медичну допомогу приїжджим.

Велика частина грошей надходить у систему охорони здоров’я як податки, що віднимаються із зарплати.

Люди також платять визначену суму кожен місяць як страховку.

У національній системі охорони здоров’я є три основних складових: лікарі-терапевти, лікарняні і спеціалізовані служби і місцеві органи охорони здоров’я.

Місцеві органи охорони здоров’я несуть відповідальність за медичну освіту, будівництво лікарень, стан навколишнього середовища, щеплення і так далі.

У центрі національної системи охорони здоров’я — лікарі-терапевти.

Кожна людина прикріпленна до визначеного лікаря у своєму районі.

Терапевт ставить діагноз, видає лікарняні аркуші, прописує ліки.

Стоматологи й окуляри звичайно приймають в окремих клініках.

Вони не є частиною здоровоохоронних центрів.
There is also a medium-level hospital staff.
District nurses give injections, physiotherapy exercises at people’s homes.
Ward nurses take care of the ill in the hospital.
Regular medical inspections are held at schools.
Children receive various vaccinations and are examined by different specialists.
There also exists a school dental service in every school.
Much attention is paid to the educational programmes.
The Department of Health provides anti-smoking education programmes, alcohol education programmes, cancer prevention programmes and so on.
Much attention is paid to the AIDS and drug programmes.
Great Britain pays much attention to the qualification of doctors.
They are trained at 16 universities.
Besides, they get practice during their work at teaching hospitals.

Vocabulary:

to provide [prəˈvaɪd] — забезпечувати
emergency treatment [ɪˈmɜːdʒənsiˈtriːtmənt] — перша медична допомога
optician [ˈɒptɪʃən] — окуліст

Questions:
1. What does the National Health Service provide?
2. What do people pay every month?
3. What does the National Health Service consist of?
4. What are local health authorities responsible for?
5. What is in the centre of National Health Service?
English Cookery and Meals

With the exception of breakfast meals in England are much the same as in other countries.
The usual meals in Great Britain are breakfast, lunch, tea and dinner.
The English are very fastidious about their meals and keep to their meal times strictly.
Breakfast time is between 7 and 9 a.m.
Many people like to begin it with porridge.
English people eat porridge with milk or cream and sugar, but the Scots — and Scotland is the home of porridge — never put sugar in it.

Then comes bacon and eggs, marmalade with toast and tea or coffee.
For a change you can have a boiled egg, cold ham or perhaps fish.
The two substantial meals of the day, lunch and dinner, are more or less the same.
Lunch is usually taken at one o'clock.
Many people, who go out to work, find it difficult to come home for lunch and go to a cafe or a restaurant, but they never miss a meal.
Lunch is a big meal — meat or fish, potatoes and salad, puddings or fruit are quite usual for it.
In the afternoon, about four o'clock, the English have a cup of tea and a cake, or a slice or two of bread and butter.
Tea is very popular with the English; it may be called their national drink.

The English like it strong and fresh made.
Tea must be brewed as follows: one teaspoon for each person and one for the pot. They drink it with or without sugar, but almost always with milk. It is important to pour tea into milk, and not vice versa. Their “high tea” at 5 o’clock is very famous. Tea is accompanied by ham, tomatoes and salad, bread and butter, fruit and cakes. Dinnertime is generally about half past seven or later. In some houses dinner is the biggest meal of the day. They begin with soup, followed by fish, roast chicken, potatoes and vegetables, fruit and coffee. But in great many English homes the midday meal is the chief one of the day, and in the evening they only have light meal, for example, bread and cheese and a cup of coffee or cocoa and fruit.

Questions:
1. What are the usual meals in Great Britain?
2. What is “English Breakfast”?
3. When do they have lunch? What do English people eat for lunch?
4. What is “High Tea”?
5. What is the biggest meal of the day?

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exception</td>
<td>[ɪkˈseptʃən]</td>
<td>виняток</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal</td>
<td>[miːl]</td>
<td>їжа</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porridge</td>
<td>[ˈpɔrɪdʒ]</td>
<td>каша (вівсяна)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunch</td>
<td>[lʌntʃ]</td>
<td>ланч, другий сніданок</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fastidious</td>
<td>[ˈfæstɪdɪəs]</td>
<td>розбірливий, примхливий</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to pour</td>
<td>[təˈpɔːr]</td>
<td>наливати</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vice versa</td>
<td>[ˈvaiʃəvɜːzə]</td>
<td>навпаки</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The national character of the English has been described in different ways, but most commentators agree over one quality, which they describe as a sense of superiority or “insular pride”.

English patriotism is based on a deep sense of security. Englishmen as individuals may have been insecure, threatened with the loss of their job, unsure of themselves or unhappy in many ways. But as a nation they have been secure for centuries.

The English are a well-disciplined people and it is probably no exaggeration to say that they have the best manners in the world. They are all polite, they all know how to hold their knife and fork and how to behave in society. Besides they are never rude.

Coarse expressions are hardly ever used. You may be struck by the fact that life in Britain is less noisy.

The English display a surprising unity in a crisis. They also have a strong sense for public order.

The apparent coldness of Englishmen has been almost universally noted by the foreigners. But they also confess that once one gets to know an Englishman better, he turns out to be a very companionable fellow.

The typical feature of the English is their love of games.
They love playing all of them.
They play football and cricket; games are nowhere so popular as in England.

But however childish at their games they are very serious in business.

The British have long been famous as a nation of animal-lovers.
There is a pet in nearly every family and often the family dog or cat has a special chair near the fire, special food and a special place in the hearts of its owners.

All this doesn’t mean that the English differ from other human beings.
They certainly feel the same emotions: jealousy, envy, joy and happiness as others — only their external reactions are different.

When one speaks of the English, one usually means all the nations living within the borders of the United Kingdom — Scots, Welsh or Irish.

The difference between these nations is great enough for everyone who lives in Britain, but for the outside world it is less apparent.

Vocabulary:

character [kærəktə] — характер
d_ [praid] — гордість
superiority [sju:pərɪərɪtɪ] — перевага
insular [ˈɪnʃjʊərəlt] — острівний
security [ˈsɪkjʊərəti] — безпека

pet [pet] — улюбленець (про тварин)
exaggeration [ɪɡ,ˈeɡərəteɪʃən] — перебільшення
apparent [əˈpɛrənt] — явний, очевидний

Questions:

1. What is English patriotism?
2. Are the English different from other human beings?
3. What nation has the best manners in the world?
4. What may you be struck by?
5. What games are very popular in England?
English Traditions

Every country and every nation has its own customs and traditions. You cannot speak about England without speaking about its traditions and customs.

Englishmen are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up. The English are stay-at-home people. “There is no place like home”, they say.

When they don’t work they like to spend their days off at home with their families. Englishmen are very fond of fireplaces, that’s why many of them prefer the open fire to central heating.

They like to live in small houses with a small garden.

People all over the world know the saying “The Englishman’s home is his castle”. They say that English people keep to their traditions even in meals.

Porridge is the dish Englishmen are very fond of.

Many of them eat porridge with milk and sugar for breakfast.

As for the Scots, for example, they never put sugar in their porridge, they always put salt in it.

By the way, breakfast time in England is between seven and nine.

Then, between 12 and 2 there comes lunch time.

In some English houses lunch is the biggest meal of the day — they have meat or fish, vegetables, fruit or pudding.

In the afternoon, at tea-time the English like to have a cup of tea with milk.

англійські традиції

Кожна країна і кожна нація мають свої традиції і свої звичаї.

Не можна говорити про Англію, не говорячи про її традиції і звичаї.

Англійці пишаються своїми традиціями і всіляко підтримують їх.

Англійці — домосіди.

«Немає місця кращого, ніж дім», — говорять вони.

Коли вони не працюють, вони люблять проводити вихідні дні вдома з родиною.

Англійці дуже люблять каміни, тому багато хто з них віддає перевагу відкритому вогню над центральним опаленням.

Вони люблять жити в невеликих будинках з маленьким садом.

Люди в усьому світі знають прислів'я: «Будинок англійця — його фортеця».

Говорять, що англійці дотримуються традицій навіть у їжі.

Вівсяна каша — страва, яку вони дуже люблять.

Багато хто з них їдять вівсянку з молоком і цукром на сніданок.

А от шотландці, приміром, ніколи не кладуть цукор у вівсяну кашу, вони завжди кладуть туди сіль.

Між іншим, снідають в Англії між сьомою і дев’ятою годинами.

Потім, між дванадцятю і друою годинами, настає час ланчу.

У деяких англійських будинках ланч — найбільший прийом їжі за день, — вони їдять м’ясо чи рибу, овочі, фрукти чи пудинг.

Удень, у «час чаю», англійці люблять випити чашечку чаю з молоком.
Some Englishmen have their dinner late in the evening. For dinner they have soup, fish or meat, vegetables, pudding or fruit. For supper they usually have a glass of milk and a cake or a cup of tea and a sandwich. The English are tea-drinkers. They have it many times a day. Some Englishmen have tea for breakfast, tea at lunch time, tea after dinner, tea at tea-time and tea with supper. Some English families have “high tea” or big tea and no supper. For high tea they may have cold meat, bread and butter, cakes, and, of course, a lot of tea. The Englishmen always drink tea out of cups, never out of glasses.

**Vocabulary:**

- custom [ˈkʌstəm] — звичай
- to keep up [tə kep ap] — підтримувати
- fire-place [ˈfaɪəpleɪs] — камін
- pudding [ˈpudɪŋ] — пудинг

**Questions:**

1. What can you say about the English?
2. Where do the English like to spend their days off?
3. Where do they like to live?
4. What sayings do you know about the English?
5. Do they have traditions in meals?

---

**Gardening**

The most popular hobby of the British is gardening. Most English people love gardens, their own above all, and this is probably one reason why so many people prefer to live in houses rather than flats. In the suburbs you can see row after row of ordinary small houses.

---

**Садівництво**

Садівництво — найбільш популярне захоплення британців. Багато англійців люблять сади, і над усе — свої власні, і це, можливо, одна з причин, чому багато хто воліють жити в будинках, а не в квартирах. У передмісті ви можете бачити один за одним ряди простеньких маленьких будиночків.
And each house is surrounded by lots of flowers. Many people who have no gardens of their own have patches of land. They spend much leisure time working among their flowers, trees and vegetables. The British take part in numerous flower-shows and vegetable shows with very good prizes. Such shows are very popular in Britain. To many gardeners the process of growing the plants and taking care of them seems more important than the pleasure of looking at the flowers or the prospect of eating vegetables. In many places a competitive gardener’s desire is to grow the biggest cabbages or leeks or carrots. So this is the most favourite hobby of the British people.

Vocabulary:
gardening [ˈgɑːdnɪŋ] — садівництво
suburb [ˈsʌbɜːb] — пригород
ordinary [ˈɔːdnəri] — звичайний
to surround [səˈraʊnd] — оточувати
patch [pætʃ] — невелика ділянка землі
leisure [ˈliːzə] — дозвілля
prize [praɪz] — нагорода, приз
prospect [ˈprɒspekt] — перспектива
competitive [kəmˈpeɪtɪtɪv] — суперничаючий

Questions:
1. What is the most popular hobby of the British?
2. What is the reason of living in houses rather than flats?
3. What can you see near the houses?
4. How do the British prefer to spend spare time?
5. What kind of shows is popular in Britain?
6. What is the greatest desire of every gardener?
7. Do you have a garden and do you like working in it?

Fireplaces

In English homes, the fireplace has always been, until recent times, the focal point in the room.
People may like to sit at a window on a summer day, but for many cold months of the year they like to sit round the fire and watch the dancing flames.

In the Middle Ages the fireplaces in the halls of large castles were very wide.

Only wood was burnt, and it was brought from the forests.

Such wide fireplaces may be seen now in old inns.

Elizabethian fireplaces often had carved stone or woodwork over the fireplace.

In the 18th century space was often provided over the fireplace for a painting or mirror.

When coal fires became common, fireplaces became much smaller.

Grates were used to hold the coal.

Above the fireplace there was usually a shelf on which there was often a clock and framed photographs of the members of the family.

So sitting in front of the bright fire is one of the most popular hobbies of the British people.

Vocabulary:

- fireplace [ˈfaɪəpleɪs] — камін
- focal point [ˈfəʊkl point] — центральне місце
- flame [fleɪm] — полум’я
- Middle Ages [ˌmɪdlˈeɪdʒɪz] — середньовіччя
- castle [ˈkɑːsl] — замок
- inn [ɪn] — ідальня
- carved [ˈkærvd] — різьблений
- painting [ˈpeɪntɪŋ] — картина
- grate [ɡreɪt] — решітка

Questions:

1. What is the focal point of the room in English homes?
2. When do people like to sit round the fire?
3. What were the fireplaces like in the Middle Ages?
4. What are they like now?
5. What is there above the fireplace?
Almost every nation has a reputation of some kind. The English are reputed to be cold and reserved. In reality they are steady, easy-going and fond of sport. But these statements can’t be universal. Great Britain consists of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. Inhabitants of all these parts have a lot of differences. For example, the Scots are not English. The Scots are thought to be kind, but at first glance they are not so amiable. They don’t like to compromise, lean much upon logic and run much to extremes. The Scots are more extravagant, their traditions are more colourful and exciting. The Gaelic language and songs, the tartan, the bagpipes are completely Scottish. There is no other part of the British Isles where national spirit is stronger, national pride more intense and national traditions more appreciated than in Wales. The Welsh still wear proudly their national dress on holidays. The Welsh language is still very much a living force and is taught side by side with English at schools. Welshmen, who have a highly developed artistic taste, have contributed heavily to poetry, songs and drama.
The national Welsh Eisteddfod is devoted to music, literature and the arts.

It is a competitive festival and is held in the first week of August.

Prizes are awarded for music, prose and verse, painting and drama.

Many thousands of people attend it every year.

The main difference between the Irish and the British is their religion.

But there are some things that unite them all together.

One of them is gardening.

The love of gardens is deeply rooted in all the British people.

You will seldom see a suburban garden neglected.

Britain is also a nation of animal lovers.

Every family has a pet, which is paid much attention to.

Vocabulary:

steady [ˈstedɪ] — спокійний
glance [ɡlɑːns] — погляд

statement [ˈstɛstmənt] — твердження

Gaelic [ˈgeɪlɪk] — гельський
Eisteddfod [əˈistədfɔd] — Айстедфод, змагання бардів

Questions:

1. What do they say about the English?
2. What parts does Great Britain consist of?
3. What can you say about the Scots?
4. What are the Welsh?
5. What do you know about the National Welsh Eisteddfod?

British Customs

There exist some very unusual traditions in Great Britain.

One of them is Town Crier’s Rivalry.

Звичаї британців

У Великобританії існують дуже не­зичайні традиції.

Одна з них — змагання міських гла­шатаїв.
Town criers from all parts of the country gather at Hastings, Sussex, in August for the National Town Crier’s Championship.

For the contest they wear their traditional ceremonial uniforms and carry their handbells.

A procession headed by the Hastings band marches to an arena where the Mayor, members of town council and civil officials greet them.

To enable the judges to determine who possesses the most powerful voice the competitors are rowed to a small island about 75 yards from them.

From this little island they one by one make their cries and declaim a 150-word test piece.

Another curious tradition reminds us of our country.

Fun and jokes are very common on April Fool’s Day.

In Scotland an old name for April Fool is April-cuckoo.

For some reason the cuckoo is a symbol for daftness.

The return of the cuckoo and the arrival of spring are connected with all this fooling.

Still another interesting tournament is the Veteran Car Run.

The veteran cars are set out on the London — Brighton run each November.

There is a condition — every car taking part must be at least 60 years old.

The London — Brighton ride is not a race.

Великобританія

Міські глашатаї з усіх кінців країни збираються в Хастингсі, графство Сассекс, у серпні на Національний турнір міських глашатаїв.

На змагання вони одягають свою традиційну форму для церемоній і беруть свої ручні дзвіночки.

Процеся, очолювана оркестром Хастингса, крокує до арени, де її вітають мер, члени міської ради і цивільні службовці.

Щоб судді мали можливість визначити, хто ж володіє наймогутнішим голосом, тих, хто змагається, відвозять на човнах на маленький острів на відстані 75 ярдів.

З цього маленького острова вони один за одним оголошують тест, що складається з 150 слів.

Ще одна ціква традиція нагадує нам нашу країну.

Сміх і жарти звичайно супроводжують квітневий День дурнів.

У Шотландії стара назва Квітневого дурня — «Квітнева зозуля».

З якоїсь причини зозуля вважається символом дурості.

Повернення зозуль і прихід весни були пов’язані з цим днем.

Ще одне цікаве змагання — це парад автомобілів-ветеранів (старовинних машин).

Щорічно в листопаді старі автомобілі збираються на переїзд із Лондона у Брайтон.

Існує важлива умова — кожен автомобіль, що бере в ньому участь, повинен бути принаймні 60-літньою давністю випуску.

Переїзд із Лондона у Брайтон зовсім не перегони.
Participants are limited to a maximum average speed of 20 miles per hour. At 8 o'clock comes the “Off”. The main things in this tournament are the cars that represent the history of the country.

**Vocabulary:**
- town criers [ˈtaun ˈkraɪəz] — міські оповісники
- handbell [ˈhændbel] — ручний дзвіночок
- Sussex [ˈsʌsɪks] — Сусекс
- Mayor [ˈmeə] — мер
- to possess [pəˈzes] — володіти, мати
- fool [fuːl] — дурень
- reason [ˈriːzn] — причина
- Brighton [ˈbrɛtən] — Брайтон

**Questions:**
1. What do you know about unusual traditions and customs in Great Britain?
2. Where are the competitors of Town Crier’s Rivalry rowed to?
3. How do they call an April Fool in Scotland?
4. What can you say about Veteran Car Run?
5. What is an important condition in Veteran Car Run?

**The Ukrainian Diaspora**

The term “diaspora” means those Ukrainians who reside abroad. Nowadays every third Ukrainian lives beyond Ukraine.

The greatest number of people of the Ukrainian origin (almost 2 million) live in the USA; one million people live in Canada and half a million live in Poland and Romania.

The Ukrainian immigrants also live in Brazil, Argentina, Czechia, Slovakia, Yugoslavia, France, Australia, Austria, Hungary, Holland, New Zealand and other countries.

The Ukrainian emigration started as early as the beginning of the 18th century when several dozens of Mazepa’s followers emigrated to France. Later on a part of Zaporizhian Cossacks, who were persecuted by the Russian government, settled beyond the Danube.
But actually mass emigration from Ukraine began in the second half of the 19th century.
This first wave of emigration was caused mainly by economic reasons.

The second wave of emigration from Ukraine began after the Civil War of 1918—1920 in Russia. It was caused by both political and economic reasons.

The third wave of emigration was caused by the Second World War and included the Ukrainians, liberated by the Allied troops from the fascist labour camps, and the rests of the division SS “Galychyna” and Ukrainian Rising Army.

Nowadays we witness the fourth wave of emigration from Ukraine, which is being caused by the grave economic situation in the country. There are about 30 000 Ukrainians living in Great Britain now. Mostly they reside in such cities as Manchester, Nottingham and Coventry.

Vocabulary:

- immigrant [ˈɪmɪɡrənt] — іммігрант
- emigrant [ˈemɪɡrənt] — емігрант (той, хто виїжджає з країни)
- dozen [ˈdaʊzn] — дюжина
- follower [ˈfɒləʊər] — послідовник
- to persecute [ˈpɜːsɪkjuːt] — переслідувати (за переконання)
- to reside [rɪˈsaɪd] — проживати
- to witness [ˈwɪtnɛs] — бути свідком
- grave [ɡreɪv] — серйозний, важкий, погрозливий
- Allied troops [ˈælaid truːps] — війська союзників
- Ukrainian Rising Army [juːˈkrɛmɪən ˈteɪziŋ ˈɔːmi] — Українська повстанська армія (УПА)

Questions:

1. What does the term “Diaspora” mean?
2. What countries do the Ukrainians live now in?
3. When did the Ukrainian emigration to other countries start?
4. How many waves of the Ukrainian emigration have there been?
The United States of America is one of the greatest countries in the world. It is situated on the North American continent and is washed by three oceans: the Pacific, the Atlantic and the Arctic. The USA only borders on two countries — Canada and Mexico. This great country has a lot of mountains, rivers, lakes. The main mountains are the Appalachians and the Cordilleras. The longest rivers are the Mississippi and the Missouri. The climate of the country is very changeable. In the southern part it is subtropical while the northern part has very cold weather in winter. America has fifty states and one federal District of Columbia where the capital of the country is situated. The capital of the USA is Washington. It stands on the Potomac river in the eastern part of the country. The main cities are located on the Pacific and Atlantic coasts. New-York is the largest city of the country. Other large cities are San-Francisco, Los-Angeles, Detroit, Chicago, Phoenix and Dallas. The USA is a country of highly developed industry and agriculture. The main industrial centres are Chicago and Detroit, with their...
greatest automobile company “General Motors”.
There are many farms with various agricultural products.
Grain, fruit and vegetables are grown on numerous fields especially in the South.
The USA is a country with great holidays, customs and traditions.
It is one of the most beautiful and interesting countries in the world.

Vocabulary:

changeable ['tʃeɪndʒəbl] — мінливий
the Appalachians [æpə'leɪtʃənz] — Аппалачі
the Cordilleras [kɔːdᵻ'leɪərəz] — Кордильєри
the Missouri [mɪ'zuərɪ] — р. Міссурі
Chicago [ˈʃɪkəɡoʊ] — Чикаго
Phoenix [ˈfɪnəks] — Фенікс
agricultural [æɡrɪkəlˈtʃərl] — сільськогосподарський

Questions:
1. Where is the USA situated?
2. What are the main mountains in the USA?
3. What are the main rivers in the USA?
4. Where are the main cities located?
5. What kind of country is the USA?

● Political System of the USA
The United States of America is a federal republic.
Since 1959 the Federation comprises 50 states.
The president is the head of the state and executive body.
He is also the commander-in-chief of the army and Navy of the USA.
The president and vice-president are elected for a term of four years.
All the legislative power is vested in Congress, which consists of the Senate and the House of Representatives.
There are 100 senators and 435 members in the House of Representatives.
Two Senators from each state are elected by popular vote for a term of six years, the Representatives are elected for two-year term.

Both houses must approve the bill for it to become a law.

An essential role in the US political system is played by the Supreme Court, which may declare a law, passed by Congress, to be contradictory to the Constitution of the country.

The various states have legislative and executive bodies of their own. Their structure, function and competence are determined by the Constitution of each state.

There is an elected governor at the head of each state.

States enjoy independence in their domestic affairs, including financial matters. However, state laws and actions of state authorities must not conflict with the Constitution of the USA.

Vocabulary:

to comprise [kəmˈpraɪz] — включати
commander-in-chief [ˈkɔmədər in ˈtʃif] — головнокомандувач

to be vested [ˈvestɪd] — бути скупченим

Questions:

1. Who is the head of the state?
2. How are the senators elected?
3. Who stands at the head of each state?
4. How many senators are there in the House of Representatives?
5. How many states are there in the USA?
The USA occupies the central part of the North American continent. It borders on Canada in the north and Mexico in the south. It is washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the east, by the Pacific Ocean in the west and by the Gulf of Mexico in the south. The present territory of the USA consists of three separate parts. The USA proper and Alaska are situated in North America. The Hawaii are situated in the central part of the Pacific Ocean. The area of the country is about 9,400,000 km². Its population is about 256 million people. No general statement can be made about the landscape of the USA. It is a country of mountains and prairies, valleys and deserts. About one half of the territory in the west is occupied by the Cordilleras. In the east there are the Appalachian Mountains. Between these great mountain chains central and large valleys lie. The Rocky Mountains extend from Alaska through Canada and the USA to Mexico. Together with the Sierra Nevada Mountains in California they have snow-capped peaks and clear mountain lakes. The Great Lakes are situated in the north-east of the country. They are Lake Ontario, Lake Huron, Lake Erie, Lake Superior, Lake Michigan.
The largest rivers of the USA are the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Columbia, the Colorado, and the Yukon.

American rivers have very expressive names: the Snake River, the Milk River, the Green River, the Sweetwater River, the White River.

The USA has rich deposits of coal, oil, iron, zinc, copper, silver, phosphate rock, natural gas, uranium and non-ferrous metals.

The country has one fourth of the world’s coal deposits.

The USA is situated in the central part of the North American Continent.

It is washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the east, by the Pacific Ocean in the west and by the Gulf of Mexico in the south.

The climate varies from moderate to subtropical continental.

Vocabulary:

to separate [əˈseprət] — відокремлювати

the Gulf of Mexico [gəlf əv ˈmeksɪkəʊ] — Мексиканська затока

the Hawaii [həˈwaiiː] — Гавайські острови

the Appalachian Mountains [æpəˈleɪtʃiən ˈmaʊntənz] — Аппалачі

The USA has rich deposits of coal, oil, iron, zinc, copper, silver, phosphate rock, natural gas, uranium and non-ferrous metals.

Questions:

1. What is the territory of the USA?
2. Where is the country situated?
3. What is the population of the USA?
4. What are the Great Lakes? Where are they situated?
5. What is the longest river in the USA?
Along the Pacific and Atlantic coasts it is oceanic.
Most of the USA territory is marked by sharp differences between winter and summer.
Average winter temperature is about 25 degrees below zero in Alaska and up to 20 degrees above zero in Florida.
Average summer temperature varies from 14 degrees above zero in the western part and up to 32 degrees above zero in the southeast.
The largest amount of rainfall is noted in Alaska and the southwest of the country.
In winter the northern part of the USA usually has a steady snow cover.
The largest rivers of the USA are the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Yukon, the Columbia, and the Colorado.
The Great Lakes are situated in the northeast of the country.
The region of the Cordilleras has semi­deserts, while the rest of the territory is rich in forests.
In California, where the climate is usually mild, the famous fruit­raising area is located.
Californian oranges, grapefruit and lemons are sold all over the USA and other parts of the world.
The plains of Wyoming, stretching for hundreds of miles, are covered with short grass and sagebrush.
This is the land of cattle­ and sheep breeding.
The south of the country has been an agricultural region for many years.
It raises the nation’s cotton and tobacco.
The USA also grows wheat, corn and different vegetables.

Уздовж узбережжя Тихого й Атлантичного океанів клімат океанічний.
На більшій частині території США відзначається різке розходження температур зими і літа.
Середня температура узимку змінюється від 25 градусів нижче нуля на Алясці до 20 градусів вище нуля у Флориді.
Середня температура влітку — від 14 градусів вище нуля на заході до 32 градусів вище нуля на південному заході країни.
Найбільша кількість опадів спостерігається на Алясці і на південному заході країни.
Узимку в північній частині США звичайно спостерігається стійкий сніжний покрив.
Найбільші ріки США — Міссиссіпі, Міссурі, Юкон, Колумбія і Колорадо.
Великі озера розташовані на північному сході країни.
У районі Кордильєр знаходяться напівпустелі, у той час як інша частина території багата лісами.
У Каліфорнії, де клімат звичайно м'який, розташована знаменита область вирощування фруктів.
Каліфорнійські апельсини, грейпфрути і лимони продаються по всій країні та в інших частинах світу.
Рівнини Вайомінгу, що пролягають на сотні миль, вкриті низькою травою і полином.
Це місцевість, де розводять овець та іншу худобу.
Південь країни багато років був сільськогосподарською областю.
Там вирощують бавовну і тютюн.
У США також вирощуються пшениця, кукурудза і різні овочі.
There are a lot of national parks in the USA, the aim of which is to preserve the beauty and treasures of the nature.

**Vocabulary:**
- **moderate** [ˈmɒdɪrət] — помірний
- **coast** [kəʊst] — узбережжя
- **Yukon** [juːkɒn] — Юкон
- **Wyoming** [waɪˈɒmɪŋ] — Вайомінг
- **steady** [ˈstɛdi] — тривалий
- **wheat** [wheat] — пшениця
- **sagebrush** [ˈseɪdʒbɹʊʃ] — полин
- **treasure** [ˈtreʒə] — багатство

**Questions:**
1. What oceans is the USA washed by?
2. What kind of climate in along the northern coast line of the USA?
3. What is the average summer temperature in the USA?
4. Where are the Appalachians, the Rocky Mountains situated?
5. What is grown in the USA?

---

**From the History of the USA**
**An Episode from the History of the USA**

The most prominent episode from the history of the USA is the formation of the state itself.

The growing independence and economic strength of colonies disturbed Great Britain.

The colonies were viewed as a source of raw materials and a market for England alone.

After the Seven Years’ War (1756—1763) the British Government increased its pressure on the colonies and put all possible obstacles in the way of their independent industrial development and trade.

It imposed new taxes and duties, which affected the interests of the colonists.

As a result in Philadelphia in 1774 merchants, ship-owners, lawyers and others revolted and decided to stop trade with Britain and boycott the British goods.

---

**З історії США**
**Епізод з історії США**

Найвидатніший епізод історії США — це утворення самої держави.

Зростаюча незалежність і економічна сила колоній турбувала Великобританію.

Колонії розглядалися як джерело сировини і ринок збуту для Англії, і тільки для неї.

Після Семирічної війни (1756—1763) британський уряд посилав свій тиск на колонії і ставив всілякі перешкоди на шляху їх незалежного промислового розвитку і торгівлі.

Він встановлював нові податки й обов’язки, що торкалися інтересів колоністів.

У результаті в 1774 році у Філадельфії купці, власники судів, адвокати й інші повстали і вирішили припинити торгівлю з Британією і бойкотувати британські товари.
A prologue to the War for Independence in the North America was the “Boston tea-party” (1773), as it was called.

The British Government granted the East India Company the right of tax-free export of tea to the colonies. It caused indignation among the colonists, and especially the merchants involved in the sale of tea.

In December 1773 a group of members of the organization called the “Sons of Liberty” boarded the British ships in the port of Boston and dumped the whole cargo of tea into the harbour. Soon after that the port was closed, all kinds of public gatherings were prohibited. All these measures further sharpened the conflict between Great Britain and the colonies.

The War for Independence of the American colonies began with a battle of colonists against British troops in April 1775 at Concord and at Lensington not far from Boston.

On July 4, 1776, the Continental Congress declared the united colonies to be independent of Great Britain.

The new state was called the United States of America and the 4th of July became its national holiday.

The Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence proclaiming the equality of all people.

Thomas Jefferson, a follower of the British philosophers, was the author of the Declaration.

Прологом до Війни за незалежність у Північній Америці стало так зване «бостонське чаювання» (1773).

Британський уряд надав право Східно-Індійській компанії на безмитний експорт чаю в колонії. Це викликало обурення серед колоністів, і особливо серед купців, що займалися продажем чаю.

У грудні 1773 року група з організації, званої «Сини Волі», піднялася на борт британських кораблів у порту Бостон і спустила у гавань весь вантаж чаю. Незабаром після цього порт був закритий, усі види суспільних зборів заборонені.

Усі ці заходи ще більше загострили конфлікт між Великобританією і колоніями.

Війна за незалежність американських колоній почалась з битви колоністів проти британських військ у квітні 1775 року поблизу Конкорду і Ленсінгтону неподалік від Бостона.

4 липня 1776 року Континентальний Конгрес оголосив незалежність з’єднаних колоній від Великобританії.

Нова держава одержала назву Сполучені Штати Америки, і день 4 липня став національним святом.

Конгрес прийняв Декларацію незалежності, що проголошує рівність усіх людей.

Томас Джефферсон, послідовник британських філософів, був автором Декларації.
The battle at Saratoga (1777), when the Americans forced a large British army to capitulate, was a turning point in the long, hard War for Independence.

The Americans were supported by France.

In 1783 Britain finally and formally recognized American independence.

George Washington was elected the first president of the new republic.

Later on his name was given to the capital which was built in the federal District of Columbia.

Vocabulary:

prominent [ˈprɔmənənt] — видатний
independence [ˌɪndɪˈpendəns] — незалежність

pressure [ˈpreʃə] — тиск
to increase [ɪnˈkriːz] — посилювати

Questions:

1. What is the most prominent episode from the history of the USA?
2. What was a prologue to the War of Independence?
3. When did the War of Independence begin?
4. When did the Continental Congress declare the united colonies to be independent of Great Britain?

Discovery

“In 1492 Columbus sailed Ocean Blue”.

This little rhyme many American children learn to remember the date when Christopher Columbus “discovered” America.

Was Christopher Columbus really the first person to discover the continent and return home to tell about it?

Probably not, but he was the first to return to Europe and tell all about what he believed to be a new route to Asia.
Most people in Columbus’ days thought that the earth was flat, and they did not believe that a route to the India across the Atlantic would be shorter and safer than a route around Africa.

He did not have the money to buy ships and hire sailors.

At first Columbus asked the king of Portugal to pay for his voyage.

The king asked his advisers, and after their report he denied to help Columbus.

Then Columbus travelled to Spain to ask Queen Isabella and King Ferdinand for help.

Six years later Isabella gave Columbus three caravels: the Santa Maria, the Nina, and the Pinta.

Columbus’s crew last saw land on the eastern horizon on the 9th of September, 1492.

On the 12th of October, 1492, when everybody was very tired and anxious, the lookout on the Pinta saw something like a white cliff shining in the moonlight.

Columbus named the land he had reached San Salvador.

He thought they landed in Asia.

On the 15th of March, 1493, Columbus was back to Spain with two of his ships.

He brought parrots, an alligator, a few pieces of gold jewelry, some unusual plants, and six American Indians.

Vocabulary:

Christopher Columbus [krɪstəfə kələmbəs] — Христофор Колумб
discovery [dɪsˈkɑːvərɪ] — відкриття

flat [fleɪt] — плаский
to deny [dɪˈnai] — відмовити
crew [kruː] — екіпаж
Questions:
1. Who financed Christopher Columbus's expedition?
2. For how long did Columbus travel?
3. What continent did Columbus think he had reached?
4. How many ships did Columbus return with?

The Colonies

European people came to the New World for many reasons.

Some, like Columbus, came looking for new trade routes, others were seeking fortune, many of them were missionaries who wanted to convert the Native Americans.

The most well-known first settlers were the Pilgrims.

The Pilgrims came seeking religious freedom.

They founded the Plymouth colony in Massachusetts in 1620.

The Pilgrims originated from England.

The trip across the ocean was terribly unpleasant.

They had little food and fresh water.

They arrived at the Mayflower in the winter of 1620, in the north east of America.

The Pilgrims learned from the Native Americans how to live in this New World.

The Native Americans had a ceremony thanking nature for the food they received from the harvest.

Today Americans continue to celebrate Thanksgiving with their family and friends.

There were also other religious groups, such as the Quakers, who founded the colony Pennsylvania.

Other group is the Shakers, known for their beautiful wood work, and the Irish Catholics who settled in the colony of Maryland.
Vocabulary:

- trade [trend] — торговельний
- Plymouth [‘pliməθ] — Плімут
- fortune [foʊtʃn] — доля
- harvest [haːvist] — врожай
- religious [rɪˈlidʒəs] — релігійний
- convert [kənˈvɜːt] — тут: обернути

Native Americans [ˈnetɪv ə’mərɪkənz] — корінні американці
Quakers [ˈkwɔːkəz] — квакери
Irish Catholics [ˈairɪʃ ˈkeθəlɪks] — ірландські католики

Questions:

1. Who were the first settlers?
2. Where did the Pilgrims come from?
3. What did they seek in the New World?
4. What colony was founded by the Pilgrims?
5. What were other religious groups who came to the New World?

The Civil War

The purpose of the Civil War was to restore the Union of the Individual states and to preserve the Constitution. However, Congress was determined to make emancipation (freeing of the slaves) the primary issue of the war. Just before the outbreak of the Civil War, two issues faced the nation.

The first was the freeing of the slaves, which the Southerners believed was a loss of property. The second issue was the right of secession (the withdrawal of a state from the Union). The Constitution was an agreement between the states, so therefore each state had the right to leave the Union when they pleased.

These issues divided the nation. In February of 1861, the Confederation states of America was formed. It consisted of South Carolina, North Carolina, Virginia, Tennessee, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Arcansas and Texas.
On the 1st of January, 1863, President Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation, declaring the freedom of slaves. However, the actual end of slavery did not come until 1865. The Civil War came to an end on the 1st of April, 1865. With the end of the war came the concept that the United States is not a group of states but rather one nation. With the emancipation of the slaves, new issues, such as civil rights, appeared.

**Vocabulary:**
- **purpose** [ˈpəʊsə] — мета, намір
- **to restore** [rɪˈstɔː] — поновити
- **to determine** [dɪˈtɜːrmine] — вирішувати
- **issue** [ˈɪʃuː] — (спірне) питання
- **property** [ˈprɔpərti] — власність
- **Southerners** [ˈsʌðənərz] — жителі Півдня
- **South Carolina** [ˈsauθ kærələm] — Південна Кароліна
- **Virginia** [ˈvaːdʒɪnə] — Вірджинія
- **Tennessee** [ˈtenəsiː] — Теннессі
- **Georgia** [ˈdʒɔɡəri] — Джорджия
- **emancipation** [ɪˈmænʃəpʃən] — звільнення (від залежності)

**Questions:**
1. What were the two main reasons for the Civil War?
2. Do you believe the Southern states had the right to secede from the nation?
3. Why do you think it was so important to the North to preserve the nation?

**World War I**

When the war broke out in Europe in 1914, Americans declared neutrality. However, this proved to be a difficult policy. Several events led to the involvement of America in the war, including the sinking of the British passenger liner Lusitania on May 7, 1915 by the Germans, resulting in the deaths of 128 Americans and long strikes against American ships in 1917.

---

1 січня 1863 р. президент Лінкольн видав Декларацію про еманципацію і проголосив волю рабам. Проте остаточнє рабство було ліквідовано в 1865 р. Громадянська війна закінчилася 1 квітня 1865 р. Із закінченням війни прийшли до концепції, що Сполучені штати не група штатів, а, скоріше, одна нація. Зі звільненням рабів піднімалися нові питання, такі як цивільні права.

**Перша світова війна**

Коли війна вибухнула в Європі в 1914 р., Америка оголосила нейтралітет. Проте, це виявилося важкою політичною. Кілька подій привело до залучення Америки у війну, включаючи затоплення британського пасажирського лайнера «Луситанія» німцями 7 травня 1915 р., результатом чого стало 128 смертей американців, і продовження страхітів проти американських кораблів у 1917 р.
President Wilson asked Congress for a declaration of war against Germany. Congress declared war four days later on April 6, 1917.

Beside American troops, the allies needed naval forces, ammunition, industrial goods, and food.

The American Expeditionary Force under the leadership of General John Pershing arrived to France in 1917, and in July 1918, along with French troops, drove the Germans back close to their border.

Eventually, Germany agreed to consider a peace plan, and a ceasefire was signed on November 11, 1918.

Questions:
1. When did the World War I start?
2. What events led to the involvement of America in the war?
3. Who asked Congress for a declaration of war against Germany?

The Northeast

The “Melting Pot”

The skyscrapers of New York City, the steel mills of Pittsburgh, the automobile assembly lines of Detroit... these symbols of industrial America belong to this region.

Millions of Europeans immigrated to this industrial area.

It became known as the “melting pot”, the fusion of people from many nations into Americans.

Vocabulary:

sinking [sɪŋkɪŋ] — затоплення

troop [truːp] — військо

to arrive [əˈrɛɪv] — прибувати

The Expeditionary Force [ˌekspəˈdɪʃənəri ˈfɔːs] — експедиційний корпус

General Pershing [ˈdʒenərəl ˈpɜːʃɪŋ] — генерал Першинґ

cease-fire [ˈsiːsfaɪə] — припинення вогню

The Northeast

The “Melting Pot”

The skyscrapers of New York City, the steel mills of Pittsburgh, the automobile assembly lines of Detroit... these symbols of industrial America belong to this region.

Millions of Europeans immigrated to this industrial area.

It became known as the “melting pot”, the fusion of people from many nations into Americans.

The Northeast

The “Melting Pot”

The skyscrapers of New York City, the steel mills of Pittsburgh, the automobile assembly lines of Detroit... these symbols of industrial America belong to this region.

Millions of Europeans immigrated to this industrial area.

It became known as the “melting pot”, the fusion of people from many nations into Americans.

The Northeast

The “Melting Pot”

The skyscrapers of New York City, the steel mills of Pittsburgh, the automobile assembly lines of Detroit... these symbols of industrial America belong to this region.

Millions of Europeans immigrated to this industrial area.

It became known as the “melting pot”, the fusion of people from many nations into Americans.

The Northeast

The “Melting Pot”

The skyscrapers of New York City, the steel mills of Pittsburgh, the automobile assembly lines of Detroit... these symbols of industrial America belong to this region.

Millions of Europeans immigrated to this industrial area.

It became known as the “melting pot”, the fusion of people from many nations into Americans.
More than any other part of the country, this region reflects European culture and traditions. This great area was wilderness three centuries ago. As soon as permanent settlements were made in the new land, changes occurred in the people. Faced with the problems of a new unknown land, these settlers had to give up many of the traditional behaviour patterns of Europe. They developed a cooperative and democratic life style that laid the foundations of the American political system and pragmatic philosophy. Today a visitor sees wooded hills and factory chimneys, fields and concrete roads, farm-houses and office buildings. It is a country of many brooks, of low mountain ridges, of rolling hills, of orchards, and wild forests in the northern part of the state of Maine. Most of the farms are devoted to one type of farming: dairy cattle, vegetables, chickens. Most specialize in products that can be delivered fresh to the cities nearby. The agricultural production meets the needs of the region’s industrial economy. The area is a good market, because there is an industrial and agricultural population financially able to buy clothing, goods, equipment, services, and food products. Proximity to the sea is one of the most important reasons for this region to become a centre of heavily developed trade and industry.
Vocabulary:

- skyscraper ['skæs'kreɪpə] — хмарочос
- concrete ['kɒŋkrɪt] — бетонний
- fusion [fjuːn] — збіг, злиття
- brook [brʊk] — струмок
- proximity [prəʊˈsɪməti] — близькість

Questions:

1. What symbols belong to the “Melting Pot”?
2. What region reflects European culture and traditions?
3. What can a visitor see in this part of the Northeast?

Cities of the Sea

The sea means much to the industrial Northeast.

The coast northward from Long Island borders on one of the world’s “fish bowls”, and the area rich in the tiny plants and animals that support a fish life.

Along this coast there are many little fishing towns and several busy fishing ports.

The sea also means white sand beaches to which millions of city people go for summer holidays.

The largest seaports of the region are Boston, New York, Philadelphia, and Baltimore.

These four cities are not only important ports but also leading industrial centers.

On the map Philadelphia appears to lie inland, but it is on the wide, deep tidewater of the Delaware River mouth and is a good harbour for the large ocean-going vessels.

Yearly, about 6 000 vessels move into Baltimore’s natural harbour.

Timber, ores, crude oil, and raw materials from all over the world are unloaded to American industry in exchange for grain and machinery.
World trade helps to make Baltimore America’s sixth largest port.

Vocabulary:
tiny [ˈtaɪni] — дрібний, маленький
Philadelphia [ˌfɪləˈdɛlfjə] — Філадельфія
Baltimore [ˈbɔːltɪmər] — Балтімор

Questions:
1. What does the sea mean to the industrial Northeast?
2. Which cities are the most important seaports of the area?
3. What is a “fish bowl”?

New England

Boston is located in a region which early became an important centre of industry.

It was primarily an import and export city for the northeastern corner of the country.

This stormy land became the “workshop of the nation”.

Today it makes many machine tools and heavy electrical motors, looms for weaving cloth, and other precision instruments.

Farms along the Connecticut river specialize in tobacco growing.

In thinly populated Maine, potato farming is combined with lumbering or fishing.

Throughout the whole of New England, there is also a widely developed tourist industry which invites holiday-makers to the forests, mountains, and sea both in cool summers and snowy winters.

Vocabulary:
primarily [ˈpraɪmərɪli] — первісно
stormy [ˈstoʊmi] — буйний

Nova Angliя

Бостон розташований у районі, що рано став важливим промисловим центром.

Спочатку це було місто, що спеціалізується на імпорти й експорти в північно-східній частині країни.

Ця буйна земля стала «майстернею нації».

Сьогодні вона виробляє багато верстатів і важких електромоторів, ткацьких верстатів для сукна й інших точних інструментів.

Ферми уздовж ріки Коннектикут спеціалізуються на вирощуванні тютюну.

У мало населеному штаті Мен вирощування картоплі сполучається із заготівлею лісоматеріалів чи рибальством.

У Новій Англії у всіх відношениях також широко розвинута туристична індустрія, що запрошує відпускників у ліси, гори і на море як у прохолодні літо, так і в сніжну зиму.

Vocabulary:
primarily [ˈpraɪmərɪli] — первісно
workshop [ˈwɜːkʃəp] — майстерня
loom [luːm] — ткацький верстат
Questions:
1. Where is Boston located?
2. What does the “workshop of the nation” mean?
3. What do farms along the Connecticut River specialize in?

The Base of Industry
The greatest part of America’s heavy industry depends upon three resources: iron ore from the Lake Superior area, coal from western Pennsylvania, and transportation across the Great Lakes District.

Steel making is basic, but there are many other related industries in this area, too: glass, nonferrous metals, chemicals, rubber, and machine-building industries.

Pittsburgh is the first of the great steel cities.

The other great steel-making centres are Chicago, Detroit, Youngtown, Cleveland, Toledo, Erie, Buffalo.

Detroit is the heart of the automobile industry.

It began as a wagon-making town.

The cargo tonnage which passes between Lake Superior and Lake Huron almost equals the combined capacity of the Panama and Suez Canals.

Vocabulary:

base [beɪs] — основа, база
rubber [ˈrʌbə] — каучук, гума
Pennsylvania [ˌpensɪlˈveɪnjə] — Пенсильванія
wagon [ˈwæɡən] — возик, візок
cargo [ˈkɑːɡo] — вантаж
Suez Canal [suːzˈkɑːnəl] — Суецький канал

Questions:
1. What is the most important industry of the area?
2. Which city is the centre of steel making industry?
3. Is the cargo tonnage between Lake Superior and Lake Huron considerable?
Outstanding Events from the History of America

The first voyages along the coast of modern South and Central America were made by Amerigo Vespucci.

That is why, in the 16th century German cartographer named this fourth part of the world after the explorer.

At the beginning of the 17th century European colonies were founded on the territory of the modern USA.

In 1620 first colonists landed at Plymouth Rock.

They came from England on board the “Mayflower”.

Most of them were Puritans or former Anglicans who were called pilgrims.

Their hopes were connected with the promises of the Bible about the land “of honey and milk”, and America was thought to be this land.

Later on Dutch, Spanish and Swedish colonies appeared.

People who came to America were mostly farmers, who wanted to exploit new lands.

The development of trade, industry and agriculture in the colonies constantly conflicted with the economic policy of Britain.

After constant pressure on the colonies on July 4, 1776, the Second Continental Congress declared the United Colonies to be independent of Great Britain.

The new state was called the United States of America and July 4 became its national holiday.

The Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence.
The Battle at Saratoga in 1777 when the Americans forced a large British army to capitulate, was a turning point in the long War for Independence.

In this War the Americans were supported by France.

In 1783 Britain finally recognized American independence.

At the beginning of 1861 the Southern states left the Union and founded the Confederation.

That was the beginning of the war between the South and the North.

The results of the war were the abolishing of slavery and establishment of “Indivisible union of indivisible states”.

The states lost their right to leave the union.

The 1930s were the years of Great Depression in the USA.

Franklin Roosevelt set up government organizations called agencies.

They found work for people, gave money to help the unemployed and homeless and helped the nation to recover from the Depression.

Vocabulary:

v voyage [ˈvoɪdʒ] — подорож (поморю)
explorer [ˈeksplɔrə] — дослідник
Plymouth [ˈplɪməθ] — Плімут
Puritans [ˈpɜːriːtənz] — пуритани
hope [həʊp] — надія
to be connected [kəˈnektɪd] — бути з’єднанням
to appear [əˈprɪə] — з’являтися
German [ˈdʒɜːmən] — німецький
Dutch [dʌtʃ] — голландський
Swedish [ˈswiːdɪʃ] — шведський

Questions:
1. Who made the first voyages along the coasts of America?
2. When did the first colonists land at Plymouth Rock?
3. What was the name of the ship?
4. When was the beginning of the war between the South and the North?
5. What do you know about the 1930-s in the USA?
**Washington — the Capital of the USA**

Washington, the capital of the USA, was founded in 1791.

The city was named after the first president George Washington.

The population of the city is nearly three million people.

The Capitol is the centre of the city.

It was built according to the plans of William Thornton, who was an amateur architect.

It is situated on Capitol Hill.

The White House is the place where the president of the USA lives and works.

This house was first occupied in 1800 by John Adams, who was the first president to live in that house.

The White House has 132 rooms.

Washington has many sights, for example, the Library of Congress, the Lincoln memorial, the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier and others.

The National Gallery of Arts contains art collections by the great masters of the 14th to 18th centuries.

The Library of Congress contains millions of books and manuscripts.

Outside the city the Arlington National Cemetery is situated.

John Kennedy was buried there.

The famous Tomb of the Unknown Soldier is also situated there.

The industry of the city is not well developed.

But Washington is a large scientific and cultural centre.

Many research and designing institutes are concentrated here.

---

**Вашингтон — столиця США**

Вашингтон, столиця США, був заснований у 1791 році.

Місто назване на честь першого президента Джорджа Вашингтона.

Населення міста — близько трьох мільйонів чоловік.

Капітолій — це центр міста.

Він побудований за планами Вільяма Торнтона, що був архітектором-любителем.

Він розташований на Капітолійському пагорбі.

Білий дім — це місце, де живе і працює президент США.

Цей будинок був уперше зайнятий у 1800 році Джоном Адамсом, що став першим президентом, який жив у Білому домі.

Білий дім нараховує 132 кімнати.

У Вашингтоні багато визначних пам'яток, наприклад Бібліотека Конгресу, меморіал Лінкольна, Могила Невідомого Солдата й ін.

У Національній художній галереї знаходиться колекція великих майстрів 14—18 століть.

Бібліотека Конгресу містить мільйони книг і рукописів.

За містом знаходиться Національний цвинтар Арлінгтон.

Там похований Джон Кеннеді.

Знаменита Могила Невідомого Солдата також знаходиться там.

У місті не дуже добре розвинута промисловість.

Але це великий науковий і культурний центр.

У місті розташовано багато дослідних і проектних інститутів.
There are five universities in the city and the National Academy of Sciences. In Washington it is also difficult to find a park or a square without a monument.

**Vocabulary:**
- **residence** [əˈresɪdəns] — місце проживання
- **sights** [saɪts] — визначні пам'ятки
- **George** [dʒɔːrˈdʒiŋ] — Джордж
- **William Thornton** [ˈwɪljəm ˈθɔːntɔn] — Вільям Торнтон
- **tomb** [tuːm] — могила
- **to contain** [kənˈteɪn] — містити
- **to bury** [ˈbɜːri] — ховати
- **Arlington Cemetery** [ˈærlɪntən ˈsɛmtrɪ] — Арлінгтонський цвинтар

**Questions:**
1. What is the population of Washington?
2. Whose name was the city named after?
3. When was the capital founded?
4. What can you tell about the Capitol?
5. Do you know any places of interest in Washington?

**Places of Interest in Washington**
Washington is the capital of the USA. The city is named after George Washington, the first president of the USA. Washington stands on the river Potomac. Washington is a beautiful administrative city. In the centre of the city there is the Capitol, where the US Congress is situated. There is the White House, the residence of the President, in Washington. Washington has many sights, for example, the Library of Congress, the monument to George Washington, the Lincoln Memorial, the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier and others.

**Визначні пам'ятки Вашингтона**
Вашингтон — столиця США. Місто назване на честь Джорджа Вашингтона, першого президента США. Вашингтон розташований на ріці Потомак. Вашингтон — красиве адміністративне місто. У центрі міста розташований Капітолій, де засідає Конгрес США.

У Вашингтоні знаходиться Білий дім, резиденція президента.
У Вашингтоні багато визначних пам'яток, наприклад Бібліотека Конгресу, пам'ятник Джорджу Вашингтонові, меморіал Лінкольна, Могила Невідомого Солдата й інші.
The monument to Washington, which is called “Pencil”, is 555 feet high.

It is situated three blocks south from the White House.

The Library of Congress contains millions of books and manuscripts.

Outside the city the Arlington National Cemetery is situated.

John Kennedy was buried there.

The famous Tomb of the Unknown Soldier is also situated there.

The largest and highest among the buildings of Washington is the Capitol.

There are no skyscrapers in Washington because no other building must be higher than the Capitol.

Vocabulary:

monument [ˈmɔnjumənt] — монумент, пам'ятник

skyscraper [ˈskaɪskreɪpər] — хмарочос

cemetery [ˈsɛmɪtri] — цвинтар

Questions:

1. Who was the first American president?
2. Where is the President’s residence?
3. Who was buried at the Arlington National Cemetery?
4. What is the largest and highest building in Washington?
5. Are there any skyscrapers in the capital of the USA?

Cities and Towns of the USA

There are very many large cities in the USA.

Washington, the capital of the United States of America, is situated on the Potomac River.

In comparison with such ancient historical cities as, for example, Rome, London, Moscow or Paris, Washington is quite young.

Великі і малі міста США

У США багато великих міст.

Вашингтон — столиця США — розташований на річці Потомак.

У порівнянні з такими давніми історичними містами, як Рим, Лондон, Москва чи Париж, Вашингтон — досить молоде місто.
The capital owes much to the first President of the USA — George Washington.

It was G. Washington, who chose the place for the capital and laid in 1790 the corner-stone of the Capitol, where Congress sits.

Washington has many historical places.

The largest and highest among the buildings is the Capitol with its great House of Representatives and the Senate chamber.

There are no sky-scrapers in Washington because no other building must be higher than the Capitol.

New York is the largest city in the USA and the biggest sea-port.

It is situated in the mouth of the Hudson River.

New York was founded by the Dutch.

It is interesting to know that Manhattan Island — the central part of New York — was bought from the local Indians by the Dutch for 24 dollars.

That was the most profitable commercial deal in the US history.

Today Manhattan is the heart of business and commercial life of the country.

New York is the city of skyscrapers.

The highest of them is the 102-storeyed building.

There are many other places of interest in New York: Central Park, Times Square, Rockefeller Centre, the shopping districts and the United Nations Building.

In Manhattan, at Broadway, there is Columbia University, one of the biggest universities of the USA.

Another large city of the USA is Boston, one of the first cities which
The USA

were built on the Atlantic coast of America. It is an important port and a financial and cultural centre. It has three universities.

Chicago is one of the biggest industrial cities in the USA and the second largest after New York. Los Angeles, in California, is the centre of modern industries. Not far from Los Angeles there is Hollywood, the centre of the US film industry.

Vocabulary:

comparison [kəmˈpærɪsn] — порівняння
cultural [ˈkʌltʃərəl] — культурний

Questions:

1. What are the biggest cities of the United States of America?
2. What city is the nation’s leading financial and commercial centre?
3. Where is the city of New York situated?
4. What are the most important industries of the city?
5. What is Los Angeles famous for?

Sights of the USA

One should start sightseeing in America from Washington. There are many beautiful parks and gardens in Washington. It is interesting to see the famous cherry trees, the gift from Japan. They were brought to America in 1912. The NASA museum is devoted to the USA achievements in the exploration of space. Capitol Hill is the highest place in the city. There is a law that forbids to build houses higher than the Capitol on Capitol Hill.

Визначні пам’ятки США

Варто почати огляд визначних пам’яток США з Вашингтона. У Вашингтоні багато красивих парків і садів. Цікаво побачити відомі вишневі дерева — подарунок від Японії. Їх привезли в Америку в 1912 році. Музей НАСА присвячений досягненням США в освоєнні космосу. Капітолійський пагорб — найвище місце в місті. Існує закон, що забороняє будівництво будинків вище, ніж Капітолій на Капітолійському пагорбі.
From the Capitol to the White House Pennsylvania Avenue used for all processions and parades runs.
The Lincoln Memorial and Washington Monument are the most famous ones in Washington.
The Washington Monument is one of the most impressive sights in the city.

It is situated in Potonic Park.

It was erected to the memory of the first president of the USA in 1888.

It is called “the Pencil” because it is one of the tallest stone constructions in the world and the tallest in the USA.

There are many sights in Philadelphia, for example, the National Historical Park.
You can also see the Liberty Bell, which is a symbol of freedom.

The sound of this Bell told the people about the first public reading of the Declaration of Independence in July 1776.

You can also visit the Philadelphia Museum of Art — one of the greatest art museums of the world.
One should also visit New York, the city of skyscrapers with the Statue of Liberty.

A new American Immigration Museum has been opened at the base of the statue.

The Metropolitan Opera House, the Madison Square Garden, the Modern Arts Museum are popular among the tourists.

One can also visit Lyndon B. Johnson Space Centre near Houston in Texas or go to Florida or California.
to enjoy the Atlantic or Pacific Ocean beaches.
And I would like to see them all myself.

Vocabulary:

cherry tree ['tjeri 'tri:] — вишневе дерево
Japan [dʒə'pæn] — Японія
NASA ['næsa] — National Aeronautics and Space Administration
to forbid [foːbɪd] — забороняти
freedom [′frɪdəm] — свобода, воля
Pennsylvania Avenue [ˌpenzilˈveɪnja] — проспект Пенсільванія
Statue of Liberty [′stætjuˈlɪbri] — Статуя Свободи
Houston [′hjuːstən] — Х'юстон
Texas [ˈtekəs] — Texas

Questions:
1. What are the most famous historical places in the capital of the USA?
2. Who chose the place for the district?
3. What sights are there in Philadelphia?
4. Where is the city of New York situated?
5. What are the most important sights of New York?

American Customs and Traditions

Every nation has different customs and traditions, its own way of life.
In Europe there are people who have lived in the same house and been in the same job for 20, 30 or more years.
That’s not the American way of life.

The Americans love change, they call it the spirit of adventure, a spirit that they think is more characteristic of America than of Europe.
They like to move away, to change houses and jobs.
While the Englishman thinks it is ill mannered to ask private questions, the American doesn’t feel that at all.
He will tell you all about himself, his wife and family, and ask where you have come from, what your job is, how
you like America and how long you are staying.
The American prefers sociability.

In his home he doesn’t object to being seen by everyone — he actually likes it.

With this sociability goes overwhelming hospitality.
A national Thanksgiving Day is perhaps the only holiday spent by the Americans at home.
Table decorations follow a traditional pattern — a harvest of Indian corn, apples, oranges, walnuts and grapes.
Flowers also bring the fall scene indoors.
The centrepiece is the traditional roast turkey.

Still another American tradition concerns Halloween.
Its origin dates back hundreds of years to the Druid festival.
The Druid New Year began on November 1, marking the beginning of winter and the reign of the Lord of Death.
The custom of telling ghost stories on Halloween comes from the Druids.
On this occasion children usually wear ghost costumes or false faces.
They also carve out rounded eyes in pumpkins and put burning candles inside them to make them visible from far away.
In Texas, where the West begins, the biggest annual festival — the Fat Stock Show — is held.
Its rodeo, hold together with the stock show, is the biggest indoor rodeo on the earth.
And, of course, no nation can exist without humour.

подобається вам Америка і як довго ви збираєтеся тут пробути.
Американцям подобається товариськість.
Вони зовсім не проти з’явитись на загальному огляді — їм це навіть по­добається.
Цю товариськість супроводжує все­осіяна гостинність.
Національний День Віддяки, ма­буть, єдне свято, що американці проводять вдома.
Стіл традиційно прикрашають вро­жаєм з індійської кукурудзи, яблук, апельсинів, горіхів і винограду.
Квіти також створюють у будинку осінній пейзаж.
Центром свята є традиційна смаже­на індичка.
Ще одна американська традиція зв’язана з Хеллоуїном.
Він сягає своїми коренями за сотні років до фестивалю друїдів.
Новий рік у друїдів починався 1 лис­топада, знаменуючи початок зими і правління бога смерті.
Традиція розповідати історії про примар теж прийшла від друїдів.
На свято діти звичайно вбираються примарами і надягають маски.
Вони вирізують у гарбузах круглі от­вори і вставляють в них палаючі свічі, щоб їх можна було побачити здалеку.
У Техасі, де починається Захід, про­ходить найбільший щорічний фестиваль — виставка великої худоби.
Родео, що проводиться на вис­тавці,— найбільше родео у світі, що проходить у приміщенні.
І, звичайно ж, жодна нація не може жити без гумору.
As they themselves say, an American must have one wife, two cars, three children, four pets, five suits, six acres, seven credit cards — and is lucky to have eight cents in his pocket.

**Vocabulary:**

way of life [ˈwei əv ˈlaif] — стиль життя

job [dʒɒb] — робота

adventure [ədˈventər] — пригода

sociability [səʊjəˈbɪləti] — товариськість

hospitality [hɒspɪˈtelɪti] — гостинність

Halloween [ˈhæləʊi:n] — Переддень Дня усіх святих

Druid [ˈdrʊɪd] — друїди

reign [rɛɪn] — царювання; панування

**Questions:**

1. What are the most popular American holidays?
2. When do they celebrate Halloween? In what way do Americans celebrate it?
3. When is Thanksgiving day celebrated?
4. What is the most important event of the day?
5. What do you know about the Fat Stock Show?

**American Food and Drink**

What is “American” food?

The answer is that it is part Italian, part British, part German, part Mexican, part Chinese...

When people from other countries came to live in the US, they brought different cooking traditions.

Some of them opened restaurants.

Today Americans enjoy food from all over the world.

Over the years some foreign dishes changed a little.

Doughnuts were originally from Holland.

In 1847 a young American boy told his mother that her doughnuts were never cooked in the middle.

He cut out the centre and his mother cooked them — and they were very tasty!
Maybe the US is most famous for “fast foods”.

The first fast food restaurants served hamburgers, but now they serve other kinds of food too.

Inside there is often a “salad bar”, where you can help yourself to as much salad as you want.

Americans eat a lot, and when they go to a restaurant, they don’t expect to be hungry afterwards.

Most restaurants will put a lot of food on your plate — sometimes it can be too much.

But if you can’t finish it all, don’t worry: they will give you a “doggy bag” and you can take it home.

Most Americans now have a light breakfast instead of the traditional eggs, bacon, toast, orange juice and coffee.

But on weekends there is more time, and a large late breakfast or early lunch is often eaten with family or friends.

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Mexican</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Tradition</th>
<th>Restaurant</th>
<th>Doughnut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>part [pərt]</td>
<td>[ɪtə'leɪn]</td>
<td>[mɛksɪ'kæn]</td>
<td>[tʃaɪnɪz]</td>
<td>[trə'dɪʃən]</td>
<td>[rɪstrɒnt]</td>
<td>[dɔʊnʌt]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Holland ['hɔlənd] — Голландія
hamburger ['hæmbərgə] — гамбургер
help yourself — пригощатися
“doggy bag” — пакет для залишків їжі, які беруть додому
instead [ɪn'stɛd] — замість

Questions:

1. What is “American food”?
2. What do you know about doughnuts?
3. What is a fast food restaurant?
4. What do people usually do if they can’t finish their food?
5. What kind of breakfast do most Americans have?
Canada

Canada is an independent federative state.
It is one of the most developed countries.
Canada consists of ten provinces and two territories.
It is situated on the North American continent.
In size Canada is the second in the world after Russia.
Its area is almost 10 million km².
The capital of Canada is Ottawa, which is situated on the bank of the Ottawa River.
It is famous for its beautiful parks.

It is also known as the city of bridges.
Canada is very rich in forest, minerals and fur-bearing animals.
It holds the first place in the world in the amount of forests.
It is rich in the following natural resources: non-ferrous metals, uranium, oil, natural gas, coal.

Canadian industries produce cars, airliners, locomotives, sea vessels, snow-removal machines, and agricultural equipment.
The most developed industries are timber, mining, chemical, meat and milk and food industries.

Canada grows wheat, barley, flax, potatoes, vegetables and fruit.
Fishing is also one of the prosperous industries.

Канада

Канада — незалежна федеративна держава.
Це одна із найбільш розвинених країн.
Канада складається з 10 провінцій і двох територій.
Вона розташована на Північно-Американському континенті.
За площею Канада займає друге місце у світі після Росії.
Її площа близько 10 млн км².
Столиця Канади Оттава розташована на березі ріки Оттава.

Вона відома своїми красивими парками.
Вона також відома як місто мостів.
Канада дуже багата лісами, мінералами і хутровим звір’ям.
Вона займає перше місце у світі за кількістю лісу.
Вона багата наступними природними копалинами: кольоровими металами, ураном, нафтою, природним газом, вугіллям.

Канадська промисловість випускає машини, літаки, локомотиви, морські судна, снігоприбиральні машини і сільськогосподарське устаткування.
Найбільш розвинутими галузями промисловості є деревообробна, гірничодобувна, хімічна, м’ясо-молочна і харчова.
У Канаді вирощують пшеницю, ячмінь, льон, картоплю, овочі і фрукти.
Рибальство також є процвітаючою галуззю промисловості.
Official languages of Canada are English and French. Nearly 60 per cent of the population speaks English and 27 per cent speaks French. The rest speaks other languages, such as Eskimo, Indian, German, Ukrainian and Italian. Canada is a founding member of the United Nations. It has been active in a number of major UN agencies.

Vocabulary:

Ottawa [ˈɒtəwə] — Оттава
fur-bearing animals [ˈfaʊ̯əriŋ ˈænɪmālz] — хутровий звір
non-ferrous metals [ˈnɒnferəs ˈmetəlz] — кольоровіimetəlz] — кольорові метали
equipment [əkwɪpment] — обладнання
timber industry [ˈtɪmber ˈɪndəstri] — лісова промисловість
Eskimo [eskiməʊ] — ескімос

Questions:
1. What kind of country is Canada?
2. What is the capital of Canada?
3. What are the main industries in Canada?
4. What are the official languages of Canada?
5. What place does Canada hold in the world in the amount of forests?

Geographical Position of Canada

Canada occupies the northern part of the North American continent and some islands. It borders on the USA. The country is washed by the Pacific Ocean in the west, by the Atlantic Ocean in the east and by the Arctic Ocean and its seas in the north. The Canadian north remains one of the least settled and least exploited parts of the world. About 2 per cent of the Canadian territory is covered by glacier ice.

Географічне положення Канади

Канада займає північну частину Північно-Американського континенту і деякі острови. Вона межує зі США. Країна омивається Тихим океаном на заході, Атлантичним океаном на сході і Північним Льодовитим океаном і його морями на півночі. Північ Канади залишається однією з найменш заселених і досліджених частин світу. Біля двох відсотків території Канади вкрито льодовиками.
The eastern parts of the country are mainly valleys and plains. The western territories are occupied by the Cordilleras. They stretch from the American border to the Arctic Ocean.

The Cordillera region is composed of numerous mountain groups: the Rocky Mountains, the Coast Mountains and others.

The main Canadian islands are Newfoundland, Victorian Island, Baffin Island and others.

There are a lot of rivers and lakes in Canada. Among them there are the Great Bear Lake, the Great Slave Lake and the Great Lakes District.

The largest rivers are the Nelson, the Ottawa, the Mackenzie and the Yukon.

The population of Canada is about 25 million people. It is mainly concentrated in large cities. The economically significant area of the country is its western part.

Canada is rich in mineral resources, such as non-ferrous metals, uranium, oil, natural gas and coal. It is also exceptionally rich in forests and fur-bearing animals.

All these factors led Canada to the position of a highly-developed country.

Vocabulary:

the Pacific Ocean [ˈpəsɪfɪkˈəʊʃən] — Тихий океан
the Arctic Ocean [ˈɑːktɪkˈəʊʃən] — Північний Льодовитий океан
Newfoundland [ˌnuːfiːlænd] — Ньюфаундленд

the Mackenzie [ˈmækənʒi] — р. Маккензі
the Yukon [ˈjuːkən] — р. Юкон

glacier [ˈɡlæsɪə] — льодовик
exceptionally [ɪkˈsepʃənəli] — надзвичайно
significant [ˈsɪɡnɪfɪkənt] — важливий
Questions:
1. What oceans is Canada washed by?
2. What are the main islands of Canada?
3. What kind of landscape is there in the western territories?
4. What are the main mountains?
5. What are the biggest rivers and lakes in Canada?

Climate and Nature of Canada

Canada is situated in the northern part of the North American continent. It is washed by the Pacific Ocean in the west, by the Atlantic Ocean in the east and by the Arctic Ocean and its seas in the north. That is why the climate and the nature of Canada are much varied.

The northern parts lie in the subarctic and arctic climatic zones. Most of the northern islands are covered with ice. The bays between them are covered with ice for 9—10 months a year. This territory has a climate with very cold winters and short, cool summers.

The average winter temperature is about 35 degrees below zero. The average summer temperature is about 4 degrees above zero. It contrasts with the rest of the territory, where the climate is moderate. This part gets enough amount of rainfall and heat.

In the south there are large areas of fertile soils. The west of the country has a mild and humid climate thanks to a warm Pacific current. The average winter temperature is about 4 degrees above zero there.
The average summer temperature is 21 degrees above zero.
The region of the Cordilleras is famous for its beautiful forests.
Canadian west is the most attractive part of the country.
The snow-capped mountains and ocean bays create a surprisingly beautiful atmosphere.
Besides, Canadian south is known for its changeable weather.
Sometimes it is too humid, and sometimes it is too dry: the weather can change very quickly.
The Niagara Falls situated in that part of the country attracts people from all over the world by its unusual beauty.

Vocabulary:
average [ˈævrɪdʒ] — середній
subarctic [ˈsʌbərktɪk] — субарктичний
bay [beɪ] — протока
rainfall [ˈreɪnfɔːl] — опади
fertile [ˈfɜːtɪl] — родючий
climatic zone [ˈklɪmætɪk ˈzəʊn] — кліматична зона
humid [ˈhjʊmɪd] — вологий
the Niagara Falls [nəˈeɡərə ˈfɔːlz] — Ніагарський водоспад
to attract [əˈtrækt] — приваблювати

Questions:
1. Where is Canada situated?
2. Where are the northern parts of Canada situated?
3. What is the average temperature in summer and in winter?
4. What kind of climate is it in Canada?
5. What do you know about the Niagara Falls?

● Outstanding Historical Events of Canada

Modern Canada originated as a country of immigrants.
Before the 15th century Canada was populated by different Indian tribes.
In the far north there were tribes of Eskimos.

● Видатні історичні події

Канади

Сучасна Канада з’явилася як країна емігрантів.
До 15 століття Канаду населяли різні індійські племена.
На північ залілись племена ескімосів.
An English seaman, John Cabot, discovered the island of Newfoundland in 1497. Then many settlements of Spanish, English and French fishermen appeared on the coasts of Newfoundland.

In the 16th century Jacques Carter, the French navigator, explored the Saint Lawrence River, and later French colonies were set up.

The long struggle for Canadian territories between England and France finished in 1763 after the Seven-Years' War.

The whole Canada was proclaimed a British possession.

Only some minor parts of the country remained French.

After the War of American Independence a lot of English colonists immigrated to Canada.

In 1837 there were rebellions in both parts of the country.

The English and French settlers wanted to have the government and the state of their own.

At last, in 1867, after long discussions, a federation was formed out of four provinces.

Later the rest of the provinces joined this federation.

Thus 1867 is considered to be the birth year of the modern state of Canada.

But only after World War I Canada became more independent.

Vocabulary:

tribe [traɪb] — плем’я
Jacques Carter [dʒækəs ˈkɑːtə] — Жак Катер
the Saint Lawrence River [sæntˈlɔːrəns ˈrɪvə] — ріка Святого Лаврентія
settler [ˈsetlə] — поселенець
discussion [dɪsˈkʌʃn] — обмірковування
possession [pəˈzeʃn] — власність
rebellion [rɪˈbelʃən] — повстання
Questions:
1. Who was Canada populated by before the 15th century?
2. Who discovered the island of Newfoundland?
3. Who explored the Saint Lawrence River?
4. When was Canada founded?
5. When did Canada become more independent?

Political System of Canada
Canada is an independent federal parliamentary state.
The Queen of Great Britain, Elizabeth II, is the official head of the state, but the Governor General acts as her representative.
Canada combines the American federal form of government with the British cabinet system.
As a federation, Canada is made up of ten provinces and two territories.
Canadian central government in Ottawa represents all the peoples of Canada.
Each province has its own government and parliament.
Parliament of Canada consists of two houses, the Upper House called the Senate, and the Lower House called the House of Commons.
The Senate has 104 members.
Senators are appointed by the Governor General on the recommendation of the Prime Minister.
The Senate has less power than the House of Commons.
Members of the House of Commons are elected for a term of five years.
The cabinet system of Canada unites the legislative and the executive branches.
The Prime Minister and the Cabinet are usually members of the House of Commons, which is the highest authority in the government.
The Cabinet consists of 20 or more ministers, chosen by the Prime Minister from leaders of the majority party in the House of Commons.

Today most of the Governor General's powers have disappeared and he follows the directions of the Cabinet.

The two leading political parties in Canada are the Progressive Conservative Party and the Liberal Party.

The New Democratic Party is also rather influential.

The Constitution of the country was only adopted in 1982.

Vocabulary:

federal [ˈfɛdərəl] — федеральний
the Governor General [dəˈgʌvənə dʒənərəl] — генерал-губернатор
Elizabeth II [ˈelɪzəbeth] — Єлизавета II
Senate [ˈsɛnt] — Сенат
province [ˈprɔvɪns] — провінція
to disappear [dɪsəˈpɪər] — зникати
influential [ɪnfljuˈənʃəl] — впливовий

Questions:

1. Who is the head of the country?
2. Where is the government situated?
3. How many provinces are there in Canada?
4. What does Parliament of Canada consist of?
5. How many leading political parties are there in Canada nowadays?

Canadian Cities and Towns

Canada is a country with rapid growth of the population.
It is mainly concentrated in large cities.
The most important among them is the capital of the country, Ottawa.
It is situated on the picturesque bank of the Ottawa River.
One third of its population is descendants of English and French immigrants.

Великі і малі міста Канади

Канада — це країна зі швидким ростом населення.
Воно в основному зосереджене у великих містах.
Найважливішим серед них є столиця країни — Оттава.
Вона розташована на мальовничому березі ріки Оттави.
Одна третина її населення — нащадки англійських і французьких емігрантів.
Before the colonization the Ottawa region was an Indian trading centre.
The name of the city comes from the Indian word meaning “trade”.
For a very long time Ottawa was a fur-trading centre.
The suburbs of the city house different industrial factories: electronic enterprises, food-processing factories, paper mills and others.
Ottawa is a city of bridges.
There are more than 20 bridges in the city.
Ottawa is famous for its walks, along which about a million of tulips bloom in spring.
Toronto, one of the largest cities, is the home of leading banks and corporations.
It is the major industrial centre of the country.
Toronto is a port on Lake Ontario, one of the Great Lakes.
Another huge port of Canada is Montreal, situated on the St Lawrence River.
More than 5000 freight ships come to that port every year.
Three universities are situated in the city.
It is also one of the shopping and cultural centres of the country.
Vancouver is a garden city.
It is a very picturesque city, which lies between snow-capped mountains and an ocean bay in the west of Canada.
It is the largest port on the Pacific coast and the centre of Canadian trade.

Онтарио — одно з найбільших міст, — місцерозташування ведучих банків і корпорацій.
Це головний промислової центр країни.
Онтарио — це порт на озері Онтаріо, одному з Великих озер.
Ще один великий порт Канади — Монреаль — розташований на ріці Святого Лаврентія.
Понад 5000 вантажних кораблів заходять сюди щорічно.
У місті знаходиться три університети.
Це також один з торгових і культурних центрів країни.
Ванкувер — місто садів.
Це дуже мальовниче місто, що лежить між засніженими вершинами й океанською затокою на заході Канади.
Це найбільший порт на тихоокеанському узбережжі і центр канадської торгівлі.
The Ukrainian Diaspora in Canada

The term "diaspora" means those Ukrainians who reside abroad. Nowadays every third Ukrainian lives beyond Ukraine. The greatest number of people of the Ukrainian origin (almost 2 million) live in the USA; one million people live in Canada and half a million live in Poland and Romania. The first Ukrainians came to Canada on the 7th of September, 1891. They were Ivan Pylypiv and Vasyl Je­lenyak from the village of Nebylin. Their life in this country was very difficult because they were often discriminated and exploited. These first immigrants were illiterate Ukrainian peasants and they mostly went in for farming.

The second and third waves consisted of better educated people, who began to work in various sectors of Canadian economy.

The Ukrainian Diaspora in Canada

The term "diaspora" means those Ukrainians who reside abroad. Nowadays every third Ukrainian lives beyond Ukraine. The greatest number of people of the Ukrainian origin (almost 2 million) live in the USA; one million people live in Canada and half a million live in Poland and Romania. The first Ukrainians came to Canada on the 7th of September, 1891. They were Ivan Pylypiv and Vasyl Je­lenyak from the village of Nebylin. Their life in this country was very difficult because they were often discriminated and exploited. These first immigrants were illiterate Ukrainian peasants and they mostly went in for farming.

The second and third waves consisted of better educated people, who began to work in various sectors of Canadian economy.
The last wave of the Ukrainian immigrants to Canada are well educated people, who have graduated from colleges and universities.

So they work in business or industry, services or universities.

The Canadian Ukrainians try to preserve their cultural traditions.

There are many Ukrainian churches, amateur art groups, community centres and museums, which preserve Ukrainian cultural legacy.

The Ukrainian language is taught at 12 universities and at some schools.

There are several Ukrainian publishing houses in the country, too.

In Canada there are monuments to such prominent Ukrainians as Taras Shevchenko, Lesya Ukrainka, Ivan Franko and Vasily Stephanyk.

The Ukrainian community in Canada is one of the largest and best organized communities in the country.

Vocabulary:

community [kəˈmjuːnəti] — громада

community centre [kəˈmjuːnəti ˈsәntә] — клуб

amateur art group [әmәtә] — група художньої самодіяльності

publishing house [ˈpʌblɪʃɪŋ ˈhɔs] — видавництво

legacy [ˈlɛɡəsi] — спадщина

to preserve [prɪˈzə:v] — зберігати

to be discriminated [dɪskrɪˈmɪneɪtɪd] — зазнавати дискримінації

to be exploited [ɪkˈsploɪtɪd] — зазнавати експлуатації

prominent [ˈprɒmɪnənt] — видатний

illiterate [ɪlˈlɪtərət] — неграмотний

Questions:

1. Who were the first Ukrainians that came to Canada?
2. Why was their life difficult?
3. What do the Canadian Ukrainians try to preserve?
4. What do you know about the Ukrainian community in Canada?
Australia

Australia, or the Commonwealth of Australia, as it is officially called, is situated on the island continent. It also occupies the Island of Tasmania and some minor islands round the coast of the continent. It is a highly developed industrial-agrarian country. Its area is about 8 million km². It is the only state in the world that occupies the territory of a whole continent. The capital of Australia is Canberra, which became the capital only in 1927. From 1787 to 1867 Australia was a place where criminals were sent from Britain. That is why the official language of Australia is English. Almost one half of Australian territory is occupied by deserts and semideserts. For quite a long period of time it was thought to be useless for economic development. But it is rich in coal, iron ore, bauxites, uranium, lead and many other mineral resources. For almost a century the production and export of sheep wool was the basis of the economy of the country. Now the most important industries are oil, chemical, ore mining, radioelectronics, and food industry. The country exports agricultural products and raw materials. As for the nature, the commonest trees of Australia are the eucalyptus and the Australian acacia or mimosa, the national emblem of the country.

Австралія

Австралія, чи Австралійський союз, як він офіційно називається, розташована на острівному континенті. Вона також займає остри Тасманія і ряд маленьких островів, розташованих уздовж узбережжя континенту. Це високорозвинена промислова і сільськогосподарська країна. Її площа близько 8 млн км². Це єдина держава у світі, що займає цілий континент. Столиця Австралії — Канберра, яка стала нею тільки в 1927 році. З 1787 по 1867 рік Австралія була місцем, куди засилялися злочинці з Великобританії. Тому в Австралії офіційною мовою є англійська. Майже половину австралійської території займають пустелі і напівпустелі. Довгий час країна вважалася непридатною для економічного розвитку. Але вона багата на вугілля, залізну руду, боксити, уран, свинець і велику кількість інших корисних копалин. Протягом сторіччя виробництво й експорт овечої вовни були основою економіки країни. Зараз найбільш важливими галузями промисловості є нафтова, хімічна, гірничодобувна, радіоелектронна і харчова. Країна експортує сільськогосподарську продукцію і сировину. Щодо природи, то звичайнісінькими деревами для Австралії є евкаліпт і австралійська акація, чи мімоза, — національна емблема країни.
Such unusual animals as a kangaroo or a koala-bear originate from Australia. Australia is one of the most unusual and exotic countries of the world. A significant feature of modern Australian society is the representation of a lot of cultures drawn from many lands by its people. Historically part of the British Empire and now a member of a Commonwealth of Nations, it is a relatively prosperous and independent nation.

**Vocabulary:**

- **Tasmania** [ˈtæzəməniə] — Тасманія
- **Canberra** [ˈkænbərə] — Канберра
- **British Empire** [ˈbriti ˈɛmpəriə] — Британська імперія
- **useless** [ˈjuːsl3s] — непридатний

**Commonwealth of Australia** [ˈkɒmənwəlθ] — Австралійський союз

- **oil industry** [ˈɔɪl ˈɪndəstrɪ] — нафтова промисловість

**Questions:**

1. What is the official name of Australia?
2. Where is it situated?
3. What kind of country is it?
4. What is the national emblem of the country?
5. What are the famous animals of Australia?

**Geographical Position of Australia**

Australia occupies the continent of Australia, which lies south-east of Asia and the island of Tasmania with a number of small islands. It is washed by the Timor Sea in the north, by the Coral and Tasman Seas in the east, and by the Indian Ocean in the south and west. Australia is the most droughty continent on the earth. About one half of its territory is occupied by deserts and semideserts.
It is also the land of great plains.
The main part of Australia lies in tropics.
Southwestern parts of the country are situated in subtropics.
December, January and February are summer months in Australia.
The average summer temperature there is from 20 to 30 degrees above zero.
Winter comes in June, July and August.
Then the average temperature is from 12 to 20 degrees above zero.
Droughts are common in Australia.
The rainfall in the country is rather small, and that’s why a special plan was worked out for irrigation of plains.
The largest rivers in Australia are the Darling and the Murray.
In the middle part of Australia there are salt lakes, such as Lake Eyre and Torrence.
Australia is an agricultural country.
Cattle-breeding is highly developed in Australia.
It exports sheep wool, wheat, meat, butter and cheese, and raw materials.
Its major partners are Japan, the USA and Great Britain.

Vocabulary:

plain [pleɪn] — рівнина
Asia [eɪˈʃə] — Азія
the Timor Sea [tɪˈmɔːrˈsiː] — Тиморське море
the Darling [ˈdɑːlɪŋ] — р. Дарлінг
the Murray [ˈmɜːri] — р. Мюррей
Lake Eyre [ˈeɪər] — озеро Ейр
Torrance [ˈtɔrəns] — Торренс

Questions:
1. What is Australia washed by?
2. What occupies about one half of its territory?
3. What are summer and winter months in Australia?
4. What are the main industries in Australia?
Climate and Nature of Australia

Australia is situated to the southeast of Asia.
It is washed by the Timor Sea in the north, by the Coral and Tasman Seas in the east, and by the Indian Ocean in the south and west.
Australia is the most droughty continent in the earth.
It is an extremely hot country.
Summer months are December, January and February.
The average summer temperature is from 20 to 30 degrees above zero.
Winter months are June, July and August.
The average winter temperature is from 12 to 20 degrees above zero.
The most part of the territory lies in tropics.
Its southwestern territories lie in subtropics.
As droughts are rather common and the amount of rainfall is rather small there are not many rivers in Australia.
The largest rivers are the Darling and the Murray.
The isolation of Australia from other continents explains much of the unusualness of Australian plant and animal life.
There are forests in the southern and eastern parts of the country.
The commonest tree of Australia is the eucalyptus.
In the drier areas there is the Australian acacia or mimosa.
In those areas one can also find strange bottle trees.

Клімат і природа Австралії

Австралія розташована на південний схід від Азії.
Вона омивається Тиморським морем на півночі, Кораловим і Тасмановим морями на сході та Індійським океаном на півдні і заході.
Австралія — найпосушливіший континент на землі.
Це дуже жарка країна.
Літніми місяцями є грудень, січень і лютий.
Середня літня температура — від 20 до 30 градусів вище нуля.
Зимові місяці — червень, липень і серпень.
Середня зимова температура — від 12 до 20 градусів вище нуля.
Велика частина території лежить у тропіках.
Її південно-західна частина знаходиться у субтропіках.
Через те, що посухи дуже часті і кількість опадів досить невелика, в Австралії небагато рік.
Найбільші ріки — Дарлінг і Мюррей.

Віддаленість Австралії від інших континентів багато в чому пояснює незвичайність австралійських рослин і тварин.
У південних і східних районах країни є лісові масиви.
Звичайнісінькі дерева в Австралії — евкаліпти.
У більш посушилих частинах ростуть австралійські акациї, чи мімози.
У цих районах можна також побачити пляшкові дерева.
They preserve water in their trunks.

Australian animals are also very unusual.

Among them there are kangaroos, duck-bills, koala-bears, and others.

Nine tenth of animal species of Australia do not exist in other parts of the world.

Vocabulary:

isolation [əˈsəʊlən] — віддаленість, ізоляція
trunk [trʌŋk] — стовбур

eucalyptus [juːˈkælɪptəs] — евкаліпт
acacia [əˈkeɪʃə] — акація
species [ˈspiːʃiːz] — рід; різновид

Questions:

1. How many seas is Australia washed by?
2. What are winter and summer months in Australia?
3. What is the average summer and winter temperature?
4. What are the longest rivers?
5. What are the commonest trees in Australia?

New Zealand — the Country of Long White Clouds

New Zealand, an independent state and a member of the Commonwealth, is situated to the south-east of Australia.

It’s a country consisting of two large islands.

The first to settle here were the Maoris. It was about 1000 years ago.

Maoris is a Polynesian people.

And the British came here at the end of the 19th century.

“The Aurora” was the first British ship to come to New Zealand.

The British waged real wars on the Maoris.

Thousands of the Maoris were killed, but their culture survived.

Beautiful songs and dances are as old as the Maori people itself.
Smoke and steam are characteristic features of New Zealand. They come from volcanoes and geysers. That's why the Maoris called New Zealand the country of long white clouds. So earthquakes are common here. Sometimes they have several quakes a day.

Now the forests are very thick and always green because of the climate. It never gets too hot in summer and there are no frosts in winter.

The mountain stream is also very unusual. Water is ice-cold near one of its banks and is boiling hot near the other.

On the pastures one can see many sheep. This small country holds the second place in the world in wool production. Tourists like to see unusual phenomena here. They are shown a kiwi. It's a bird you only find in New Zealand.

It has no wings and its feathers are like hair. New Zealand has put it on its national emblem.

There are four large towns in New Zealand. One of them is Wellington and it is the capital of this country. It was built by the British.

Vocabulary:
Maoris [ˈmaurɪz] — маорі
Polynesian [ˈpɒlɪnɛziən] — полінезійський
The Aurora [ˈɔrəʊrə] — Аврора
Wellington [ˈwelɪŋtən] — Веллінгтон
Commonwealth [ˈkɒmənwelθ] — співдружність
to settle [ˈsetl] — засновуватися, оселятися
to survive [səˈvaɪv] — виживати
Questions:
1. Where is New Zealand situated?
2. What is the capital of New Zealand?
3. Why did the Maoris call this country the country of long white clouds?
4. What is unusual in the nature of New Zealand?
5. What is a kiwi like?

**Outstanding Historical Events of Australia**

Geologically Australia is the most ancient of the continents.

But for many centuries it was marked on the maps as “terra incognita”.

The first man who reached the Australian coasts was Willem Jansz, a Dutch seaman.

He landed on the northern coast of the continent in 1606.

The northern and western coasts were investigated by the Dutch in the 17th century.

The sailors named the continent New Holland.

In 1770 James Cook, a British navigator, reached the coasts of Australia.

He was the first to investigate Australia and named a lot of its mountains and bays.

The beginning of the British colonization of Australia was connected with the loss of the thirteen American colonies during the War of Independence.

The British government lost the right to send criminals from England to North America.

The loss was compensated by seizing new territories.
The first group of criminals arrived in Australia in 1787 and founded a settlement named Sydney.
And only in 1793 the first group of settlers who were not convicts came to Australia.
The 50s of the 19th century were the turning point in the history of Australia.
The deposits of gold were found then, and it led the country to the rapid economic development.
Till that time Australia had held the first place at the world wool market.

Since that time the industry started to develop in the country.
The discovery of gold also led to a large wave of immigrants to the country.
In 1900 the British colonies got the rights of states.
In 1901 they united in a single state.
That was the beginning of the modern Australia.

Questions:
1. How did they call Australia for many centuries?
2. Who was the first man who reached the Australian coasts?
3. When did James Cook reach Australia?
4. What years were the turning point in the history of Australia?
5. What deposits were found?
Political System of Australia

Australia is a constitutional monarchy, with the Queen of Great Britain at its head.

It consists of six states and two territories.

The queen is represented by the Governor General, who is appointed by the Australian government.

The Governor General appoints members of the Executive Council, his advisory cabinet.

The main legislative body in the country is Federal Parliament.

It consists of the Queen, the Senate and the House of Representatives.

The members of the Senate are elected for a six-year term.

There are ten senators from each state and two from each territory in the Senate.

The House of Representatives is elected by general direct vote for a three-year term.

The executive power belongs to the queen and the government.

It is headed by the Prime Minister.

The ministers are chosen from members of Parliament and the Executive Council.

There are two major political parties in Australia: the Australian Labour party and a coalition of the Liberal and the Agrarian parties.

Till the 1930s Australia mostly depended upon Great Britain in its political affairs.

But in 1931 Australia became fully independent from Great Britain.

Politichna sistema Avstralii

Австралія — конституційна монархія з королевою Великобританії на чолі держави.

Вона складається із шести штатів і двох територій.

Представником королеви є генерал-губернатор, що призначається урядом Австралії.

Генерал-губернатор призначає членів виконавчої ради, його дорадчого кабінету.

Основний законодавчий орган країни — федеральний парламент.

Він складається з королеви, сенату і палати представників.

Сенатори обираються терміном на 6 років.

У Сенат обираються десять депутатів від кожного штату і два — від кожної території.

Палата представників обирається загальним прямим голосуванням терміном на три роки.

Виконавчева влада належить королеві й урядові.

Його очолює прем’єр-міністр.

Міністри обираються з членів парламенту і Виконавчої Ради.

В Австралії дві основні політичні партії: Австралійська лейбористська партія і коаліція Ліберальної й Аграрної партій.

До 1930-х років Австралія у своїх політичних справах в основному заляжала від Великобританії.

Але в 1931 році Австралія стала цілком незалежною від Великобританії.
Vocabulary:

**Governor General** [ˈɡɜvənər ˈdʒenəral] — генерал-губернатор

**Executive Council** [ɪɡˈzɛkjʊtɪv ˈkeɪnsəl] — виконавчий комітет

**Labour Party** [ˈleɪbər ˈpɑːti] — лейбористська партія

**Agrarian Party** [əɡˈriəriən ˈpɑːti] — аграрна партія

**Direct Vote** [ˈdɪrɛkt ˈvʊt] — пряме голосування

**Political Affairs** [ˌpɒlɪˈtɪkəl əˈfeəz] — політичні справи

Questions:

1. What is the political system of Australia?
2. How many states are there in it?
3. Who is the head of the country?
4. What is the main legislative body in the country? What does it consist of?

**Australian Cities and Towns**

The capital of Australia, Canberra, is a young and comparatively small city.

It was founded in the 20th century and now has a population of about 260 000 people.

The centre of Canberra is a small hill.

Several streets run from that hill.

Special charm is given to Canberra by an artificial lake in the centre of the city.

A fountain more than 100 metres high is in the western part of the lake.

At night powerful lights illuminate the water.

It is the Captain Cook Fountain, one of the main places of interest in Canberra.

Another one is a memorial military museum.

The building of the Australian Academy of Sciences is quite unusual in form — it is like a huge overturned bowl.

Melbourne is the second largest city in Australia.
It was the capital of the country till 1927 and now is the centre of Australian business world.
It is also one of the largest ports in the country.

Melbourne is a beautiful city with numerous skyscrapers, straight boulevards and large parks and gardens.

One of Melbourne’s places of interest is the house of Captain Cook, the famous British navigator.

Sydney is Australia’s largest and oldest city.
It was the first British settlement.

Sydney has the oldest in the country botanical gardens and the Zoo.
One of the main places of interest of the city is the famous bridge over the Bay of Port Jackson.
Another one is the Opera House, which resembles large white shells in form.
It is surrounded by the sea on three sides.

Sydney is the city of three universities.

Vocabulary:
Canberra [ˈkænbəra] — Канберра
comparatively [ˈkɔməˌprɛtɪvli] — порівнюючи
several [ˈsevrəl] — декілька
charm [tʃɑːm] — зачарування
bowl [bɔul] — чаша

overturned [ˈəuvərˌtɜːnd] — перевернутий
boulevard [ˈbuːlɔːd] — бульвар
Melbourne [ˈmɛlbɔrn] — Мельбурн
Sydney [ˈsidni] — Сідней

Questions:
1. What is the capital of Australia?
2. When was it founded?
3. What are the main cities of Australia?
4. What are the main places of interest in Sydney?
5. What can you say about Melbourne?
My Biography

Let me introduce myself.
My full name is Natalya Nickolayevna Ivanova, though it sounds rather pompous for a girl of my age.
I was born on the 7th of May, 1985, in the village of Bakino, Chutovo district, the Poltava Region.
Two years ago our family moved to Poltava where I live now together with my parents.
I was born in the family of the office-workers.
I am an only child in the family.
As my mother had no possibility to be a housewife I had to be taken to a nursery when I was not more than two years old.
I don’t remember that time at all.
Anyhow, I can remember quite well how much I hated going to the nursery when I was three or four.
It was not because the children were ill treated there.
I guess it’s just too early for any child of this age to be taken away from his mother.
Now I’m a pupil of the eleventh form of a secondary school.
I am finishing school this year and I want to enter the University.
That is why I have to study twice as hard as an ordinary pupil.
I take an active part in social life, attend sport sections and subject clubs.
My favourite subjects are English, Russian and Literature.

Mоя біографія

Дозвольте представитися.
Моє повне ім’я — Наталя Миколаївна Іванова, звичайно, це звучить надто солідно для дівчини мого віку.
Я народилася 7 травня 1985 року в селі Бакино Чутівського району Полтавської області.
Два роки тому наша родина переїхала у Полтаву, де я зараз живу зі своїми батьками.
Я народилася у родині службовців.
Я єдина дитина в родині.
Оскільки в мами не було можливості бути домогосподаркою, мене змушені були віддати в ясла, коли мені не виповнилося ще і двох років.
Я зовсім не пам’ятаю того часу.
Проте я досить добре пам’ятаю, як сильно я ненавиділа ходити у дитячий садок, коли мені було три чи чотири роки.
І зовсім не від того, що з дітьми по-гано поводились.
Мені здається, для дитини це занадто рано бути відірваною від матері.
Зара зараз я учениця 11 класу загальноосвітньої школи.
Я закінчу школу цього року і хочу вступити до університету.
Саме тому мені доводиться ретельно учитися.
Я беру активну участь у громадському житті школи, відвідую спортивні секції і предметні гуртки.
Мої улюблені предмети — англійська мова, російська мова і література.
I have nothing against Natural Sciences and Maths, but somehow they seem of less importance to me. I am always very busy, but when I’m free I’m fond of reading. My favourite writers are Ernest Hemingway, Alexey Tolstoy, Michail Bulgakov. You see, my biography isn’t long.

I hope my dream will come true and I’ll become a student. If I fail my exams I’ll be very upset, but next year I’ll try to enter the University again.

**Vocabulary:**

- to introduce [ɪntrəˈdʒuːs] — відрекомендуватися
- to remember [rɪˈmembər] — пам’ятати
- social life [ˈsəʊʃəl laɪf] — суспільне життя
- to be busy [ˈbɪzɪ] — бути зайнялим
- dream [driːm] — мрія

**Questions:**

1. What is your name?
2. Where were you born?
3. What are your favourite subjects?
4. Who are your favourite writers?
5. What do you want to be?

**About Myself**

My name is Victor. My surname is Ivanov. I was born on April 7, 1987 in Kharkiv. My parents are office-workers. I am an only child in the family. I am a pupil of the ninth form of a secondary school. After leaving school I’ll try to enter the Medical University.

**Про себе**

Мене звати Віктор. Моє прізвище Іванов. Я народився 7 квітня 1987 року в місті Харкові. Мої батьки — службовці. Я єдина дитина в родині. Я учень 9 класу загальноосвітньої школи. Після закінчення школи я спробую вступити до медичного університету.
I think, the profession of a doctor is very interesting and useful to people but it is not easy, of course.

I’m fond of chemistry and biology and I know these subjects are important to learn for entering the institute.

I don’t have much free time but I have a hobby.

My hobby is drawing.

I like to draw since my childhood.

Since the age of six I’ve been drawing everywhere: in my album, in my notebooks, even on the newspapers.

My favourite sports are football and tennis.

I have many friends.

They are very good and we like to spend our time together.

We meet and talk, dance and laugh, listen to good music and do everything what is interesting for a teenager.

I’m happy to have nice friends and a good family.

I hope that my dreams will come true and I’ll become a doctor.

Vocabulary:

surname [ˈsɜːnm] — прізвище
secondary school [ˈsekəndəri skuːl] — середня школа
teenager [ˈtiːnædʒə] — підліток
drawing [ˈdrɔːɪŋ] — малювання

Questions:

1. What is your full name?
2. Did you go to the nursery?
3. Tell something about your parents.
4. Do you have a hobby?
5. What do you usually do with your friends?
My Birthday

I was born on the 2nd of February. This year on my birthday I woke up early because I was very excited.

When I got up my parents wished me happy birthday and gave me their presents. They gave me a videocassette of my favourite film and a beautiful pullover.

I was very happy to get them. Then I helped Mom to make some salads and lay the table. At four o’clock I dressed up and did my hair. It was time to welcome my guests. They were all my friends, who came to my birthday party.

The party was a great success. We danced, played different games, made jokes and, of course, ate all the tasty things that my mother had cooked. Everyone said that they enjoyed themselves very much. After the party we went for a walk. This was one of the best birthdays in my life.

Vocabulary:

to be excited [təˈbɪ sɪˈkɪld] — бути схвильованим
pullover [ˈpʊləvə] — светр

Questions:

1. When were you born?
2. Did you have a party on your birthday?
3. How many guests and relatives were there at your party?
4. What presents did you get?
5. What did you do during your birthday party?
My Family

Our family is neither large nor small. I have a mother, a father and a sister. We all live together in a three-room flat in one of the industrial districts of Kharkiv. We are an average Ukrainian family. My father Ihor Ivanovych is 45 years old. He is a tall and well-built man with short black hair and grey eyes. He works as an engineer at a big plant. He likes his work and spends most of his time there. By character my father is a quiet man, while my mother is energetic and talkative. My mother’s name is Olha Petrivna. She is a teacher of music and plays the piano well. My mother always has a lot of work to do about the house and at school. She is a busy woman and we all help her. My sister’s name is Alla. Like our mother Alla has blue eyes and fair hair. She is a very good-looking girl. Alla is three years younger than me. She is a pupil of the 8th form. She does well at school and gets only good and excellent marks. Literature is her favourite subject and she wants to become a teacher, as well as I do. Our family is very united. We like to spend time together.

Mоя родина

Наша родина ні велика, ні маленька. У мене є мама, тато і сестра. Ми живемо разом у трикімнатній квартири в одному з промислових районів Харкова. У нас звичайна українська родина. Моєму батькові, Ігорю Івановичу, 45 років. Він високий і добре складений чоловік з коротким чорним волоссям і сірими очима. Він працює інженером на великому заводі. Йому подобається його робота, і він проводить там багато свого часу. За характером мій батько спокійна людина, тоді як мама — енергійна і говірка. Мою маму звати Ольга Петрівна. Вона — учитель музики і добре грає на фортепіано. У моєї мами завжди багато роботи вдома й у школі. Вона зайнята людина, і ми усі допомагаємо їй. Мою сестру звуть Алла. Як і в матері, в Алли блакитні очі і чарівне світле волосся. Вона дуже красива. Алла на три роки молодша за мене. Вона учениця восьмого класу. Вона встигає в школі й одержує тільки гарні і відмінні оцінки. Література — її улюблений предмет, і вона так само, як і я, хоче стати вчителем. Наша родина дуже дружна. Нам подобається проводити час разом.
In the evenings we watch TV, read books and newspapers, listen to music or just talk about the events of the day.

Our parents don’t always agree with what we say, but they listen to our opinion.

All of us like to spend our weekends in the country.

We often go to the village where our grandparents live.

They are aged pensioners now, but prefer to live in the country.

My grand-grandmother is still alive.

She lives in my grandmother’s family and is always glad to see us.

Her health is poor and she asks us to come and see her more often.

I also have many other relatives: uncles, aunts, cousins.

We are happy when we are together.

Vocabulary:

industrial district — промисловий район

agreement — погоджуватися

well-built — гарної статури

to prefer — віддавати перевагу

relatives — родичі

Questions:

1. Is your family large or small?
2. Where do you live?
3. What does your mother look like?
4. Do you have a sister or a brother?
5. Do you often visit your grandparents?

My Parents

My mother’s name is Olena Vasylivna. She is 37 years old.

My father is three years older, he’s 40.
His name is Serhiy Mykolayovych. They are both doctors. They love their job very much, and they spend a lot of time at hospital. Their colleagues and patients respect them.

I am proud of my parents and love them. I would like to spend more time with them, but they always seem to be busy. My sister and I do a lot about the house. So, when my parents have some free time, we can have fun together.

My mother plays the piano and sings very well, and my father is an excellent story-teller. And they are always ready to understand us.

Vocabulary:

job [job] — робота
to spend [spend] — витрачати і проводити
to respect [ris’pekt] — поважати
free [frɪ:] — вільний

Questions:

1. What is your mother’s name?
2. What is your father’s name?
3. What are your parents?
4. Are you proud of your parents?
5. Do you like to spend free time with your parents?

About My Mother

My mother’s name is Valentyna Ivanivna Petrenko. She is forty years old. But to my mind she looks much younger. My father and I think that she is a very beautiful woman.
Mom is not tall, but she has a fine figure.  
Father says she is still as slim as she was in her youth.  
She also has beautiful hair, long and wavy.  
My mother is a busy woman.  
She works as an accountant at a factory.  
She also has a lot of work to do about the house, though Dad and I try to help her as much as possible.  
Mom is a very nice person.  
She has a lot of friends.  
She is kind, energetic and always ready to help.  
She has a good sense of humour and is funny to be with.

Vocabulary:  
- mind [maɪnd] — думка  
- figure [ˈfɪgə] — постать  
- accountant [ˈæktaʊntənt] — бухгалтер

Questions:  
1. What is the full name of your mother?  
2. How old is she?  
3. What is she?  
4. Can you describe your mother’s appearance?  
5. Do you help your mother about the house?

My Parents’ Working Day
My parents are very busy people.  
My father is a businessman.  
He is a chief manager in a very big firm.  
Every day he has a lot of work to do, that’s why he gets up very early, even at weekends.
In the morning he has time only for a light breakfast and a hot cup of coffee.

Meanwhile he usually looks through the newspapers and business magazines. Then he goes to work.

His work lasts till six o’clock in the evening.

Precisely at six everybody leaves the building because my father thinks one should work well in working time.

Due to this unbreakable rule everybody has some time to spend with the family.

In the evening my father likes to watch TV, go to the theatre with my mother or have a nice chat with friends.

My mother is a housewife.

She worked with computers until the birth of my younger sister.

She has much work about the house and her days are really hard, that’s why I do my best to help her.

She’s also just started an evening class in computer studies to know new technologies.

She wants to return to work when my sister goes to school.

Vocabulary:

- busy [ˈbɪzɪ] — занятий
- manager [ˈmænɪdʒər] — директор
- meanwhile [ˈmiːnwaɪl] — одночасно
- due to [dju:] — завдяки
- unbreakable [ʌnˈbreɪkəbl] — непорушний
- precisely [ˈprɪsəsaɪli] — точно
- housewife [ˈhauəswaɪf] — домогосподарка
- birth [bɜːθ] — народження
- technology [tekˈnɒlədʒi] — технологія

Questions:

1. Are your parents busy people?
2. What is your father?
3. When does he get up? What does he have for breakfast?
4. When does his working day start?
5. How do you help your parents?
My Parents’ Vacation

After a year of hard work everybody wants to have a good rest.

Most people want to rest in summer or in early autumn, but some people have their holidays in winter or in spring.

Some people prefer an active rest which includes walking tours, travelling by train, by car or by steamer.

They are glad and happy even if their steamer comes to the next city on a cold rainy night and when they have to wait on the shore till the morning when their excursion starts.

Some people find it quite romantic.

Others go to the seaside to sunbathe and swim for hours.

They just lie in the sun and relax, or play ball games on the yellow sand.

Some people think that though the air is polluted in their town it is quite good near their house and choose to have a rest at home.

And there are people who usually spend their vacation in the country, working in their gardens and kitchen gardens.

As for my parents, they like an active rest.

We like staying outdoors, especially in spring and summer.

In winter we ski a lot.

We get up early in the morning, put on suits for skiing and go to the country where we organize competitions.

Usually this is my father who is the winner.
In summer we go to the seaside and enjoy our holidays. In autumn we often go to the forest to gather mushrooms or berries or just walk there.

**Vocabulary:**
- hard [hɑːd] — важкий
- to prefer [prɪˈfɜː] — віддавати перевагу
- to include [ɪnˈkljuːd] — включати
- steamer [ˈstɪəma] — теплохід
- excursion [ɪkˈsɔːʃn] — екскурсія
- to relax [rɪˈlæks] — розслаблятися
- to be polluted [pəˈluːtɪd] — забруднений
- competition [kəmˈpəʊʃən] — змагання
- to gather [ɡæðə] — збирати

**Questions:**
1. Why does everybody want to rest after a year of work?
2. When do most people like to rest?
3. What is an active rest?
4. How can people rest at the seaside?
5. What kind of rest do you like?
6. How do you usually spend your holidays and weekends?

**My Friend**

I am not a very sociable person yet there are people whom I can call friends.

One of them is Ihor. He is eighteen. He left school last year and now he’s a student of the University. Ihor is a future economist. Ihor is a first year student. He does not have much free time but if he has, Ihor likes to spend it in a good company. Ihor and his friends like to listen to good music, dance, watch new films and discuss them and do many other interesting things.

We often go to the cinema, cafes, concerts and shows.
Ihor is a good friend.
He's always ready to help everybody who needs.
My friend knows a lot of interesting facts about music, famous people and history.
He is fond of driving.
Now his car is not very new and beautiful but he hopes to buy another one in the future.
I'm happy to have such a good friend as Ihor.

Vocabulary:
sociable [səˈɔːbl] — товариський
to discuss [dɪsˈkʌs] — обговорювати
to be fond of [bɪ ˈfɒnd əv] — любити щось робити
to be happy [ˈhæpi] — бути щасливим

Questions:
1. What is your friend’s name?
2. How old is he/she?
3. What is he/she? Where does he/she study?
4. What do you like to do when you have free time?
5. Are you happy to have such a friend?

Appearance
How important is it for you to be attractive?
Although everyone wants to be good-looking, do you think beautiful people are always happy?
I don’t think so.
For example, it must be a problem to be a very beautiful woman, because some men may be more interested in looking at this woman than talking to her.
They think of her like a picture rather than a person.

Зовнішність
Наскільки важливо для вас бути приємним?
Хоча кожний хоче бути симпатичним, чи вважаєте ви, що красиві люди щасливі?
Я так не вважаю.
Наприклад, іноді проблематично бути дуже красивою жінкою, тому що багато чоловіків воліють милуватися такою жінкою, а не спілкуватися з нею.
Вони сприймають її скоріше як картину, ніж як особистість.
Some people think that very pretty women and handsome men are stupid, as a rule.

These people are thought to be only interested in their appearance.

Some people believe that only unattractive people can be clever.

But surely no one wants to be really ugly; and no one wants to be plain either — that is to have rather simple face that can be easily forgotten.

Being attractive can help you find happiness, but it does not always make you happy.

So maybe the best thing is not to worry about your appearance.

It is more important to try to be an interesting personality.

Because interesting people are always attractive.

Deякі люди гадають, що красуні і красені, як правило, дурні.

Про таких людей звичайно думають, що вони цікавляться тільки своєю зовнішністю.

Деякі гадають, що тільки неправильні зовні люди розумні.

Але, звичайно, нікому не хочеться бути по-справжньому виродливим, ніхто також не хоче мати звичайну зовнішність, таку, яку легко забути.

Привабливість може допомогти вам знайти щастя, але не завжди робить вас щасливими.

Тому, можливо, найкраще — не турбуватися про свою зовнішність.

Набагато важливіше бути цікавою особистістю.

Тому що цікаві люди завжди привабливі.

**Vocabulary:**

- attractive [əˈtræktɪv] — привабливий
- handsome [ˈhænsəm] — красивий
- as a rule [əz ə rʊl] — як правило
- ugly [ʌglɪ] — потворний
- plain [pleɪn] — простий, звичайний
- to worry [ˈwʌri] — хвилюватися
- personality [ˈpɜːsənələti] — індивідуальність

**Questions:**

1. Is it important to be pretty?
2. Are beautiful people happy? Why?
3. Why can it be a problem to be a beautiful woman?
4. Why don’t people want to be plain?
5. What do you think about it?

**Character**

When we speak about somebody’s character, we can characterize a person as polite, friendly, good-natured, kind-hearted, generous, thoughtful or, on the contrary, hard-hearted, ill-natured, rude, greedy, uncommunicative.

**Характер**

Коли ми говоримо про чийсь характер, ми можемо так характеризувати людину: привітна, дружелюбна, великомудра, добросердя, щедра, турботлива чи, навпаки, жорстока, злісна, груба, жадібна, нетовариська.
Now I'd like to describe my close friend.

Her name is Kate.

She is a beautiful girl of 16.

Kate is not very tall.

She is always very elegant, she wears the clothes of latest fashion.

Kate has fair curly hair and dark blue eyes.

Her eyelashes are very long and thick.

Kate's face is oval and she has a turned-up nose.

She is a well-bred, merry and kind person.

She is very tactful and shy.

Kate is a pleasant person to deal with, she never loses her temper.

She also has a kind heart and a strong will.

She is always ready to help her friends.

Kate always manages to be amusing and cheerful.

She is an easy-going girl.

I am very happy to have such a friend.

Тепер я хочу описати мою кращу подругу.

Її звуть Катя.

Вона красива дівчинка 16 років.

Катя не дуже висока.

Вона завжди дуже елегантна, вдягається по останній моді.

У Каті світле кучеряве волосся і темно-блакитні очі.

Її від довгі і густі.

У Каті овальне обличчя і кирпатий ніс.

Вона вихована, весела і добра людина.

Вона дуже тактовна і соромлива.

З Катею приємно мати справу, вона ніколи не втрачає самовладання.

У неї також добре серце і сильна воля.

Вона завжди готова допомогти друзям.

Каті завжди вдається бути цікавою в спілкуванні, веселою.

Вона добродушно-весела дівчина.

Я дуже щаслива, що в мене така подруга.

Vocabulary:

character ['kærəkta] — характер

generous ['dʒenərəs] — щедрий

rude [rju:d] — грубий

greedy ['gri:di] — жадібний

clothes of latest fashion ['kləʊðz əv 'leɪtɪst fæʃn] — новомодний

turned-up nose [tɜːnd əp nəuz] — кирпатий ніс

to deal [diːl] — мати справу

to manage [ˈmænɪdʒ] — удаватися

easy-going ['ɛsɪ `geiŋ] — добродушно-веселий

Questions:

1. How can we characterize a person?
2. What is a good-natured person?
3. What does it mean rude and greedy?
4. How can you characterize yourself?
5. What features of your best friend’s character do you like and dislike?
Our House and Flat
I live in a new nine-storeyed block of flats in Pushkin Street.
In front of the house there is a children's playground and a small garden.
We like to spend our time there.
Our flat is on the fourth floor.
It is very comfortable.
We have all modern conveniences, such as central heating, electricity, gas, cold and hot running water and a telephone.
There are three rooms in our flat: a living-room and two bedrooms.
Our living-room is the largest in the flat.
It is nicely furnished.
Opposite the wall you can see a nice cupboard.
There is a colour TV-set in the corner.
In another corner there is a sofa and two armchairs.
The piano is on the right.
There are two pictures above the piano.
There is a bookcase next to it.
We are fond of books and have plenty of them at home.
On the floor we have a nice thick carpet.
The curtains on the window match the wallpaper.
All this makes the room cosy.
Our bedrooms are also very nice and cosy.
The parents' bedroom is larger than the children's.
There are two beds, a bedside table, some chairs and a wardrobe in it.

Наш будинок і квартира
Я живу в новому дев'ятиповерховому будинку на вулиці Пушкіна.
Перед будинком знаходиться дитячий майданчик і невеликий садок.
Нам подобається проводити там час.
Наша квартира розташована на п'ятому поверсі.
Вона дуже комфортабельна.
У нас є всі сучасні вигоди, такі як центральне опалення, електрика, газ, холодна і гаряча вода і телефон.
У нашій квартирі три кімнати: вітальня і дві спальні.
Вітальня — найбільша кімната в квартирі.
Вона прекрасно обставлена.
Біля стіни ви можете бачити красивий сервант.
У кутку — кольоровий телевізор.
У протилежному кутку знаходяться диван і два крісла.
Праворуч стоїть піаніно.
Над піаніно висять дві картини.
Поруч — книжкова шафа.
Ми любимо книги, і в нас їх багато в домі.
На підлозі лежить розкішний килим.
Фіранки на вікнах підібрани в тон шпалер.
Усе це робить кімнату затишною.
Спальні теж дуже красиві і затишні.
Спальня батьків більша дитячої.
У ній два ліжка, туалетний столик, стільці і шафа.
There is a lovely carpet on the floor between the beds. The children’s bedroom is just across the corridor on the right.
Here you can see two sofa-beds where my sister and I sleep at night and have a rest in the day-time.
There is also a writing-table, two chairs and some bookshelves here.
We use our bedroom as a study where we do our homework.
In the corner of the room there is a small table with a tape-recorder on it.
We all enjoy listening to the music.
Our kitchen is rather large.
There is a gas-stove, a refrigerator and a cupboard in which we keep cups, plates and all our dishes.
The kitchen serves us as a dining-room.
But when we receive guests or have our family celebrations we have the meals in the living-room.
We are happy to have such a nice flat and try to keep it clean.

There is a lovely carpet on the floor between the beds.
The children’s bedroom is just across the corridor on the right.
Here you can see two sofa-beds where my sister and I sleep at night and have a rest in the day-time.
There is also a writing-table, two chairs and some bookshelves here.
We use our bedroom as a study where we do our homework.
In the corner of the room there is a small table with a tape-recorder on it.
We all enjoy listening to the music.
Our kitchen is rather large.
There is a gas-stove, a refrigerator and a cupboard in which we keep cups, plates and all our dishes.
The kitchen serves us as a dining-room.
But when we receive guests or have our family celebrations we have the meals in the living-room.
We are happy to have such a nice flat and try to keep it clean.

Vocabulary:

block of flats [ˈblɒk əv flæts] — багатоповерховий будинок
comfortable [ˈkʌmfətəbl] — комфортабельний
central heating [ˈsentrəl hɪˈtiŋ] — центральне опалення
to be furnished [ˈfɜːniʃt] — умебльований
to serve [sɜːv] — служити

Questions:
1. Where do you live? What is your address?
2. How many rooms are there in your flat?
3. What is there in your sitting-room?
4. Have you got all modern conveniences in your flat?
5. What makes your flat comfortable?
My Favourite Room

We have four rooms in our house. But my favourite one is our study which is the biggest room. It is full of wonderful things: books, pictures, collections of coins, a video and computer. There is a very old writing table in the study. My great granddad bought it in the beginning of the century when he was a student. It is very old, solid and comfortable. There is a sofa in the corner of the room and next to it a beautiful old standard lamp, which is on the carpet. I clean the carpet with the vacuum cleaner very often. There is a piano near the window. At night when it gets dark I like to turn off the light, turn on the standard lamp and play the piano. When the standard lamp is on, the study looks like a fairy-land. I often sit in the old armchair and dream of pleasant things. I love this room very much. But my brother likes our living-room. He has got a very good stereo system there. He plays his music very loudly in this room. This room is not very comfortable. There is a fireplace in it, but nevertheless it’s a little cold in winter. There is also an armchair, a sofa and some shelves with compact discs and cassettes in them. My brother spends much time in this room.

My Favourite Room

У нас у будинку є чотири кімнати. Але моя улюблена — кабінет, що є найбільшою кімнатою. Він повний чудових речей: книг, картин, колекцій монет, є відео і комп’ютер. У кабінеті стоїть дуже старий письмовий стіл. Мій прадід купив його на початку століття, коли був студентом. Він дуже старий, солідний і зручний. У кутку кімнати стоїть диван і поруч з ним красивий старий торшер, що стоїть на килимі. Я дуже часто чищу килим пилососом. Фортепіано знаходиться біля вікна. Увечері, коли стемніє, я вимикаю світло, вмикаю торшер і граю на фортепіано. Коли увімкнутий торшер, робочий кабінет виглядає як казкова країна. Я часто сиджу в старому кріслі і мрію про приємні речі. Я дуже люблю цю кімнату. Але мій брат любить нашу вітальню. У нього там дуже гарна стереосистема. Він вмикає музику в цій кімнаті дуже гостно. Ця кімната не дуже зручна. У ній є камін, але, незважаючи на це, узимку там прохолодно. Там є також крісло, диван і полиці з компакт-дисками і касетами в них. Мій брат проводить багато часу в цій кімнаті.
My Friend's House

A friend of mine is my former schoolmate.
Her name is Ann.
She lives in a nice cottage.
It's a stone house.
In front of it there is a green lawn and a flower bed with roses.
In the yard they have a garage.
The house is not very large.
At first you enter the hall.
It is square and rather big.
There are built-in cupboards near the door.
On the wall there is a big mirror.
From the hall you can get into any room.
Their sitting-room is quite big.
There is very little furniture in it.
That's why it looks wide.
There is a thick carpet on the floor.
The bedroom of Ann's parents is furnished with a bedroom suite.
It consists of a double bed, two bedside tables and a wardrobe.
There is a dressing table with a stool near the window. Ann and her sister have their own room. They like to study there and have a rest.

The kitchen is not very large but it is very comfortable. They also have a bathroom and a lavatory.

I like to go to Ann’s place. We often sit in her room, listen to the music and talk.

Vocabulary:

- former ['fɔːma] — колишній
- lawn [lɔːn] — газон
- furniture [ˈfɜːnɪtʃər] — меблі
- curtain [ˈkærɪtn] — занавіска
- double bed [ˈdʌbl bɛd] — двоспальне ліжко
- wardrobe [ˈwɔːdrəʊb] — шафа
- bedspread [ˈbedspred] — покривало
- to arrange [əˈreɪndʒ] — розташовувати, розміщати
- suite [swiːt] — меблевий гарнітур

Questions:

1. What kind of a house does Ann have?
2. How many rooms are there?
3. Describe their sitting-room.
4. Is their kitchen comfortable? Why?
5. Tell about your own room.

An Ideal House

A person’s home is as much a reflection of his personality as the clothes he wears, the food he eats and the friends he spends his time with. Everybody has in mind an “ideal house” and an “ideal home”.

How do I see my “ideal house”, how do I see my life there?

There are many kinds of dwellings, from town houses, which include terraced houses, semi-detached, detached houses, to country houses.

Ідеальний будинок

Будинок людини також відбиває її індивідуальність, як одяг, що вона носить, їжа, яку вона істіть, і друзі, з якими вона спілкується. Кожний подумки уявляє свій «ідеальний будинок».

Як я бачу свій «ідеальний будинок», як уявляю своє життя там?

Існує багато типів житла — від міських будинків, що включають будинки, по-будовані терасою, будинки, що мають загальну стіну, що стоять окремо, і за-кінчуючи сільськими будинками.
I want to live in my own house, maybe in a cottage in the suburbs.

My house will consist of the ground and the first floor.

There will be six rooms in it.

In front of the house I will have a small garden with different flowers.

I’ll also have a garage for my car.

I get up in the morning and go to the bathroom at first.

My bathroom is very good-looking: the walls are tiled in cream, the washbasin, the toilet are pastel pink.

My towels are also pink.

Then I go to the kitchen to have breakfast.

It is always pleasant to cook in it because it is very comfortable.

I make my tea and sandwiches and have breakfast.

Then I go to my work, but in the evening “there is no place like home”.

I will rest in the living-room.

I can sit on the sofa and read or watch TV.

Then I go to the bedroom.

It is my favourite room.

Here I sleep and see how my sweet dreams come true.

**Vocabulary:**

- reflection [‘reflekʃn] — відображення
- detached [‘detætíd] — окремий
- semidetached [‘semi:detætíd] — два будинки з однією стіною
- washbasin [‘wɔʃbeɪsn] — раковина
- suburb [‘sʌbzb] — передмістя
- to come true [’kæm tru:] — здійснюватися

**Questions:**

1. Why do you think a man’s home is a reflection of his personality?
2. Do you live in the house or in the flat?
3. Describe your dwelling.
4. Is it better to live in the private house or in the flat?
5. What is your favourite room?
The House of My Dream

Every person has his own idea of a perfect house.

Since the time immemorial people always wanted to make their dwelling a place, where one feels comfortable and cosy, where one always wants to come back to.

A dwelling of my dream is not a flat but a two-storeyed mansion.

And as a real hostess I’d like to arrange everything in the house according to my taste.

Now, let me tell you about my house.

When you come to me, you push a big wooden front door, wiping your feet on the door-mat, and enter the hall.

The floor is covered with a fitted carpet, the wallpaper is light and has a small pattern.

There’s a seat and a small table near the wall and a huge mirror above it.

Then you enter the living-room.

The bright full-length curtains are drawn back, and sunshine fills the room.

The living-room suite, consisting of a sideboard, a bookcase, a sofa, an elegant coffee table and three armchairs, is arranged around three walls.

There’s a video system near the window.

On the ground floor there’s also a kitchen and a bathroom.

The kitchen is a very large room with a big window.

There is a gas cooker with a hood, two wall-cupboards and a sink unit there.
Near the opposite wall there is a dishwasher, a refrigerator and a table. Let’s go upstairs and have a look at the bedroom.

This is a very cozy and warm room. The bedroom suite consists of a bed, two bedside tables and a wardrobe.

The window overlooks the back yard. In my house there is also a terrace, a garage and a garden and so many other things I’d like to have; at least, in my dream house.

**Vocabulary:**

- **dwelling** [dwelɪŋ] — житло, оселя
- **since the time immemorial** — з давніх давен
- **cosy** [ˈkɒzi] — затишний
- **mansion** [ˈmænʃən] — особняк
- **fitted carpet** [ˈfɪtɪd ˈkɑːpɪt] — килимове покриття
- **suite** [swɪ:t] — меблевий гарнітур
- **hood** [hu:d] — витяжка
- **dressing table** [ˈdresɪŋ ˈteɪbl] — туалетний столик
- **terrace** [ˈtɛrəs] — тераса
- **to wipe** [waɪp] — витирати

**Questions:**

1. What does every person have?
2. What kind of place did people want to make their dwelling?
3. What is a mansion?
4. What type of dwelling do you have?
5. Do you have your idea of a perfect dwelling? What is it?

**My Working Day**

I usually get up at 7 o’clock on weekdays.

I make my bed, open the window and do my morning exercises.

Then I go to the bathroom where I clean my teeth and wash.

If I have enough time, I take a cold and hot shower.

After bathroom I go back to my room where I dress and brush my hair.
10 minutes later I am ready for breakfast.

After breakfast I put on my coat, take my bag and go to school.

As I live not far from school, it takes me only five or seven minutes to get there.

I don’t want to be late for the first lesson so I come to school a few minutes before the bell.

I leave my coat in the cloakroom and go upstairs to the classroom.

The lessons begin at eight o’clock in the morning and they are over at half past one in the afternoon.

After classes I go home and have dinner there.

After dinner I have a short rest, read newspapers and magazines.

Then I do my homework.

We do many subjects at school and it takes me three or even more hours to do my homework.

Sometimes I go to the library to get ready for my practical classes or to write a report.

As a rule I have no free time on my week-days.

Eight o’clock is supper time in our family.

We all get together in the kitchen, then go to the sitting room and watch TV, read books or discuss different problems.

Twice a week I go to school in the evening to play volleyball.

I am a member of the school volleyball team and we have our training classes rather late.

At about eleven at night I go to bed.

Через десять хвилин я готовий до сніданку.

Після сніданку я одягаю плащ, беру портфель і йду до школи.

Оскільки я живу недалеко від школи, щоб добратися туди, мені потрібно тільки 5—7 хвилин.

Я не хочу спізнюватися на перший урок і тому приходжу в школу за кілька хвилин до дзвоника.

Я залишаю плащ у гардеробі і піднімаюся в клас.

Уроки починаються восьмій годині ранку і закінчуються о пів на другу.

Після уроків я йду додому й обідаю.

Після обіду я трохи відпочиваю, потом читаю газети і журнали.

Потім я роблю уроки.

У школі ми вивчаємо багато предметів, і підготовка домашнього завдання займає три години чи навіть більше.

Іноді я йду в бібліотеку підготуватися до практичних занять чи написати доповідь.

Як правило, в будень у мене не залишається вільного часу.

У нашій родині восьма година — час вечері.

 Ми усі разом збираємося на кухні, потім йдемо у вітальню і дивимося телевізор, читаємо книги чи обгово- рюємо різні питання.

Двічі на тиждень увечері я ходжу в школу грати у волейбол.

Я член шкільної волейбольної команди, і тренування в нас досить пізно.

Я лягаю спати близько одинадцятій години ночі.
Questions:

1. When do you usually get up?
2. What do you do in the morning?
3. When do your lessons begin?
4. What do you usually do after school?
5. When do you go to school?

Vocabulary:

to clean the teeth ['klɛn dә tiːθ] — чистити зуби
to be late [leɪt] — запізнюватися
as a rule [əz ә 'ruːl] — як правило

cold and hot shower [kɔːld and 'hot 'ʃauə] — контрастний душ

● After School

We have spoken about what pupils do at school, at lessons and during breaks.
But boys and girls don’t spend the whole day at school.
This talk will be about what they do when school is over and they are free.
Not everybody goes home after the last lesson.
Many boys and girls — the most active members of the class and school — stay at school for some time for social activities.
They organize parties, conferences, games and meetings.
The school library is open at this time for pupils who come to choose a new book or read an interesting magazine.

There are different after-school clubs at school; each member of an after-school club goes there to do something which interests him.
Sports sections are also very popular.

● Після школи

Ми говорили про те, що школярі роблять у школі, на уроках і на перервах.
Але хлопчики і дівчатка не весь день проводять у школі.
Зараз розмова піде про те, що вони роблять після школи, коли вільні.

Не кожний йде після останнього уроку додому.
Багато активістів класу, школи залишаються в школі на якийсь час, щоб виконати суспільну роботу.

Вони організовують вечори, конференції, ігри і збори.
Шкільна бібліотека відкрита в цей час для учнів, що прийшли, щоб вибрати нову книгу чи почитати цікавий журнал.
Існує багато гуртків, що працюють після заняття у школах; кожен після уроків приходить сюди, щоб робити те, що його цікавить.

Спортивні секції теж дуже популярні.
Their members play games and go in for gymnastics.
You can see boys and girls from all classes either in the gymnasium or on the sport-ground.
As you know, schoolchildren have to study after school, too.
They have homework to do.

When do you think it is better to begin doing homework?
As doctors and teachers say, the best time is after dinner and an hour’s walk.
If you have no rest, it’ll be difficult to prepare your lessons.
Work about the house is a good rest from studying, too.
The English people say, “A change of work is as good as a rest”.

So it is useful to go to the shops and buy something.
But if you meet a friend in the street, don’t talk too much because you’ll have too little time for your lessons.

Questions:
1. What do you like to do after school?
2. Can you do what you like or are there things you must do?
3. Does your school have playing fields?
4. What is your favourite kind of sport?
5. What out-of-school activities are you fond of?

Vocabulary:

to go in for [gəʊ in fɔː] — заниматься (спортом)

to be at home [bɪ At həʊm] — быть дома

Their members грають в ігри і займаються гімнастикою.
Можна побачити молодь з різних класів чи у спортивному залі, чи на ігровому майданчику.
Як відомо, школярі після школи теж повинні учитися.
У них є завдання, які необхідно робити.
Як ви думаєте, коли краще почати робити домашнє завдання?
Лікарі і вчителі говорять, що кращий час — це після обіду і годинної прогулянки.
Якщо ви не відпочинете, то важко буде готувати уроки.
Робота по дому — теж гарний відпочинок від занять.
Англійці говорять: “Зміна роботи так само гарна, як і відпочинок”.
Таким чином, корисно сходити в магазин і купити що-небудь.
Але якщо ви зустрінете друга на вулиці, не розмовляйте занадто довго, тому що у вас залишиться мало часу на уроки.
Our Duties about the House

Every person should be hard-working because one cannot get anything without putting a lot of work into it.

In our family everybody works with pleasure.

I haven’t got any brother who could help my father to make furniture or do carpentry, so he has to do it himself.

I have no younger sisters or brothers but if I did have them, I would be a very good baby-sitter because I like little children very much.

When I come home very early, I don’t just sit and wait till my mother returns home and cooks supper for me.

I do it myself and when my parents come home from work, I am glad to greet them and invite to the kitchen to taste my cookery.

I think that the duties about the house are divided between my father, my mother and me quite justly.

Though most of cooking in our family is done by my mother I help her by laying the table and clearing it after meals and washing up.

On washing days my father and I help her to wring out clothes and hang the linen, then I iron it.

I also do some shopping and keep the rooms clean and tidy.

My mother does most of work in our family.

She cooks breakfast for us every day and does shopping on her way back from work.

I try to do all I can to help my parents about the house.

Обов’язки по дому

Кожна людина повинна ретельно трудитися, тому що не можна нічого домогтися, не докладаючи до цього зусиль.

У нашій родині кожний працює із завданим.

У мене немає брата, який би допомагав татові лагодити меблі чи столярувати, тому йому доводиться робити це самому.

У мене немає і молодших сестер чи братів, але якби вони в мене були, я була б дуже гарною нянькою, я дуже люблю маленьких дітей.

Коли я приходжу додому рано, я не сиджу і не чекаю, поки повернеться мама і приготувати вечерю.

Я готую її сама, і коли мої батьки повертаються з роботи, я вітаю їх з радістю і запрошу на кухню спробувати моє частування.

Я думаю, що обов’язки по дому розділені між батьками і мною цілком справедливо.

Хоча в нашій родині готує переважно мама, я допомагаю їй накривати на стіл і прибирати його після іди, мити посуд.

У дні прання мій батько і я допомагаємо викручувати і розвішувати білизну, потім я прасую її.

Я також ходжу за покупками, прибираю в кімнатах.

Моя мама робить великі частину роботи в нашій родині.

Вона готує сніданок для нас щодня, ходить у магазин по дорозі з роботи додому.

Я роблю все можливо, щоб допомагати батькам по дому.
Vocabulary:

hardworking [ˈhɑːrdwɜːk] — працелюбний
to cook [kuːk] — готувати їжу
to invite [ɪnˈvaɪt] — запрошувати
carpentry [ˈkɑːpətri] — теслярські роботи
to divide [dɪˈvaɪd] — ділити
to wring out [rɪŋ] — викидати білизну

Questions:
1. Why should we be hardworking?
2. Who cooks dinner in your family?
3. How are the duties divided in your family?
4. Who usually goes shopping?
5. What is your duty?

My Day Off
I usually have no free time on week-­
days that’s why I look forward to my
days off.
On a day off I don’t have to hurry any­
where.
I can do whatever I like.
On a day off I wake up later than usual, at about 10 o’clock.
I don’t get up at once.
I like to stay in bed for a while and think about something nice.

Then I get up and have breakfast.
I like to have something special for breakfast on such days.
In the afternoon I usually play football or basketball with my friends.
In fine weather we often go to the country.
We find a nice place and sunbathe and play different games in summer or go skiing in winter.
In the evening I like to read, listen to the music or play chess with my father.
Vocabulary:
free time [frɪː tɪm] — вільний час
to hurry [ˈhʌrɪ] — поспішати
at once [ət ˈwʌns] — зразу, відразу
country [ˈkʌntri] — сільська місцевість
chess [tʃes] — шахи

Questions:
1. When do you get up on a day off?
2. What do you do in the morning?
3. What do you do in the afternoon?
4. What do you do in the evening?
5. Do you like to spend your day off with your friends? Why?

My Everyday Meals
I usually have two or three meals a day on weekdays and four meals on my day off.

Because I don’t often have an opportunity to have a dinner when I’m at school.

My meals are: breakfast, lunch, dinner and supper or tea.

Some of my friends have a snack rather than a meal in the morning.

But my breakfast is a full meal and I have it at 7 o’clock.

It is usually bacon and eggs.

Afterwards come sandwiches with butter and cheese or sausages, or sometimes jam.

Then I drink tea or coffee.

I have lunch at about 12 o’clock.

It starts with fruit juice.

Then I have a vegetable salad and sandwiches again or pies with tea.

Dinner is at three or four o’clock.

For dinner I have soup or borsch for starter, and meat or fish with a lot of vegetables for main course.

For dessert I often have stewed fruit or jelly.
And at last supper.  
It is at seven or eight.  
My mother usually cooks fried fish and mashed potatoes, beefsteak and omelette.  
And salads, of course.  
Then I prefer a glass of warm milk with biscuits.  
Sometimes before going to bed I drink orange juice or eat an apple.

I, нарешті, вечеря.  
Вечеря о 7 чи 8 вечора.  
Моя мама звичайно готує смажену рибу і картопляне пюре, біфштекс і омлет.  
І, звичайно, салат.  
Потім я віддаю перевагу склянці теплого молока з печивом.  
Іноді перед сном я п’ю апельсиновий сік чи їм яблуко.

Vocabulary:

**opportunity** [ɒpəˈtjuːnɪtɪ] — можливість

**snack** [snæk] — закуска, закусити

Questions:

1. How many times a day do you have meals?
2. What do you have for breakfast?
3. Do you have lunch? When?
4. What do you usually have for dessert?
5. What is your favourite dish?

● Shops and Shopping

When we want to buy something, we must go to the shop where it is sold.

In the shop window we see what is sold in the shop.  
Sugar, tea, coffee, salt, pepper, ham, bacon, and so on are sold at the grocer’s.  
Bread is sold at the baker’s, meat at the butcher’s.  
We go to the greengrocer’s for vegetables and fruit.  
We buy boots and shoes at the shoe-shop.  
We buy books at the bookseller’s and jewellery and watches at the jeweller’s.

● Магазини

Коли ми хочемо що-небудь купити, ми повинні йти в магазин, де це продається.  
На вітрині видно, що продається в магазині.  
Цукор, чай, кава, сіль, перець, шинка, бекон тощо продається в бакалії.  
Хліб продається в булочній, а м’ясо — у м’ясному магазині.  
Ми йдемо в овочевий магазин за овочами і фруктами.  
Черевики і туфлі ми купуємо у взуттєвому.  
Ми купуємо книги в книжковому, а коштовності і годинник — у ювелірному магазині.
The salesman or salesgirl stands behind the counter.

We ask the salesman: “How much is this?” or “What is the price of that?”

He tells us the price.

He gives us the bill.

At the cashdesk we give the money and the bill to the cashier, who gives us a check and our change.

The salesman wraps up the goods and gives them to us.

We put them in our bag.

Some shops have many departments.

We can buy nearly everything we need there.

These are called department stores.

In some shops there are no salesmen, but only cashiers.

The customers choose the goods they want and pay at the cashdesk.

These are called self-service shops.

If someone tries to take things from a shop without paying they are almost certain to be caught.

Most shops have store detectives who have the job catching shoplifters.

Shoplifting is considered a serious crime by the police.

---

**Vocabulary:**

- **shop window** — вітринна
- **butcher’s** — м’ясний магазин
- **greengrocer’s** — овочевий магазин
- **jewellery** — ювелірний
- **counter** — прилавок
- **price** — ціна
- **grocer’s** — бакалія
- **baker’s** — булочна
- **cashier** — касир
- **customer** — покупець
- **shop-lifter** — магазинний злодій
- **crime** — злочин
Questions:
1. Where do we go to buy tea? bread? books? watches?
2. Who serves in shops?
3. What do we ask when we want to know the price?
4. What is a department store?
5. What is a self-service shop?
6. How do you call someone who tries to take things from a shop without paying for them?
7. Do you often go shopping?

Animals
There are two types of animals.
We know wild animals.
They are those that live in the woods, jungles and in the fields.
They are: foxes, tigers, wolves, elephants, hares and so on.
And there are animals that live near the people.
They are called domestic animals.

And some of them even help people.

Horses, bulls, dogs help people a lot.

Domestic animals are cows, cats, sheep and so on.
Many years ago when there were no cars and trucks people used horses and bulls working in the fields.

Dogs are our great friends but they also guard our houses and they are used in the army and by the police.

Cats catch mice and rats.
As for other domestic animals they are also very useful.

Hens, ducks, geese, turkeys give meat and eggs.

Cows and goats give milk.

Тварини
Є два види тварин.

Ми знаємо диких тварин.

Це ті, котрі живуть у лісах, джунглях і полях.

Це лиси, тигри, вовки, зайці і так далі.

І є тварини, що живуть біля людей.

Іх називають свійськими тваринами.

Деякі з них навіть допомагають людям.

Коні, бики, собаки дуже багато допомагають людям.

Свійські тварини — це корови, кішки, вівці і так далі.

Багато років тому, коли не було машин і вантажівок, люди використовували биків і коней для роботи на полях.

Собаки — наші велики друзі, але вони також охороняють наші будинки і використовуються в армії і поліції.

Кішки ловлять мишей і пацюків.

Що ж до інших тварин, то вони теж дуже корисні.

Кури, качки, гусаки, індикі дають м’ясо і яйця.

Корови і кози дають молоко.
Young cows, pigs and sheep give very delicious meat.

It should be said that both wild and domestic animals can be good actors and we can see them in the circus.

There are animal-trainers that train a certain kind of animals.

For example, Kucklachov has the theatre where cats play main parts.

Such shows are really funny and interesting.

Vocabulary:

jungles [dʒʌŋgəlz] — джунглі
domestic [dəˈmɛstɪk] — свійський
animal-trainer [ˈæniməlˈtreɪnə] — дресирувальник
guard [ɡɑːd] — охороняти, стерегти
delicious [dɪˈlɪʃəs] — смачний
funny [ˈfʌni] — кумедний

Questions:

1. What are the types of animals?
2. What are wild animals? Name them.
3. What are domestic animals? Name them.
4. How do they help people?
5. Can animals be actors? Where can we see them?

Pets

There are a lot of people who like animals.

And many of them keep some animals at home.

Such animals are called pets.

They are cats, dogs, hamsters, white mice and so on.

They know their masters and love them.

And all the pets need their master’s care and love.

Dogs can be good friends to lonely people, cats can cure some illnesses and bad mood.
I love cats very much.
I have one at home.
My cat’s name is Alice.
She is four years old, but she is rather small.
Alice has very beautiful eyes and when it is dark in the room they shine.
She likes to play and to sleep, but most of all she likes to eat.
Some cats walk outdoors.
My cat hates it.
She thinks that a domestic cat should stay at home.
But in general it is a cat that walks by herself.

Vocabulary:
hamster [ˈhæmstə] — хом'як
master [ˈmæstə] — хазяїн
care [keə] — турбота
to cure [kju:ə] — зціляти
mood [muːd] — настрій
in general [ˈɪdʒenərəl] — загалом

Questions:
1. How do we call animals that live with people? Name them.
2. Do they know their masters?
3. What do they need?
4. Do you have a pet?
5. What kind of animal is it?
6. Say some words about your pet.

Choosing a Career
It is very important for us to make the right choice of profession.
Many years ago I decided to enter the Foreign Languages Department of the University.
English was my favourite subject at school.
I did well in it.
Our lessons were always interesting.

Вибір професії
Для нас дуже важливо зробити правильний вибір професії.
Багато років тому я вирішила вступити до університету на факультет іноземних мов.
Англійська мова була моїм улюбленим предметом у школі.
Я добре училася.
Наші уроки завжди були цікавими.
I also worked hard at my English on my own.

I did a lot of exercises trying to improve my language skills.

I read English books, newspapers and magazines.

So I decided to enter the Foreign Languages Department.

I wanted to know English perfectly.

I want to work as a teacher at school.

Today the teachers of English are of great demand in our country.

I like this profession though I understand that it is a difficult job.

To be a good teacher you must be interested in what you are doing.

The profession of a teacher is very important.

The teacher is a person who is always ready to help his pupils, who takes a real interest in his work.

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>career [kæˈrɪə]</td>
<td>кар’єра</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>language skills [ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ skɪlz]</td>
<td>мовні навички</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to improve [ɪmˈpruːv]</td>
<td>покращити, поліпшити</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choice [tʃɔɪs]</td>
<td>вибір</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department [dɪˈpɑːtmənt]</td>
<td>факультет</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions:

1. Why is it important to make the right choice of profession?
2. Have you made your choice?
3. What was your favourite subject at school?
4. What college are you going to enter?
5. What do you think of the profession of teacher?
6. Why is it difficult and important?
7. Who was your favourite teacher at school? Why?
My Future Profession

Finishing school is the beginning of the independent life for millions of school leavers.
Many roads are open before them: technical schools, colleges and universities.
But it is not an easy thing to choose a profession out of more than 2,000 existing in the world.
Some pupils follow the advice of their parents, others can’t decide even after leaving school.
As for me I made my choice long ago.

I want to become a teacher of the Ukrainian language and literature.
My choice of this occupation didn’t come as a sudden flash.
During all school years literature was my favourite subject.

I have read a lot of books by Ukrainian and foreign writers.
I understand that reading books helps people in self-education and in solving different life problems.
My parents are also teachers and I know that teaching is a very specific and difficult job.
Teachers do not only teach their subjects.
They develop their pupils’ intellect, form their views and characters, their attitudes to life and to other people.
It’s a great responsibility.
It’s not as easy as it may seem at first.

But I think that love for children combined with the knowledge I’ll get at the University would be quite enough to succeed in my work.
I'm applying to the Philological Department and I am sure my dream will come true sooner or later.

Vocabulary:

beginning [biˈginɪŋ] — початок
easy [ˈezi] — легкий
advice [ədˈvais] — порада

to decide [dɪˈsaɪd] — вирішувати
to apply [əˈplaɪ] — вступати (до вузу)

Questions:

1. Is finishing school the beginning of the independent life for school leavers?
2. What do you want to be?
3. Are you going to follow the advice of your parents?
4. Why do you want to be a teacher?
5. What do you do for that? Where are you going to continue your education?

My Plans for the Future

I think that one of the most difficult things is to plan one’s own future.

But a person may suppose what he or she would like to do in the near future.

I have not decided about my future profession yet.
Life is quite difficult now, but I want to have an interesting job.

I would like my work to be connected with different countries and people.

I’d like to communicate with people at my work.
I also hope to enter some higher educational establishment and gain more knowledge and more friends.
My another dream is to learn to operate the computer.
Perhaps I will attend some computer classes.
I will also improve my command of English.
I realize that the knowledge of languages is very important nowadays.

I hope to spend more time with my family, especially with my grandparents. They are getting older, so they need more care and help now. And I hope I will have enough time for my favourite music and my old friends. I can’t imagine my future life without them.

Vocabulary:

- to suppose [ˈsəpərəuz] — припускати
- to communicate [kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt] — спілкуватися
- to gain [ɡɛm] — придбати
- enough [ɪnʌf] — достатньо

Questions:

1. Is it easy to choose a profession?
2. Do you have a dream?
3. Is it important to have good knowledge of a foreign language nowadays?
4. What do you want to be?
5. Can you imagine your life without your friends?

● A Good Beginning Makes a Good Ending

It’s always interesting to begin something new. And if the beginning is good, the end may also be good.

If we think of such a problem as “choosing a profession”, we must know everything about this or that profession.

For example, I want to become a doctor. It means that at the age of ten or eleven I have to read books about doctors.

● Гарний початок сприяє гарному закінченню

Завжди цікаво почати що-небудь нове.

І якщо початок гарний, то закінчення може бути теж гарним.

Якщо ми візьмемо таку проблему як вибір професії, то ми повинні знати усе про ту чи іншу професію.

Наприклад, я хочу стати лікарем.

Це значить, що у віці 10 чи 11 років я повинна читати книги про лікарів.
This may be done by going to the library and by reading widely; also by talking to adults who know much about this profession.

I also need to think about how well I can do what I would like to do.

Perhaps the best way to prepare for any job is to get a good education — to do well at school, and to learn all I can outside of school.

Jobs change and new ones are constantly appearing.

In some years now, there will be many more new jobs nobody knows anything about today.

By reading and talking to people we'll learn what great opportunities there will be for us.

If a school leaver wants to get a higher education, the best way to it is through practical work.

Most school leavers will work a few years at a factory or plant before entering the University.

They will have time to think over their decision and they will have a good knowledge of life.

Questions:

1. How do you understand such a phrase as “a good beginning makes a good ending”?
2. How do you spend your free time?
3. Have you got enough free time?
4. What do you think is more interesting to study subjects or get practical work?
A Citizen Is Not a Profession

What does the sentence “I am a citizen of Ukraine” mean?
At first it is difficult to answer.

Let’s take some examples.
A doctor helps people to improve their health.
A worker makes machines.
A farmer grows plants.
A teacher teaches pupils.
A soldier defends our country.
In short we can become builders, shopmen or pilots.

But a citizen is not a profession.
To be a citizen means to be responsible for one’s work, for the future of our country.
People become doctors to help other people.
They become farmers to give their country more bread.
They become workers to make new machines needed by their country.

They become teachers to give the youth knowledge necessary for their life.

We know the names of the best veterans of labour and veterans of war in our country.
We met with them and they told us about their work and life.

But have we thought about what the members of our own families have done as Ukrainian citizens?

Бути громадянином — не професія

Що означає вислів «Я громадянин України»?
Спочатку здається важким дати відповідь.
Візьмемо кілька прикладів.
Лікар допомагає людям поліпшити здоров’я.
Робітник створює машини.
Фермер вирощує врожаї.
Учитель навчає дітей.
Солдат захищає нашу країну.
Коротше кажучи, ми можемо стати будівельниками, продавцями чи льотчиками.
Але громадянин — це не професія.
Бути громадянином — означає відповідати за свою роботу, за майбутнє нашої країни.
Люди стають лікарями, щоб допомагати іншим людям.
Вони стають фермерами, щоб дати своїй країні більше хліба.
Вони стають робітниками, щоб робити нові машини, необхідні їх країні.
Вони стають учителями, щоб дати молоді знання, необхідні для життя.

Ми знаємо імена найкращих ветеранів праці і ветеранів війни в нашій країні.
Ми зустрічалися з ними, і вони розповідали нам про свою роботу і життя.
Але чи думали ми про членів своєї родини, що зробили щось як українські громадяни?
What are the results of their work?  
Why do people respect our grandfathers and grandmothers?  
These questions are very important.  
They are important because sometimes young people speak about leading workers, war heroes and veterans of labour, but we do not think about our own parents and grandparents.  
We do not think about what our fathers and mothers are for our country and society.  
So grown-ups can tell us a lot about how our country developed.

Які результати їхньої роботи?  
Чому люди поважають наших дідуся і бабусь?  
Ці питання дуже важливі.  
Вони важливі, тому що іноді молодь говорить про передових робітників, героїв війни і ветеранів праці, але ми не думаємо, ким були наші батьки, дідусі і бабусі.  
Ми не думаємо про те, що наші батьки і матері значать для нашої країни і нашого суспільства.  
Таким чином, дорослі люди можуть розповісти нам багато чого про те, як розвивалася наша країна.

**Vocabulary:**

citizen [ˈsɪtɪzn] — громадянин

to improve [ɪmˈpruːv] — покращувати

leading worker [ˈlɛdɪŋ wɜːkə] — передовий робітник

to be responsible [rɪsˈpɒnsəbl] — бути відповідальним

labour [ˈleɪbə] — праця

society [səˈsaɪtɪ] — суспільство

**Questions:**

1. How do you learn to be a citizen?
2. Whose examples can teach you to become a good citizen of our country?
3. What are you responsible for as a member of your family and a pupil of your school?
Our School

Our school is a modern two-storeyed building of a typical design.
It is situated in the centre of the city in a picturesque street named after the great Ukrainian poet Lesya Ukrainka.

In front of our school there are round flower-beds, where pupils grow different flowers during their biology lessons.

There are different specialized classrooms for the lessons of Physics, Chemistry, Geography and Biology. They have slide projectors; schemes and tables are on the walls.

Chemistry and Physics classrooms have special laboratories well-equipped for different experiments and tests, which are made by our pupils during the lessons.

The first floor of our school is occupied by English, French and German classrooms.

There one can find different pictures, maps, diagrams and wall newspapers on the walls.

On the second floor there is our gymnasium and assembly room, where we usually gather to celebrate different holidays.

We decorate the assembly room with colourful balloons, slogans and our pictures.

In the gymnasium we have our classes of physical training and also spend the breaks between the lessons playing volleyball or basketball.

There are also classrooms for junior pupils in our school.

VIII. IN SCHOOL (У ШКОЛІ)

Наша школа

Наша школа — сучасний двоповерховий будинок типового проекту.

Вона розташована в центрі міста на мальовничій вулиці, названій на честь великої української поетеси Лесі Українки.

Перед школою знаходяться круглі клумби, де учні вирощують різні квіти під час уроків біології.

У школі є різні спеціалізовані класи для занять фізикою, хімією, географією і біологією.

У них є слайдяпроектори, на стінах висять схеми і таблиці.

У кабінетах хімії і фізики є спеціальні лабораторії, добре обладнані для різних експериментів і тестів, що проводяться учнями під час уроків.

На першому поверсі нашої школи розташовані кабінети англійської, французької і німецької мов.

На стінах висять картини, карти, діаграми і стіннівки.

На другому поверсі — спортзал і актовий зал, де ми звичайно збираємося, щоб відзначити різні свята.

Ми прикрашаємо актовий зал кольоровими кулями, гаслами і нашими малюнками.

У спортзалі проходять уроки фізкультури, і ми також проводимо там перерви, граючи у волейбол і баскетбол.

У нашій школі є також початкові класи.
They are decorated with large pictures of nature, different things made by the youngest schoolchildren, large posters with alphabet and numbers and so on.

Those rooms are the largest and most beautiful in our school.

We also have aesthetics classroom where we have the lessons of drawing, music and Russian and Ukrainian literature.

There one can see portraits of Ukrainian poets and writers, posters with the history of the development of Ukrainian costumes.

The canteen and the cloak-room are on the ground floor.

On the whole our school is very clean and light.

There are white and pink curtains on the windows and many flowers on the window sills.

The corridors are large and full of sunlight.

There we can have some rest between our classes or just talk with each other.

I like my school very much.

Vocabulary:

- **table** [ˈteɪbl] — таблиця
- **assembly** [ˈæsəmbli] — актовий (зал)
- **balloon** [ˈbæluːn] — повітряна куля
- **junior** [ˈdʒʊriə] — початковий

Questions:

1. Is your school large or small?
2. How many storeys are there in your school?
3. Describe your classroom.
4. Do you like your school?
5. What do you usually do at your classes?
**My School**

Our school is not very big.

It's a modern three-storeyed building of a typical design.

In front of the school there is a big sports ground, behind it there is a small garden with beautiful flower-beds.

Here on the sports ground pupils have their lessons of physical training when the weather is fine.

When you enter the school, you will see a large gymnasium and workshops on the left.

On the right there is a canteen.

The cloak-room is downstairs.

The classrooms, the laboratories, the doctor’s room, the library, the teachers’ room are on the upper floors.

On the walls of the corridors you can see portraits of famous scientists, writers and outstanding people of our country.

There are light curtains on the windows and many flowers on the window-sills.

The halls are full of sunlight.

Entering a classroom you'll find three rows of desks, a teacher’s table, a blackboard and a bookcase.

You’ll also see different pictures, diagrams and wall newspapers.

**Vocabulary:**

- **typical design** [ˈtɪpɪkəl dɪˈzaɪn] — типовий проект
- **physical** [ˈfɪzɪkəl] — фізичний
- **gymnasium** [dʒɪmˈneɪziəm] — спортзал
- **workshops** [ˈwɜːkʃəps] — майстерні

**Questions:**

1. Is your school old or new?
2. Where are the playground and the garden?
3. What can we see on the upper floors?
4. Where is the gymnasium?
5. Do you like your school?
Our Classroom

Our classroom is situated on the second floor of our school building. It is very light because it has three big windows and the walls are covered with light green wallpaper.

The windows look to the south that's why in spring and early autumn it can be quite hot.

From our windows we can see the school garden. When it's warm outside, we open the windows to let in some fresh air.

There are lots of pot plants on the window-sills and we take good care of them.

The curtains on the windows are violet.

On entering our classroom you'll see three rows of pupils' desks and a teacher's desk.

The board in our classroom is green. Next to the board there's a map of Ukraine. There are also a few diagrams and tables on the walls.

We spend a lot of time in our classroom and we try to keep it tidy and clean.

Vocabulary:

- *curtain* [ˈkɜːtn] — штора, занавіска
- *diagram* [ˈdɪəɡrɑːm] — схема
- *pot plant* [ˈpɒt ˈplɑːnt] — кімнатна рослина
- *violet* [ˈvaɪələt] — фіолетовий

Questions:

1. Where is your classroom situated?
2. How many windows are there in it?
3. What are the walls covered with?
4. What are there on the walls?
5. Do you like your classroom?
The School Library

I like to read interesting books.
I have a lot of books at home, but nevertheless I go to the library.
I go to the library to read books there or to take them out to read at home.

Our school has a big and rich library.

It is on the first floor.
The library is full of publications necessary for work at different subjects.
There are books on art, physics, mathematics and also a lot of books by Ukrainian, Russian and foreign writers, such as: Pushkin, Lermontov, Tolstoi, Dickens, London, Burns and others.
There are lot of books by modern writers.
These books tell us about the most important problems of life and teach how to solve them.
There are lots of magazines and newspapers in our library.
We often use them preparing for the reports or the discussions.
Sometimes we can come to the library and read them just for fun.
Because they always contain very interesting and useful articles.
There is a stand in our library which illustrates the most important political events in our and other countries, articles about famous people and funny stories.
There is another stand that is the exposition of new books.
Our librarian is always ready to help us to choose a necessary book.

Шкільна бібліотека

Я люблю читати цікаві книги.
У мене вдома багато книг, але, незважаючи на це, я ходжу в бібліотеку.
Я ходжу в бібліотеку читати книги там чи брати їх із собою, щоб читати вдома.
У нашій школі є велика і багата бібліотека.
Вона на першому поверсі.
Бібліотека повністю укомплектована літературою, необхідною для роботи з різних предметів.
Там є книги з мистецтва, фізики, математики, а також є багато книг українських, російських та іноземних письменників, таких, як: Пушкін, Лермонтов, Толстой, Диккенс, Лондон, Бернс та ін.
Багато книг сучасних письменників.
Ці книги розповідають нам про найважливіші життєві проблеми й вчать, як їх вирішувати.
У нашій бібліотеці є багато журналів і газет.
Ми часто використовуємо їх, готуючись до доповідей і дискусій.
Іноді ми можемо прийти у бібліотеку і читати їх тільки для розваги.
Адже вони завжди містять дуже цікаві і корисні статті.
У нашій бібліотеці є стенд, що ілюструє найголовніші політичні події в нашій та інших країнах, статті про відомих людей і цікаві історії.
На іншому стенді — виставка нових книг.
Наш бібліотекар завжди готовий допомогти нам вибрати необхідну книгу.
Sometimes we have literary disputes in our library.

Our librarian often invites poets, journalists and other interesting people to meet with us.

The pupils of our school like the library very much and go there with great pleasure.

Vocabulary:

publications [ˈpʌblɪʃən] — література
necessary [ˈnesəsərɪ] — потрібний, необхідний
modern [ˈmɒdn] — сучасний
to solve [səlv] — вирішувати
magazine [ˌmæɡəˈziːn] — журнал
report [rɪˈpɔːrt] — доповідь

to contain [kənˈteɪn] — містити
stand [stænd] — станід, етажерка
to illustrate [ɪˈləstræt] — ілюструвати
exposition [ˌekspəˈzɪʃən] — виставка
dispute [dɪˈspjuːt] — диспут, обговорення

Questions:
1. Why do you often go to the school library?
2. What kind of literature books does the school library contain?
3. What do we use for reports?
4. What do the stands show?
5. What does the librarian do?

My Favourite Subject

My favourite subject is English.

English is very important as it has become the most used language in politics, science, trade and cultural relations in the world.

It is also the language of great literature.

Such writers as William Shakespeare, Walter Scott, Charles Dickens and Bernard Shaw wrote in English.

It gives me great pleasure to read their books in the original.

I learn English at school.

I also read English books, magazines and newspapers.

Мій улюблений предмет

Мій улюблений предмет — англійська мова.

Англійська мова дуже важлива, тому що вона стала найбільш уживаною мовою в галузі політики, науки, торгівлі і культурних відносин у світі.

Це також мова великої літератури.

Англійською писали такі письменники, як Вільям Шекспір, Вальтер Скотт, Чарльз Диккенс і Бернард Шоу.

Я одержую велике задоволення, читаю їхні книги в оригіналі.

Я вивчаю англійську мову в школі.

Крім того, я читаю англійські книги, журнали і газети.
I watch video films and listen to songs in English.

I have a Walkman, so I often listen to songs or teaching cassettes when walking or in the underground.

I write new words on little cards and look them through every evening before going to sleep.

I hope that in the future I’ll speak English fluently!

Vocabulary:

important [ɪmˈpɔːtnt] — важливий
language [ˈlændɪdʒ] — мова
William Shakespeare [ˈwɪljəm ˈʃækспайr] — Вільям Шекспір
Walter Scott [ˈwɔltər ˈskɔt] — Вальтер Скотт

Questions:

1. What is your favourite subject?
2. Why is English your favourite subject?
3. What do you do to learn it well?
4. How do you learn new words?
5. Do you read books in English?

Our Teacher of English

Oksana Tarasivna Savchenko is our teacher of English.

She is young and energetic, and she has a good command of the English language.

Oksana Tarasivna does her best to make our English lessons interesting. During the lessons we learn grammar rules and do grammar exercises, discuss different topics, listen to cassette recordings of stories, conversations and songs. Sometimes we sing songs altogether.

Bernard Shaw [ˈbɜːrnərd ˈʃɔː] — Бернард Шоу
Charles Dickens [ˈtʃærlz ˈdɪkzn] — Чарлз Дікенс
pleasure [ˈplɛʒər] — задоволення
underground [ˌʌndəˈɡraʊnd] — метро

Our Teacher of English

Oksana Tarasivna Savchenko is our teacher of English.

She is young and energetic, and she has a good command of the English language.

Oksana Tarasivna does her best to make our English lessons interesting. During the lessons we learn grammar rules and do grammar exercises, discuss different topics, listen to cassette recordings of stories, conversations and songs. Sometimes we sing songs altogether.

 bernard shaw [ˈbɜːrnərd ˈʃɔː] — bernard shaw
charles dickens [ˈtʃærlz ˈdɪkzn] — charles dickens
pleasure [ˈplɛʒər] — pleasure
underground [ˌʌndəˈɡraʊnd] — underground

Our Teacher of English

Oksana Tarasivna Savchenko is our teacher of English.

She is young and energetic, and she has a good command of the English language.

Oksana Tarasivna does her best to make our English lessons interesting. During the lessons we learn grammar rules and do grammar exercises, discuss different topics, listen to cassette recordings of stories, conversations and songs. Sometimes we sing songs altogether.

 bernard shaw [ˈbɜːrnərd ˈʃɔː] — bernard shaw
charles dickens [ˈtʃærlz ˈdɪkzn] — charles dickens
pleasure [ˈplɛʒər] — pleasure
underground [ˌʌndəˈɡraʊnd] — underground

Our Teacher of English

Oksana Tarasivna Savchenko is our teacher of English.

She is young and energetic, and she has a good command of the English language.

Oksana Tarasivna does her best to make our English lessons interesting. During the lessons we learn grammar rules and do grammar exercises, discuss different topics, listen to cassette recordings of stories, conversations and songs. Sometimes we sing songs altogether.

 bernard shaw [ˈbɜːrnərd ˈʃɔː] — bernard shaw
charles dickens [ˈtʃærlz ˈdɪkzn] — charles dickens
pleasure [ˈplɛʒər] — pleasure
underground [ˌʌndəˈɡraʊnd] — underground

Our Teacher of English

Oksana Tarasivna Savchenko is our teacher of English.

She is young and energetic, and she has a good command of the English language.

Oksana Tarasivna does her best to make our English lessons interesting. During the lessons we learn grammar rules and do grammar exercises, discuss different topics, listen to cassette recordings of stories, conversations and songs. Sometimes we sing songs altogether.

 bernard shaw [ˈbɜːrnərd ˈʃɔː] — bernard shaw
charles dickens [ˈtʃærlz ˈdɪkzn] — charles dickens
pleasure [ˈplɛʒər] — pleasure
underground [ˌʌndəˈɡraʊnd] — underground

Our Teacher of English

Oksana Tarasivna Savchenko is our teacher of English.

She is young and energetic, and she has a good command of the English language.

Oksana Tarasivna does her best to make our English lessons interesting. During the lessons we learn grammar rules and do grammar exercises, discuss different topics, listen to cassette recordings of stories, conversations and songs. Sometimes we sing songs altogether.
When we watch video films, Oksana Tarasivna often pauses the video recorder and asks us to talk about what we have seen or predict what is going to happen in the next episode.

We also like to roleplay different situations.

Everybody takes part in the work because it’s interesting.

When we don’t know some words, Oksana Tarasivna helps us.

We aren’t afraid of making mistakes because she doesn’t criticize us for them.

I think we are very lucky to have her as our teacher of English.

**Vocabulary:**

*energetic* [enə'dʒetɪk] — енергійний

to *discuss* [dɪ'skʌs] — обговорювати

to *be afraid* [ə'freɪd] — боятися

mistake [mɪ'steɪk] — помилка

**Questions:**

1. What is your English teacher’s name?
2. What kind of man/woman is he/she?
3. Do you like him/her?
4. What do you do at the English lessons?

---

**My Attitude to the Profession of a Teacher**

The profession of a teacher is a very noble one.

A teacher is a very important person for every family, where the schoolchildren live.

I remember my first teacher very well.

Her name was Natalia Victorivna. She was a kind woman and paid much attention to us all.

---

**Моє ставлення до професії вчителя**

Професія викладача дуже шляхетна.

Викладач — важлива постать для кожної родини, де є школярі.

Я дуже добре пам’ятую мою першу вчительку.

Йї звали Наталя Вікторівна. Вона була доброю жінкою і приділяла усім нам багато уваги.
She taught us to read and write, told us many interesting things about everything and she instructed us how to work.

When we became fifth-formers we had one form-teacher and many other teachers in all school subjects.

My form-teacher’s name is Hanna Ivanivna.

She pays much attention to us and wants us to pass our examinations well.

Most of the teachers that taught me all these years are kind people and good professionals.

But most of all I respect Iryna Petrivna.

She taught English to us, and all the pupils liked that subject.

Some pupils in our form want to enter the Teacher Training University and to become teachers at school.

But I myself do not want to be a teacher because this profession is very difficult.

The profession of a teacher demands a great erudition and a great patience to children.

I believe, that people, who teach children, must have more time for self-education and must be paid well.

Vocabulary:

to solve [solv] — вирішувати

to pay attention [peɪ əˈtenʃn] — приділяти увагу

to instruct [ɪnˈstrʌkt] — пояснювати

to demand [drɪˈmænd] — вимагати

to pass examinations [pɑːs ɪɡˈzæmiˈneɪʃn] — складати іспити

to respect [rɪˈspekt] — поважати

Questions:

1. What is the profession of a teacher like?
2. Do you remember your first teacher?
3. What are the teachers in your school like?
4. What is your attitude to the profession of a teacher?
Academic Subjects

We take many different subjects at school.
We study the Humanities: History, the Ukrainian language and Ukrainian Literature, the Russian language and Russian Literature, too.
We learn foreign languages.
They are usually English, French or German.
We also take subjects describing our planet and the laws of nature.
Among them there are Physics, Biology, Chemistry and Geography.
Other important subjects are Computer studies and Mathematics.
Every school has laboratories and specialized rooms equipped with modern teaching materials, necessary devices and facilities.
Besides there are gyms for Physical training lessons.
Our schools provide us with every opportunity to get good education.

Vocabulary:

different [dɪfərənt] — різний
subject [ˈsʌbdʒɪkt] — предмет (навчальний)
opportunity [ˌɒpəˈtjuːnɪtɪ] — можливість
education [ɪdʒuˈkeɪʃn] — освіта

Questions:
1. How many subjects do you have at school?
2. What are they?
3. What do you do during different lessons?
4. What is your favourite subject?
5. What do our schools provide us with?
In School

At an English Lesson

I am a pupil of the eighth form.
I study at school 14 in Kharkiv.
The pupils of our school learn different languages: Russian, English, French and German.
I learn English.
I have my English three times a week.

Every Monday, Wednesday and Friday I take my English textbook, vocabulary and exercise-book and go to my English lesson.
The bell rings and the teacher and the pupils come into the classroom.
We sit down at our tables, open our textbooks and the lesson begins.
During the lesson we listen to the tape recorder, ask each other questions and speak out on what we have heard.
Sometimes it is a story, sometimes it is a dialogue or a conversation.
They are not very long but they are always very interesting.
We speak English a lot, but we also read texts from our textbook.

During the lesson we also write sentences on the blackboard, learn grammar rules and do exercises.
Twice a month we have our home reading lesson.
At this lesson we speak about what we have read and discuss interesting episodes from our book.
I never get bad marks in my English because I always prepare my homework well.
I like my English lessons very much and come to them with joy.

На уроці англійської мови

Я учень восьмого класу.
Я учуся в школі № 14 у Харкові.
У нашій школі учні вивчають різні мови: російську, англійську, французьку і німецьку.
Я вивчаю англійську мову.
Уроки англійської мови в мене три рази на тиждень.
Щопонеділка, щосереди і щоп’ятниці я беру підручник, словник, зошит і йду на урок англійської мови.
Дзвенить дзвоник, і вчитель та учні заходять у клас.
Ми сідаємо за парті, відкриваємо підручники, і урок починається.
Під час уроку ми слухаємо магнітофон, задаємо один одному питання й обговорюємо те, що почули.
Іноді це розповідь, іноді діалог чи бесіда.
Вони не дуже довгі, але завжди цікаві.
Ми багато розмовляємо англійською, але ми також читаємо тексти з підручника.
На уроці ми також пишемо пропозиції на дошці, учимо граматичні правила і робимо вправи.
Два рази на місяць у нас урок домашнього читання.
На цьому уроці ми розповідаємо про те, що прочитали, і обговорюємо цікаві епізоди з книги.
Я ніколи не одержую поганих оцінок з англійської, тому що завжди реельно готую домашні завдання.
Мені подобаються уроки англійської мови, я з радістю ходжу на них.
Questions:
1. How many languages do you study?
2. What foreign languages do you study at school?
3. When do you have your English lessons?
4. What do you do during your English lesson?
5. Do you like your lessons?

At the Physical Training Lesson
My favourite lesson is Physical Training.
Usually we have our physical training lessons either in the gymnasium or on the sports ground.
Our sports ground is situated behind the school.
On the sports ground there are a football field, a volleyball ground and a basketball ground.
Before the PT lessons we put on our sports uniform.
After we have changed our clothes, we go to the gymnasium and line up.

At the beginning of the lesson we usually do gymnastic exercises.
Then we pull up, jump, climb the rope.
On the sports ground we run.
Sometimes we throw balls.
We often play sports games at the PT lesson.
All the boys in our form like to play football.
But our girls prefer to play volleyball or basketball.

Vocabulary:
three times [θɜː tʌɪmz] — тричі
tape recorder ['teip ɪkˈrɛdə] — магнітофон
conversation [ˈkɒnvɜːsˈeɪʃn] — бесіда
rule [ruːl] — правило

На уроці фізкультури
Мій улюблений предмет — фізкультура.
Звичайно наші уроки фізкультури проходять або в гімнастичному залі, або на спортмаєданчику.
Наш спортмаєданчик розташований за школою.
На спортмаєданчик є футбольне поле, волейбольний і баскетбольний майданчики.
Перед уроком фізкультури ми одягаємо свою спортивну форму.
Після того, як ми переодяглися, ми йдемо в гімнастичний зал і шикуємось.
На початку уроку ми звичайно робимо гімнастичні вправи.
Потім ми підтягуємося, стрибаємо, лазимо по канату.
На спортмаєданчику ми бігаємо.
Іноді ми кидаємо м’ячі.
Часто на уроках фізкультури ми граємо в спортивні ігри.
Усі хлопчики нашого класу люблять грати у футбол.
А наші дівчатка воліють грати у волейбол і баскетбол.
In winter at the PT lessons we ski.

We ski on the sports ground or in the park.

Sometimes, if the weather is cold, we go to skate at the skating rink.

The boys play hockey on the sports ground too.

Many boys and girls of our form attend various sports sections.

I also attend a sports section in swimming.

Three times a week I go to the swimming-pool.

Some of my friends go in for tennis, track-and-field athletics, boxing and other sports.

**Vocabulary:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>gymnasium</strong></td>
<td>гімнастичний зал</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to line up</strong></td>
<td>будуватися</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to pull up</strong></td>
<td>підтягуватися</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>swimming-pool</strong></td>
<td>плавальний басейн</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions:**

1. Where do you usually have your physical training lessons?
2. Where is your sports ground situated?
3. What do you do at the physical training lessons?
4. What sports do you go in for?
5. Do you like physical training lessons?

**Education in Ukraine**

The system of secondary education in Ukraine includes primary forms and junior and senior secondary forms.

Children usually go to school at the age of 6 or 7.

There are some pre-school institutions, like nursery schools or kindergartens, but they are not obligatory.
Primary forms comprise 1 to 4 forms.

Junior secondary forms comprise 5 to 9 forms.

After the 9th form children can enter technical schools of different types.

Those who want to enter higher educational institutions should complete 10—11 forms.

Students can also enter higher educational institutions after graduating from specialized colleges or lyceums.

They prepare students in different fields, whether the humanities or the sciences.

Some of them are organized under the authorities of higher educational establishments.

The system of higher education is presented by universities, polytechnic institutes or specialized institutes.

Universities offer a five-year course of study and usually have from six to twelve departments.

Institutes train specialists for industry, agriculture and economy.

Most of them have been conferred the status of Academy or University recently.

Students are also offered post-graduate education and scientific research work.

Nowadays due to the state of our national economy not many young people are engaged in the research work.

But still in some fields of science there are outstanding discoveries and research papers.

Початкові класи — з першого по четвертий.

Середні класи — з п’ятого по дев’ятий.

Після дев’ятої класу учні можуть вступати до різних технікумів.

Ті, хто хочуть вступати до вищих навчальних закладів, повинні закінчити десятий і одинадцятий класи.

Студенти також можуть вступати до вищих навчальних закладів після спеціалізованих коледжів чи ліцеїв.

Вони готують студентів у різних галузях як гуманітарних, так і природних наук.

Деякі з коледжів організуються при вищих навчальних закладах.

Система вищої освіти представлена університетами, політехнічними інститутами, спеціалізованими інститутами.

В університетах курс навчання п’ять років, там зазвичай від шести до дванадцяти факультетів.

Інститути готують фахівців для промисловості, сільського господарства й економіки.

Більшість з них був недавно наданий статус академії чи університету.

Студенти можуть також вступити до аспірантури, займатися науково-дослідною роботою.

У наші дні через стан нашої національної економіки небагато молодих людей займаються науковою працею.

Але все-таки в деяких галузях науки відбуваються видатні наукові відкриття і є наукові праці.
Some universities and institutes have refresher courses.  
Recently a great number of private educational establishments have appeared.  
Some institutions have fee-paying groups or departments.  
The students may get education there at the same high level as in the state institutions.

Vocabulary:

- **system** [sɪstəm] — система  
- **to include** [ɪnˈkljuːd] — включати  
- **technical school** [ˈteknɪkəl skuːl] — технікум

- **the humanities** [hjuːˈmænɪtɪz] — гуманітарні науки  
- **the sciences** [ˈsaɪənsɪz] — природознавчі науки

Questions:

1. What does the system of secondary education in Ukraine include?  
2. At what age do children go to school?  
3. What is the system of higher education presented by?  
4. Whom do the institutes train?  
5. Do we have private educational establishments in Ukraine?
Education in Great Britain

In Great Britain children begin to go to school at the age of five.
First they study at infant schools.

In these schools they learn to draw with coloured pencils and paints.
They also make figures out of plasticine and work with paper and glue.
They play much because they are very young.
Later they begin to learn letters and read, write and count.

At the age of seven English schoolchildren go to junior schools.
They do many subjects: English and Maths, History and Music, Natural History and Drawing, Handicrafts, French and Latin.
They do not go to school as early as we do, but they stay there longer.

The first lesson usually starts at 9 o'clock.
There are 3 lessons with short breaks of 10 minutes between them and then an hour break for lunch.
After lunch they have two more lessons which are over by half past three.

If you have a look at an English pupil's school record, you will see that the marks in it differ from the marks we have.

Osvita u Velykobritaniї

У Великобританії діти йдуть до школи у віці п'яти років.
Спочатку вони навчаються в школах для дітей 5—7 років.
У таких школах учаються малювати кольоровими олівцями і фарбами.
Діти ліплять із пластиліну і працюють з папером і клеєм.

Діти багато грають, тому що вони дуже маленькі.
Пізніше вони починають вивчати алфавіт, вчаться писати, читати і рахувати.
У віці семи років англійські школярі йдуть у початкову школу.
Вони вивчають багато предметів: англійську мову і математику, історію і музику, краєзнавство і малювання, рукоділля, французьку мову і латину.
Вони не ходять до школи так рано, як ми, але вони залишаються там довше.
Перший урок звичайно починається о 9 годині.
У них три уроки з короткими перервами по 10 хвилин між ними, і потім годинна перерва на обід.
Після обіду в них ще два уроки, які закінчуються о пів на четверту.
Якщо подивитися в табель англійського школяра, то можна побачити, що оцінки в ньому відрізняються від наших.
Our schoolchildren get marks from 1 to 12.

At English school there are marks from 1 up to 10 and at some schools from 1 up to 100.

Junior school ends at the age of 11 when pupils take the Eleven Plus examination and then secondary school begins.

At the age of 16 schoolchildren take their exams.

Only 45 per cent continue with full-time education after 16.

The rest go to work or join employment training schemes.

Our schoolchildren get marks from 1 to 12.

В англійській школі оцінки видаляються від «1» до «10», а в деяких школах і до «100».

Початкова школа закінчується у віці одинадцяти років, коли учні складають іспит «11+», і потім починається середня школа.

А в шістнадцять років школярі складають випускні іспити.

Лише 45% продовжує освіту після 16 років.

Інші йдуть працювати чи потрапляють у тренувальні програми працевлаштування.

**Vocabulary:**

- glue [gluː] — клей
- junior school [ˈdʒuːnər skjuːl] — початкова школа
- examination [ɪɡˈzæmiˈneɪʃn] — іспит

- to continue [kənˈtɪnjuː] — продовжувати
- employment [ɪmˈpɔɪlmənt] — працевлаштування

**Questions:**

1. When do children begin to go to school in Britain?
2. What schools do they study first?
3. When do children begin to go to junior schools?
4. What subjects do they study?
5. How many students continue with full-time education after 16?

**Education in the USA**

The American system of school education differs from the systems in other countries.

There are state public schools, private elementary schools and private secondary schools.

Public schools are free and private schools are feepaying.

Each state has its own system of public schools.

**Освіта в США**

Американська система освіти відрізняється від інших країн.

Існують державні загальноосвітні школи, приватні початкові і приватні загальноосвітні школи.

Державні школи безкоштовні, а приватні школи — платні.

У кожного штату своя система державних шкіл.
Elementary education begins at the age of six or seven, when a child goes to the first grade (form).

At the age of sixteen schoolchildren leave the elementary school and may continue their education at one of the secondary schools or high schools, as they call them.

The programme of studies in the elementary school includes English, Arithmetic, Geography, History of the USA, Natural Sciences and, besides, Physical Training, Singing, Drawing, Wood or Metal Work, etc.

Sometimes they learn a foreign language and general history.

Beside giving general education some high schools teach subjects useful to those who hope to find jobs in industry and agriculture or who want to enter colleges or universities.

After graduating from secondary schools a growing number of Americans go on to higher education. The students do not take the same courses.

During the first two years they follow a basic programme.

It means that every student must select at least one course from each of the basic fields of study: English, Natural Sciences, Modern Languages, History or Physical Training.

After the first two years every student can select subjects according to his professional interest.

The National Government gives no direct financial aid to the institutions of higher education.

Students must pay a tuition fee.
This creates a financial hardship for some people.
Many students have to work to pay their expenses.
The Americans place a high value on education.
That’s why Kennedy said, “Our progress as a nation can be no swifter than our progress in education”.

Questions:
The school system of Canada is very much like the one in the USA, but there are certain differences.
Education in Canada is general and compulsory for children from 6 to 16 years old, and in some provinces — to 14.

It is within the competence of the local authorities, and therefore it may differ from province to province.
For example, Newfoundland has an 11-grade system.
Some other provinces have 12-grade systems, and Ontario has even a 13-grade system.
Grades 1—6 are usually elementary schools, and grades 7—12 are secondary schools.

Vocabulary:

to differ [ˈdɪfə] — відрізнятися
free [frI:] — безкоштовний
fee paying [ˈfiː ˈpeɪɪŋ] — платний

basic program [ˈbeɪsɪk ˈprəʊɡræm] — базова програма
to create [ˈkrɪeɪt] — створювати

Questions:
1. Does the American system of school education differ from the systems in other countries?
2. What kinds of schools are there in the USA?
3. Is it true that each state has its own system of public schools?
In some provinces there is a kindergarten year before the first grade.
Elementary education is general and basic, but in the junior high school years the students can select some courses themselves.
Most secondary schools provide programmes for all types of students.
Some of them prepare students for continuing their studies at the university.
Vocational schools are separate institutions for those who will not continue their education after secondary schools.
There also exist some commercial high schools.
Some provinces have private kindergartens and nursery schools for children of pre-elementary age.
There also exist Roman Catholic schools and private schools in some provinces.
In most provinces private schools receive some form of public support.
Admission to the university in Canada is after high school with specific courses.
Getting a degree in law, medicine, dentistry or engineering usually takes 3—4 years of studying.
University tuition fees vary among different provinces.
All provinces also have public non-university institutions.
They are regional colleges, institutes of technology, institutes of applied arts, colleges of agricultural technology and others.
Criteria for admission to these institutions are less strict.
Vocabulary:

- **local authorities** [ləʊkəl ɔːˈθɔrətiz] — місцева влада
- **Ontario** [ɒnˈteəriəʊ] — Онтаріо
- **Roman Catholic school** [rəʊmən ˈkæθəlik ˈsku:l] — римсько-католицька школа
- **commercial high school** [kəˈməːʃəl ˈhai skuːl] — комерційна школа
- **difference** [ˈdɪfərəns] — різниця
- **to receive** [rɪˈsɪv] — отримувати
- **support** [səˈpɔːt] — підтримка

Questions:

1. What do you know about the school system of Canada?
2. Is education in Canada general and compulsory for children?
3. Can the students select some courses in the junior high school years?
4. What does the term “vocational schools” mean?
5. What kind of schools are there in Canada?

Education in Australia

There exists a centralized national system of education in Australia.

The top of this system is the Federal Ministry of Education.

But there are still many differences in the structure and the curricula of schools in different states.

There exist two types of schools in the country: state schools and private schools.

Tuition in state schools is free of charge.

Private schools charge rather high fees.

80 % of Australian children go to state schools, and only 20 % attend fee-paying schools.

School education is obligatory for all children from 6 to 15 years.

At present the school education scheme is “6+4+2” or “7+3+2”.

Most children begin primary schools at the age of about five.

Primary schools include from 1 to 6 or 7 grades.

Освіта в Австралії

В Австралії існує централізована національна система освіти.

На чолі цієї системи знаходиться федеральне міністерство освіти.

Але все-таки існує багато розходжень у структурі і програмах шкіл різних штатів.

У країні є два типи шкіл: державні і приватні.

Навчання в державних школах безкоштовне.

Плата за навчання в приватних школах досить висока.

80 % австралійських дітей відвідують державні школи, і тільки 20 % ходять у платні школи.

Шкільна освіта є обов'язковою для дітей від 6 до 15 років.

Зарах схема шкільного навчання «6+4+2» чи «7+3+2».

Більшість дітей приходять у початкову школу в 5 років.

Початкова школа — це з 1 по 6 чи 7 клас.
After the primary school children pass to the secondary school without examinations.

Junior high schools comprise 4 or 3-year courses.

After these courses students complete two year senior high school.

After senior classes of secondary schools students may enter any higher educational institution in the country.

There is a tendency of cancelling final examinations in both junior and senior secondary schools.

In this case more children, irrespective of their abilities, may receive secondary education.

University admission is only after the senior secondary schools.

Tuition fees differ from one state to another.

Questions:

1. What system of education do they have in Australia?
2. How many types of schools are there in the country?
3. How high is the fee for education in private schools?
4. When do most children begin to study?
5. Do the schoolchildren pass exams to secondary school?
During all the periods of human history education ranked high among people. Human progress mostly depended upon well-educated people. Self-education is very important for the development of human’s talents. Only through self-education a person can become a harmonically developed personality. A person becomes a highly qualified specialist after getting some special education. And professionalism can be reached only through it. Even highly qualified specialists from time to time attend refresher courses to refresh their knowledge. We get our knowledge of this world and life through education. Many famous discoveries would have been impossible if people were not interested in learning something. Education develops different sides of human personality, reveals his abilities. Besides, it helps a person to understand himself, to choose the right way in this world. The civilized state differs from others in the fact that it pays much attention to the educational policy. John Kennedy said: “Our progress as a nation can be no swifter than our progress in education”. But it doesn’t concern only one particular nation. We know that science and art belong to the whole world. Before them the barriers of nationality disappear. So education brings people closer to each other, helps them to understand each other better.

Протягом всієї історії людства освіта високо цінувалася. Прогрес в основному залежав від високоосвічених людей. Самоосвіта також дуже важлива для розвитку талантів людини. Тільки за допомогою самоосвіти людина може стати гармонійно розвинутою особистістю. Людина стає висококваліфікованим фахівцем після одержання фахової освіти. I професіоналізм може бути досягнутий тільки з його допомогою. Навіть висококваліфіковані фахівці час від часу обновляють свої знання на курсах підвищення кваліфікації. За допомогою освіти ми одержуємо знання про цей світ і життя. Багато видатних відкриттів були б неможливі, якби люди не були зацікавлені у вивченні чого-небудь. Освіта розвиває різні боки людської особистості, розкриває її здібності. Крім того, вона допомагає людині зrozуміти себе, вибрати правильну дорогу в житті. Цивілізована держава відрізняється від інших тим, що приділяє багато уваги освіті. Джон Кеннеді сказав: «Наш прогрес як нації цілком залежить від нашого прогресу в освіті». Але це стосується не тільки однієї окремої нації. Ми знаємо, що наука і мистецтво належать усьому світу. Перед ними зникають національні бар’єри. Таким чином, освіта зближує людей, допомагає їм краще зрозуміти одне одного.
Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>important</td>
<td>важливий</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valuable</td>
<td>цінний</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>self-education</td>
<td>самоосвіта</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualified</td>
<td>кваліфікований</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personality</td>
<td>особа</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions:

1. Is it important to be a well-educated person?
2. What role does self-education play in our life?
3. When does a person become a highly qualified specialist?
4. What does education develop?
5. Why is good education necessary nowadays?

Foreign Languages in Our Life

Learning a foreign language is not an easy thing. It is a long and slow process that takes a lot of time and efforts. Nowadays it is especially important to know foreign languages. Some people learn languages because they need them for their work, others travel abroad, for the third studying languages is a hobby.

Everyone, who knows foreign languages can speak to people from other countries, read foreign writers in the original, which makes your outlook wider.

It is not surprising that many intellectuals and well-educated people are polyglots.

I study English. Nowadays English has become the world’s most important language in politics, science, trade and cultural relations.

Over 300 million people speak it as a mother tongue.
The native speakers of English live in Great Britain, the United States of America, Australia and New Zealand.

English is one of the official languages in the Irish Republic, Canada, the South Africa Republic.

English is one of the official languages of the United Nations Organization and other political organizations.

Half of the world’s scientific literature is in English.

It is the language of computer technology.

To know English today is absolutely necessary for every educated person, for every good specialist.

The English language is a wonderful language.

It is the language of the great literature.

It is the language of William Shakespeare, Jonathan Swift, Walter Scott, Charles Dickens.

The great German poet Goethe once said, “He, who knows no foreign language, does not know his own one”.

That is why in order to understand oneself and environment one has to study foreign languages.

**Vocabulary:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>effort [efət]</td>
<td>зусилля</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outlook [ˈautlʊk]</td>
<td>кругозір</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polyglot [ˈpɒlɪɡlɒt]</td>
<td>поліглот</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trade [tred]</td>
<td>торгівля</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother tongue [ˈmʌðər tʌŋ]</td>
<td>рідна мова</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions:**

1. Is learning a foreign language an easy thing?
2. Why do people need foreign languages?
3. What advantages do foreign languages give to people?
4. What language do you study?
5. What do you know about English?
Learning Foreign Languages

During a lot of centuries people learn foreign languages.

People in Europe started to learn languages in the 11th century.

It is known that Yaroslav the Wise knew a lot of foreign languages.

But at those times learning foreign languages was a privilege of rich people.

Today millions of people all over the world learn foreign languages.

They play a great part in our life.

People, who know foreign languages, are necessary for the development of the techniques, economy and arts in the modern society.

For example, a good engineer or a qualified worker should be able to read some technical papers for the imported equipment.

Learning foreign languages is especially important in our country.

People want to learn foreign languages to write to their penfriends, or to communicate with them personally.

People also want to read the works of famous writers in the original, newspapers and magazines.

During the classes of foreign languages one can train his memory and thinking.

A foreign language helps to know the native language better.

A person who learns a foreign language, at the same time gets acquainted with the culture of the country, its literature, history and geography.

Вивчення іноземних мов

Протягом багатьох століть люди вивчають іноземні мови.

Люди в Європі почали вивчати іноземні мови в 11 столітті.

Відомо, що Ярослав Мудрий знат багато іноземних мов.

Але в ті часи вивчення іноземних мов було привілеєм багатих людей.

Сьогодні мільйони людей в усьому світі вивчають іноземні мови.

Вони відіграють важливу роль у нашому житті.

Люди, що знають іноземні мови, потрібні для розвитку техніки, економіки і мистецтв у сучасному суспільстві.

Наприклад, гарний інженер чи кваліфікований робітник повинен уміти прочитати технічні інструкції до імпортного устаткування.

Вивчення іноземних мов особливо важливе в нашій країні.

Люди хочуть вивчати іноземні мови, щоб писати своїм друзям чи спілкуватися з ними особисто.

Люди також хочуть читати твори відомих письменників в оригіналі, газети і журнали.

Під час уроків іноземної мови можна тренувати свою пам’ять і мислення.

Іноземна мова допомагає краще знати свою мову.

Людина, що вивчає іноземну мову, у той же час знайомиться з культурою країни, її літературою, історією і географією.
Vocabulary:

 privilege [prɪvɪldʒ] — привілей
techniques [tekˈnɪks] — техніка
modern society [ˈmɒdən səˈsæsiəti] — сучасне суспільство

original [ˈɔrɪdʒɪnəl] — оригінал
culture [ˈkʌltʃə] — культура
to get acquainted [əkˈweɪntɪd] — знайомитись

Questions:

1. When did people begin to learn foreign languages?
2. How many languages did Yaroslav the Wise know?
3. Do languages play a great part in your life?
4. Is it especially important in our country to learn languages? Why?
5. What advantages does a person knowing foreign languages have?

Why I Learn the English Language

I began to study English in the fifth form and by now I have been learning this language for 7 years.

I like English; I think any foreign language helps to understand your own language.

The English language is one of the most important languages in the modern world; more than one billion people can speak or understand this language.

This language is the official language in such countries as the United States of America, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, the South-African Republic, India and many African countries.

English is one of the five official languages of the United Nations Organization.

English is the language of the great English literature.

It is the language of Shakespeare, Byron and Charles Dickens.

From the early childhood we enjoy the books by English writers — who does not know Winnie-the Pooh, Sherlock Holmes or Robinson Crusoe!

Чому я вивчаю англійську мову

Я почав вивчати англійську мову в п’ятому класі, і до цього часу я вивчаю цю мову протягом 7 років.

Я люблю англійську мову і думаю, що будь-яка іноземна мова допомагає зрозуміти свою власну мову.

Англійська мова — одна з найбільш важливих мов у сучасному світі; понад один більйон людей можуть говорити цією мовою чи розуміти її.

Це офіційна мова таких країн, як Сполучені Штати Америки, Канада, Австралія, Нова Зеландія, Південно-Африканська Республіка, Індія і багатьох африканських країн.

Англійська мова — одна з п’яти офіційних мов Організації Об’єднаних Націй.

Англійська мова — мова великої англійської літератури.

Це мова Шекспіра, Байрона і Чарлза Дікенса.

З раннього дитинства ми насолоджуюмося книгами англійських письменників — хто не знає Вінні-Пуха, Шерлока Холмса і Робінзона Крузо!
But the English language is also the language of science — most of scientific magazines in the world are published in English. It is impossible to be a good scientist without knowing this language.

That is why I pay much attention to English and I hope that in the future I shall know this language well.

**Vocabulary:**

- official language [əˈfɪʃl ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ] — офіційна мова
- United Nations Organization [juˈnɑːtɪd ˈneɪʃnz ˈɔːɡənəɹəzɪʃn] — Організація Об'єднаних Націй
- Shakespeare [ˈʃɛɪkspəɹ] — Шекспір
- Byron [ˈbaɪrən] — Байрон
- Charles Dickens [tʃɑːrlz ˈdɪkənz] — Чарльз Диккенс
- Winnie-the-Pooh [ˈwɪnɪ də pəʊ] — Вінні-Пух

**Questions:**

1. When did you begin to study English?
2. Do you like this language?
3. Why is it important to know English?
4. What English books have you read in original or in translation?
5. Why must every specialist know English?
● **Music in Our Life**

People cannot live without music. They can listen to music everywhere even in the forest, when they walk and hear birds singing.

Music can be classical and modern. Classical music is performed by symphonic orchestras in the great halls.

There are a lot of famous composers whose music is played nowadays.

Classical music is serious and requires good understanding or it may seem to be boring and dull.

Most people prefer modern music.

Modern music is performed by TV and radio.

Modern music has different kinds: pop, rock, disco, rap, techno and others.

Young people like techno and disco.

Older people are fond of jazz, rock and pop.

There are a lot of singers or music bands who perform this or that kind of music.

Everybody knows the founders of rock music.

They are the “Beatles” and Elvis Presley.

Now there are a lot of discs and records of different performers.

The last achievement in music production is a clip.

Musical clips are short films accompanied by the melody.

● **Музыка в нашем житті**

Люди не можуть жити без музики. Вони слухають музику скрізь, навіть у лісі, коли гуляють і прислухаються до співу птахів.

Музика буває класичною і сучасною.

Класична музика виконується у великих залах симфонічними оркестрами.

Є багато знаменитих композиторів, чия музика виконується в наші дні.

Класична музика серйозна і вимагає гарного розуміння, інакше вона може видатися нудною і нецікавою.

Більшість людей віддає перевагу сучасній музіці.

Сучасна музика виконується по телебаченню і радіо.

Вона буває різною: поп, рок, диско, реп, техно й ін.

Молодим людям подобається техно- і диско-музика.

Люди старші за віком люблять джаз, рок і поп.

Є багато співаків і груп, що виконують ту чи іншу музику.

Усі знають засновників рок-музики.

Це «Бітлз» і Елвіс Преслі.

Заращ є безліч платівок і записів різних виконавців.

Останнім досягненням музичної індустрії є кліп.

Музичні кліпи — це короткі фільми, супроводжувані мелодією.
It may be a short story what the song is about or simply a great number of different pictures.

People like to watch clips because it’s not only listening to music but also watching interesting things.

I’m fond of music and like to listen to it for it helps me to have good relaxation.

**Vocabulary:**

- **classical music** [ˈklæsɪkəl ˈmjuːzɪk] — классична музика
- **symphonic** [sɪmˈfɒnɪk] — симфонічний
- **dull** [dʌl] — нудний
- **record** [ˈrekɔːd] — пластинка
- **achievement** [əˈtʃiːvmənt] — досягнення

**Questions:**

1. Are you fond of music?
2. What kind of music do you prefer?
3. What role does music play in your life?
4. Do you play any musical instruments?
5. What kinds of modern music do you know?

**At the Theatre**

There are not many theatres in my town, but they are all very popular with the public.

I am a theatre lover, too.

As for me, I prefer drama to all other theatres, but I also like opera and musical comedy.

I’ll never forget my first visit to the Opera and Ballet Theatre.

My friend and I wanted to see the famous ballet “Swan Lake” by Tchaikovskyi.

We bought the tickets in advance and came to the theatre half an hour before the show.

At 7 sharp the performance began.
From the very first minute I was deeply impressed by everything I saw on the stage. The costumes were fine. The dancing and music were thrilling. The ballet seemed to me a fairy-tale. I had never seen anything more wonderful. My friend also enjoyed every minute of it. When the curtain fell at the end of the performance, there came a storm of applause. It seemed that it would never end. The dancers received call after call. They were presented with large bouquets of flowers. We also applauded enthusiastically. The performance was a great success.

**Vocabulary:**

*swan* [swən] — лебідь  
*enthusiastically* [ɪnθəʊˈzuːsɪstɪkəli] — із захватом  
*success* [səˈkses] — успіх

*to impress* [ɪmˈpres] — вражати, уражасти  
*to enjoy* [ɪndʒɔɪ] — отримувати задоволення, насолоджуватися

**Questions:**

1. What role does the theatre play in our life?  
2. Are you fond of ballet?  
3. Where do you prefer to sit at the theatre?  
4. What is your favourite play (opera, ballet)?  
5. Which theatre do you prefer?

**At the Cinema**

I like to go to the cinema. When I have free time, I always go to see a new film.
When I want to go to the cinema I usually look in the programme what films are on.
Then I phone my friend and we discuss what films to see.

We prefer feature films, but also enjoy cartoons and popular science films.

To see a good love story, musical or detective film is a very pleasant way of spending free time.

There are many talented actors and actresses in this country.

My favourite actor is Oleg Yankovskiy.

My favourite actress is Natalia Gundareva.

They played the leading parts in many films and I have always enjoyed their superb acting.

The last film I saw was the screen version of the novel "Gone with the Wind" by Margaret Mitchell.

It’s an old film but it still enjoys great popularity.

There are many famous American actors in it with Vivien Leigh and Clark Gable starring.

I was deeply impressed by their acting and the film itself.

It hasn’t lost its visual splendour with the passage of time.

Вocabulary:

feature films [ˈfɪ:tʃər ˈfɪlmz] — художні фільми
cartoon [ˈkɑːtən] — мультфільм
science films [ˈsaɪəns ˈfɪlmz] — науково-популярні фільми
screen version [ˈskrɪ:n ˈvɜːʒn] — екранізація

Margaret Mitchell [mɑːɡərɪt ˈmitʃəl] — Маргарет Мітчел
Vivien Leigh [vɪvɪən ˈlɪː] — Вів’єн Лі
Clark Gable [klɑːk ˈgeɪbl] — Кларк Гейбл
Questions:
1. Do you prefer to go to the cinema or to the theatre?
2. What film have you seen lately?
3. What kinds of films do you know?
4. What is your favourite film?
5. Who is your favourite actor/actress?

● Cinema in Our Life
The movies are truly an art of our time.

It is the greatest aesthetic and educational force in the world today.
The invention of the photography in 1828 played a very important role in the development of the cinema.
1895 became the year when the cinema was born.
After the brothers Lumier had invented the cinematography, the cinema widely spread all over the world.
The first movie theatres appeared in 1904.
And in 1907 the literature works started to be widely used for the movie scripts.
Now different movie versions of novels and stories of famous writers are still very popular.
The movies are a powerful force in contemporary life.
Cinema is also used for educational purposes.
Video classes are useful when studying geography, foreign languages and many other subjects.
They are also the means of getting acquainted with the world.
With the help of documentary and science films one can get much information about the world around.

● Кіно в нашому житті
Кіно дійсно є мистецтвом нашого часу.
Сьогодні це найбільша естетична й освітня сила у світі.
Відкриття фотографії в 1828 році відіграло величезну роль у розвитку кіно.
1895-й став роком, коли з’явилось кіно.
Після винаходу кінематографа братами Люм’єр кіно значно поширилося в усьому світі.
Перші кінотеатри з’явилися в 1904 році.
А в 1907 році для написання сценаріїв стали використовувати літературні твори.
Дотепер різні телевізійні версії романів і розповідей відомих письменників дуже популярні.
Кіно — впливова сила в сучасному житті.
Вони також використовується з освітньою метою.
Відеокурси корисні при вивченні географії, іноземних мов і багатьох інших предметів.
За допомогою їх можна також краще пізнати навколишній світ.
За допомогою документальних і наукових фільмів можна одержати багато інформації про навколишній світ.
The news on TV helps to know what happens in the world each day.

It also helps to attract the attention of people to different important problems, such as hunger, earthquakes, water pollution and so on.

The cinema is also the means of entertainment.

After a working day one can relax watching some good movie.

Nowadays people can’t just imagine their life without the art of cinema.

Vocabulary:

truly ['truːli] — дійсно, справді
movies ['muːvɪz] — кіно
aesthetic ['æstθətɪk] — естетичний
force [fɔːs] — сила
invent [ɪn'vent] — винаходити
purpose [pər'pɔs] — мета

Questions:

1. What kinds of films do you know?
2. Do you like foreign films dubbed in mother tongue?
3. What is the difference between a play and a film?
4. Who invented the cinematography and when?
5. When did the first movie theatres appear?

Cinema

Cinema was invented by two brothers Lumier.

They made the first film, which lasted only one minute.

Since then cinema has become one of the most popular arts in the world.

There are cinema theatres everywhere.

Films may be feature or documentary, sound and silent.

Feature films are, as a rule, sound and colour.
Animated cartoons are also very popular not only with children but with the adults.

Nowadays we can see different kinds of films.

There are ones, which are dedicated to the life of the people, to the present and to the history of our country.

There are also comedies, thrillers, dramas and detective films.

People’s opinions differ in the question what kinds of films must be produced.

Some people, especially young, think that the cinema should be a place where one may amuse oneself after a working day.

Others say that films must be various, serious and funny.

I think that cinema is not so popular today as at the beginning of the century, because now each family has a TV set or even a video recorder, and people do not want to go anywhere if they can sit in comfortable armchairs and watch what they want.

Video films attract many young people now.

Vocabulary:

Lumyer [luːˈmje] — Люм’єр

to invent [ɪnˈvent] — винаходити

animated cartoons [ənɪˈmeɪtɪd ˈkaːtuːnz] — мультфільми

as a rule [rəːl] — як правило

to amuse [əˈmjuːz] — розважати

to attract [əˈtrækt] — приваблювати

Questions:

1. Who invented cinema?
2. What can you say about the first film?
3. What kinds of films can you watch on TV?
4. What are animated cartoons? Do you like them?
5. What films do you like to see most of all?
6. Is cinema popular today? Why?
Cinema in Ukraine

The first newsreels were made and shown in 1896, by A. Fedetsky, artist and photographer from Kharkiv.

Their regular production began in 1907.

An animated cartoon studio was set up in Kharkiv in 1927 and later transferred to Kyiv.

During World War II Ukrainian filmmakers made trips to the front.

They showed war films about the country's heroic defence.

There are four state film studios in Ukraine.

Bohdan Stupka, Ada Rohovtseva, Olha Sumska — these and many other names are very popular with movie and theatre-goers.

They have successfully appeared in domestic and foreign productions.

O. Dovzhenko is one of the founders of Ukrainian cinematography.

O. Dovzhenko became an important figure in national and world cinematography.

His motion pictures “Arsenal”, “Earth” were named among the best films of all times.

He worked for the Odesa and Kyiv studios.

Since 1946 he stayed to work at the Mosfilm Studio.

Apart from a number of feature films he made documentaries.

Besides he wrote script-like stories and plays.

Кіно в Україні

Перші кіножурналы були зроблені і показані в 1896-му А. Федетським, художником і фотографом з Харкова.

Йх постійне виробництво розпочалося в 1907 році.

Студія мультиплікаційних фільмів з'явилася в Харкові в 1927-му і пізніше була перенесена до Києва.

Під час II світової війни українські режисери здійснювали поїздки на фронт.

Вони показували військові фільми про героїчний захист країни.

В Україні є 4 державні кіностудії.

Богдан Ступка, Ада Роговцева, Ольга Сумська — ці і багато інших імен дуже популярні серед глядачів театру і кіно.

Вони успішно знімалися у фільмах вітчизняного й іноземного виробництва.

О. Довженко є одним із засновників українського кінематографа.

Він став важливою фігурую в національному і світовому кінематографі.

Його художні фільми «Арсенал» і «Земля» були названі серед кращих фільмів усіх часів.

О. Довженко працював на Одеській і Київській студіях.

З 1946 року він залишився працювати на студії Мосфільм.

Крім численних художніх фільмів він знімав і документальні.

Він також писав кіносценарії і п'єси.
The Kyiv Studio bears his name nowadays.

The Dovzhenko prize was instituted in 1983.

**Vocabulary:**

- **newsreel** ['nju:zri:l] — кіножурнал
- **cinematography** ['sɪnəməˈtɒɡrəfɪ] — кінематограф
- **motion pictures** ['məʊʃn ˈpɪktʃəz] — кінокартина
- **defence** [dɪˈfens] — оборона

**Questions:**

1. Who made the first newsreels in Ukraine? When?
2. Who became an important figure in cinematography?
3. What did the filmmakers show during the World War II?
4. Can you name the popular Ukrainian actors?
5. Tell about O. Dovzhenko and his work.
6. What is your favourite Ukrainian film?

**At the Museum**

The town I live in is not very large and there are no big galleries and museums in it.

But we have a good Natural History Museum in our town.

Last week I was on an excursion there.

First we listened to a lecture on the history of our region which was very interesting.

Then a guide showed us the exposition of the museum.

We walked through its halls looking at different stands with exhibits.

There were ancient vases and coins, dishes and bowls, tools and arms.

The guide told us about the origin and the age of the exhibits and answered our questions.
The girls asked questions about national costumes and dishes and the boys were interested in arms.
The next hall was even more interesting. There we saw stuffed animals and birds. It was a small zoo of the region nature.

There was also an aquarium full of different fish, tortoises and shells. The collection of minerals was interesting, too.

I have learned very much from my visit to the museum.

Vocabulary:

exhibit [ɪɡˈzɪbɪt] — експонат
guide [ɡaɪd] — гід, екскурсовод
coin [kɔɪn] — монета
arm [ɑːm] — зброя
ancient [ˈeɪntʃənt] — стародавній
aquarium [ˈeɪkwəriəm] — акваріум

Questions:

1. Do you often go to the museums?
2. Do you generally go there alone or do you take a guide?
3. What museums are there in your city/town?
4. How many museums are there in your city/town?
5. What kind of museums are you most interested in?
6. Describe your impressions of the excursion.

Kharkiv is a big city and there are a lot of museums in it.

To begin with, there is the History Museum in the centre of the city.

The museum shows the history of the Kharkiv Region since earliest times till nowadays; it has rich collections of weapons, coins, historical documents and pictures.

Not far from the Opera House there is another museum — the Museum of Fine Arts.

I like to visit this museum very much.
The Museum building is not very large but it contains a rich collection of paintings by Russian, Ukrainian and West European painters.

There are pictures by Russian painters Brulov, Kramskoy, Shishkin and Repin.

By the way, Repin was born in Chuguyiv not far from Kharkiv; there is a very good museum of Repin in Chuguyiv.

In the Kharkiv Picture Gallery there are several paintings by Repin.

My favourite Repin's picture is “Zaporozhtsi”; it shows Zaporizhian Cossacks writing a letter to a Turkish sultan.

I believe Repin's picture “Zaporozhtsi” reflects the soul of the Ukrainian people, shows the best national characteristics.

My favourite Ukrainian painter is Semiradsky.

Semiradsky is also our fellow-countryman; he was born in 1843 in the village of Petchenegi.

Semiradsky is a representative of the academic painting, and he was much criticised because he painted historical scenes but the real life.

But I like his pictures because they are painted with a great skill.

The Museum also contains sculptures by Russian and Ukrainian sculptors, pictures by Italian Renaissance painters and paintings by French, Flemish and German artists.

Another museum is the Museum of the Natural History which is situated in the centre of the city, too.

This Museum is famous for its zoological collection; it shows dinosaur fossils, fossil footprints and eggs, collections of butterflies and stuffed animals and birds.
As for me, I prefer to see living animals; that is why I like to visit Kharkiv Zoo.

Kharkiv Zoo is in a large park not far from the National University; in spring, summer and autumn there are a lot of beautiful flowers there.

Many kinds of animals and birds from all parts of the world live in the Zoo.

Some of the birds live in the cages and have very beautiful, bright colours.

Most of all I like to visit the large monkey house; there you can see how the monkeys eat fruit and jump, run and play with each other.

There is a large aquarium in the Zoo, too; not only fishes but other water animals live there.

There are several other museums in Kharkiv, too.

Questions:
1. What museums are there in Kharkiv?
2. What can you see in the History Museum?
3. What pictures are there in the Museum of Fine Arts?
4. What can you see in the Museum of the Natural History?
5. What animals are there in Kharkiv Zoo?
My Last Visit to the Circus

I like to go to the circus very much. There is a very good circus in Kharkiv. It is situated in the centre of the city not far from Gagarin Avenue Underground Station. Last time my brother, my mother and I went to the circus during my winter holidays. First we went by underground to the Metro Station “Gagarin Avenue” and then we went to the circus on foot. We left our coats in the cloak-room and then went to the hall. At the entrance we bought a programme of the show. Then we went and took our seats. Our seats were not far from the ring and we could see everything very well. The first part of the performance was very interesting — we saw many circus performers: acrobats, rope walkers, jugglers and clowns. The clowns were very funny and everybody applauded them. During the performance the circus band was playing music all the time. The band was conducted by the band leader. Then came the interval. During the interval we went to the bar and bought ice-cream, cotton-candy and a bottle of Coca-Cola. In the second part there were wild animals. Most of all I liked tigers and lions.

Мій недавній візит у цирк

Я дуже люблю ходити в цирк. У Харкові є дуже гарний цирк. Він розташований у центрі міста не- подалік від станції метро «Проспект Гагаріна». Останній раз я разом з моїм братом і моєю мамою ходив у цирк під час зимових канікул. Спочатку ми їхали на метро до станції «Проспект Гагаріна», а потім ішли пішки до цирку. Ми залишили свої пальта в гардеробі, а потім пішли у вестібюль. На вході ми купили програму вистави. Потім ми пішли і зайняли свої місця. Наші місця були недалеко від арен, і ми могли все дуже добре бачити. Перша частина вистави була дуже цікавою — ми дивилися ви- ступ багатьох циркових артистів: акробатів, канатохідців, жонглерів і клоунів. Клоуна були дуже смішні, і усі апло- дували їм. Під час вистави цирковий оркестр увесь час грав музику. Оркестром керував диригент. Потім був антракт. Під час антракту ми пішли в буфет і купили морозиво, солодку вату і пляшку кока-коли. У другому відділенні виступали дикі звірі. Над усе мені сподобалися тигри і леви.
They were in a large cage and performed various tricks. The animal trainer was very brave and spectators applauded much. There were also bears riding bicycles and dogs playing football.

After the performance we took our coats, and went home. On the way home we discussed the performance and everything that we had seen in the circus. I liked the visit to the circus very much.

Vocabulary:

`cloak-room` [kləukru:m] — garderob
`acrobat` [ækroʊbæt] — акробат
`rope walker` [rəʊpˈwɔːkə] — канатаходець
`juggler` [dʒʊɡlə] — жонглер
`circus band` [ˈsɪkəs bænd] — цирковий оркестр

`bandleader` [ˈbænd ˈlɛdə] — диригент
`to conduct` [kənˈdʌkt] — диригувати
`cotton-candy` [ˈkɒtn ˈkændi] — солодка вата
`animal trainer` [ˈændɪml treɪnə] — дресирувальник

Questions:

1. When did you go to the circus last time?
2. Where is the circus situated in your city?
3. Who did you see in the first part of the performance?
4. What did you do during the interval?
5. What was in the second part of the performance?
6. Did you like the visit to the circus?

● My Favourite Occupation

I have little free time because I have to work hard in order to do well at school.

But I try to find some time during the weekends for my favourite occupation: knitting and sewing.

I learned to knit when I was ten.

● Моє улюблєнне заняття

У мене мало вільного часу, тому що мені доводиться багато працювати, щоб добре встигати в школі.

Але у вихідні я намагаюся знаходити час для свого улюблених заняття: в'язання і шиття.

Я навчилася в'язати, коли мені було 10 років.
The first thing I made was a muffler.
I knitted it for my Dad.
I was very proud when he wore it.

Now I can make quite complicated things.
This year I’ve knitted pullovers for my Mom and myself, and a hat for my friend as a birthday present.
When I see beautiful knitting-wool in a shop, I find it very difficult to go by without buying it.

I learned to sew at the age of 12.
Now I’m very good at it.

Sometimes I cut patterns out of magazines, but more often I design clothes by myself.
I think it’s a very useful hobby.
Thanks to it I have some very nice inexpensive clothes.
I don’t have to spend much money in order to look attractive.

Vocabulary:

to do well [du: wel] — добре навчатися
to try [traɪ] — намагатися
occupation [ˌɒkˈjuːpeɪʃn] — заняття

complicated [ˈkɒmplɪˈkeɪtɪd] — складний
to cut [kʌt] — різати, вирізати

Questions:
1. Do you like to spend your spare time in the open air?
2. When did you learn to knit?
3. Do you usually have a lot of free time?
4. Is your hobby useful?
5. Is it very difficult to knit?
**Hobby**

Hobby is a favourite occupation of a person in his free time.
I have many friends.
They are very different and they have different kinds of hobbies.
One of my friends, for example, likes to knit very much.
In the evening she sits on the sofa and knits a beautiful pullover or a sweater.

She also knits for her little sister, her mother and her friends.
Another friend of mine spends all her time sewing things: skirts, blouses, dresses.
She makes it nicely and she always looks good.
One of my friends likes to make everything with his own hands.
He can repair an iron, a radio-set or a taperecorder.
I think it’s a very good hobby.
Many children and grown-ups are very fond of collecting.
Some people collect old coins, others collect postcards.
As for me, my hobby is collecting stamps.
Now I have 5 albums full of stamps, it is more than one thousand stamps.
I like to sit at a table in the evening and arrange new stamps in the albums, or write in the names of the countries, or just look through them.
Each stamp has a story to tell about distant countries and new people.
I see pictures of people, birds and animals which I have never seen before.

**Хобі**

Хобі — улюблене заняття людини у вільний час.
У мене багато друзів.
Вони дуже різні, і в них різні хобі.

Одна з моїх подруг, наприклад, дуже любить в'язати.
Увечері вона сидить на дивані і в'яже красиву кофту чи светр.
Вона в'яже також для своєї маленької сестри, для мами і для своїх подруг.
Інша моя подруга проводить увесь час за шиттям: шиє спідниці, блузи, сукні.
Вона робить це чудово і завжди прекрасно виглядає.
Мій друг любить майструвати.

Він може полагодити праску чи радіоприймач, магнітофон.
Я думаю, це дуже гарне хобі.
Багато дітей і дорослих захоплюються колекціонуванням.
Одні zbирають старі монети, інші колекціонують листівки.
Моє хобі — колекціонування марок.

Зразу у мене п'ять альбомів з марками, це більше тисячі марок.
Я люблю сидіти ввечері за столом і розміщати в альбомі нові марки, чи вписувати назви країн, чи просто розглядати їх.
Кожна марка може розповісти про далекі країни і нових людей.
Я бачу зображення людей, птахів і тварин, яких раніше ніколи не бачив.
Kings and presidents pass before my eyes and I can follow the history of the whole nations.

My hobby is not only wonderful but very useful, too.

Vocabulary:

for example [fɔ(r) ɪgˈzæmpl] — на-приклад
to sew [sə:] — шити
to look through [θəˈrʊ:] — розглядати

to repair [rɪˈpær] — лагодити, ремонтувати
collection [kəˈlɛkʃən] — колекція
stamp [stæmp] — марка

Questions:

1. Have you got many friends?
2. Have they got different kinds of hobbies?
3. What do girls/boys like to do?
4. What is your hobby?
5. What do people usually collect?

My Hobby

I have a lot of hobbies because there are so many interesting things to do.

Unfortunately I don’t have much spare time as I’m going to be a student that’s why I have to study a lot.

I like doing different things.

Such as reading detective novels, listening to the music, playing tennis with my classmates.

But my favourite hobby is solving crossword puzzles.

It’s not only interesting, but also useful.

When you try to solve the puzzle, you find out and learn a lot of different facts.

Because in puzzles there are questions about famous people, geographical places, countries, scientific achievements and so on.

You also train your brain.

Перед моїми очима проходять ко-ролі і президенти, я можу просте-жити історію цілих народів.

Моє хобі не тільки захоплює, але і дуже корисне.

Моє хобі

У мене багато захоплень, тому що існує дуже багато цікавих справ.

На жаль, у мене мало вільного часу, тому що я збираюся стати студентом і доводиться багато вчитися.

Мені багато чого подобається робити.

Наприклад, читати детективи, слухати музику, грати в теніс з моїми однокласниками.

Але мое улюблене захоплення — відгадування кросвордів.

Це не тільки цікаво, а також і корис-но.

Коли ви намагаєтеся розгада-ти кросворд, ви узнаєте і запа-м’ятовуєте багато різних фактів.

Тому що в кросвордах багато питань про знаменитих людей, гео-графічні назви, країни, наукові до-сягнення і так далі.

Ви також тренуєте мозок.
There are different types of crossword puzzles.
They are Scandinavian, English, Hungarian, Japanese, ordinary.
The crosswords are published in newspapers and magazines and there are special newspapers that contain only crosswords.
I sometimes try to make up my own puzzle and I can say that it is not less interesting.
All the members of our family like to take part in solving puzzles, and this unites us very much.

Vocabulary:

unfortunately [ʌnfəˈtʃɑːnɪtli] — на жаль
spare [speə] — вільний
crossword [ˈkrɒswɔːd] — кросвورد
puzzle [ˈpʊzl] — головоломка
scientific [saɪəntɪfɪk] — науковий
Scandinavian [skændɪˈneɪvɪən] — скандинавський
detective [dɪˈtektɪv] — детективный
to solve [sɒlv] — вирішувати
Hungarian [ˈhʌŋɡərɪən] — угорський
Japanese [dʒəˈpɔːniəz] — японський
to contain [kənˈteɪn] — містити
to make up [meɪk ʌp] — складати

Questions:

1. Do you have much time for hobbies?
2. Do you have any hobbies?
3. What do you like to do most of all?
4. Do you like to solve crossword puzzles? Why?

Music in Ukraine

Over the centuries the Ukrainian people have created a singular art of music.
Folk traditions have preserved to this day original ritual songs, dances and games.
The Ukrainian folk vocal heritage boasts a number of lyrical, humorous, patriotic, drinking and children's songs and romances.

Music in Ukraine

Over the centuries the Ukrainian people have created a singular art of music.
Folk traditions have preserved to this day original ritual songs, dances and games.
The Ukrainian folk vocal heritage boasts a number of lyrical, humorous, patriotic, drinking and children's songs and romances.

Music in Ukraine

Over the centuries the Ukrainian people have created a singular art of music.
Folk traditions have preserved to this day original ritual songs, dances and games.
The Ukrainian folk vocal heritage boasts a number of lyrical, humorous, patriotic, drinking and children's songs and romances.

Music in Ukraine

Over the centuries the Ukrainian people have created a singular art of music.
Folk traditions have preserved to this day original ritual songs, dances and games.
The Ukrainian folk vocal heritage boasts a number of lyrical, humorous, patriotic, drinking and children's songs and romances.
“Kobza”, “bandura”, “sopilka” and others became national musical instruments.

At present, Ukraine has six opera houses, three operettas, ten state philharmonic societies, five higher music schools.

Among the Ukrainian professional performers are the winners of many international concerts.

Speaking about Ukrainian composers we must mention I. Stravinsky, K. Shymanovsky, S. Prokofiev, and others, who were born in Ukraine.

The most important figure of the Ukrainian musical renaissance was Mykola Lysenko, pianist, composer, conductor and folklorist.

Among his operas there are the well-known “Taras Bulba” and “Natalka Poltavka”.

Ukraine’s first jazz orchestra appeared in Kharkiv (1924—1926).

The first jazz clubs opened in Kyiv in 1962.

The recorded pop music genre is represented by L. Bondar, T. Povalyi.

Creative search in national rock music started in the 70-s.

Among the groups combining the “general rock” style with the Ukrainian folk song-and-dance traditions are the Brothers Hadyukin, the “VV” and many others.

Pop singers like Sophia Rotaru, Irina Bilyk, Ivan Popovych are known throughout Ukraine and far outside.

Kobza, бандура, сопілка та інші стали національними музичними інструментами.

Зараз в Україні є шість оперних театрів, три театри оперети, 10 філармоній, п’ять вищих музичних шкіл.

Серед українських професійних виконавців є переможці багатьох міжнародних конкурсів.

Говорячи про українських композиторів, варто згадати Стравінського, Шимановського, Прокоф’єва і інших, котрі народилися в Україні.

Найвизначнішою фігурою українського музичного відродження був Микола Лисенко, піаніст, композитор, диригент і фольклорист.

Серед його опер такі знамениті, як «Тарас Бульба» і «Наталка Полтавка».

Перший український джазовий оркестр з’явився в Харкові (1924—1926).

Перші джазові клуби відкрилися в Києві в 1962 році.

Жанр популярної музики представляють Л. Бондар, Т. Повалій.

Творчий напрямок національної рок-музики почався в 70-ті роки.

Серед груп, що поєднують «рок» з українськими фольклорними пісенно-танцювальними традиціями, такі, як «Брати Гадюкіни», «ВВ» і багато інших.

Популярні співаки, такі як Софія Ротару, Ірина Білик, Іван Попович відомі по всій Україні і за її межами.
**Vocabulary:**

- drinking song [ˈdrɪŋkɪŋ sɔŋ] — застільна пісня
- composer [ˈkɒmpəzaɪə] — композитор
- conductor [ˈkənˈdʌktə] — диригент
- heritage [ˈhærɪtɪdʒ] — спадщина
- to create [kriˈeɪt] — створювати
- to preserve [prɪˈzɜrv] — зберігати
- folk [fɔlk] — народний
- philharmonic [ˌfɪləˈmənɪk] — музичний
- to mention [ˈmɛnən] — згадувати
- jazz orchestra [ˈdʒæz ˈɔːkstrə] — джазовий оркестр
- genre [ˈdʒɛnər] — жанр
- throughout [θraʊt] — повсюди

**Questions:**

1. What kinds of Ukrainian folk songs do you know?
2. What are Ukrainian musical instruments?
3. Name famous Ukrainian composers.
4. When did the first jazz orchestra appear?
5. What music do you like? Who are your favourite singers?

**American Music**

Since the United States was settled by Europeans, it is not surprising that classical music and folk songs were brought over from that continent.

Beethoven, Brahms, Debussy, Tchaikovskyi, Stravinskyi, Bach, Mozart and Verdi are but a few names of European composers which are often on orchestra or opera programmes.

English, Irish, Scottish folk songs are sung very often and have been sung in America by so many generations that Americans are not even conscious that these songs are of foreign origin.

But the greatest contribution to American music, however, has been made by the Negroes in the South.

Negro songs are now part of the nation's most precious musical heritage.

Perhaps the Negro's greatest contribution to American music has been jazz and rhythm-and-blues.
Most contemporary music works root deeply in those styles. After the Civil War some of the brass instruments of the Confederate military bands fell into the hands of the Negroes, and the result was all kinds of rhythmical and melodic experiments. Thus jazz, free of conventions and written arrangements, was born. Such composers as Aaron Copland and George Gershwin in America and Stravinsky in Europe have been influenced by American jazz. And one can say that rhythm-and-blues was the beginning of modern dancing music.

**Vocabulary:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Russian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to settle</td>
<td>населяти</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europeans</td>
<td>європейці</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>composer</td>
<td>композитор</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irish</td>
<td>ірландський</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generation</td>
<td>покоління</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negro songs</td>
<td>негритянські пісні</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melodic</td>
<td>мелодичний</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aaron Copland</td>
<td>Аарон Копленд</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>George Gershwin</td>
<td>Джордж Гершвін</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions:**

1. What songs are popular in America?
2. Are Negro songs part of the nation’s most precious musical heritage?
3. What musical styles do you know in America?
4. Are they popular in Europe?
5. What American composers do you know?

**Music in Great Britain**

Henry Purcell (1659—1695), a prominent British composer, lived in the 17th century. He was the founder of the British Opera. His opera “King Arthur” was very popular with spectators.
The main idea of this opera was the struggle for the independence of Britain.

The great influence of Henry Purcell is seen today in the works of Benjamin Britten.

B. Britten is a well-known British composer (1913—1976).

He has composed a large amount of music of all kinds, among them operas and choral works.

His music is very expressive.

One of his greatest works is the opera “Peter Grimes”.

It’s an exciting story about a poor fisherman who was falsely accused and driven out of his native village.

Britain also has good traditions of folk music.

There are traditional folk clubs in most towns.

Modern music is also of great popularity.

The most talented and famous composers of contemporary life are John Lennon and Paul McCartney — the founders of the legendary group “The Beatles”, whose music still influences new generations.

Великий вплив Генрі Перселла помітний у творах Бенджаміна Бриттена.

Бриттен — відомий англійський композитор (1913—1976).

Він склав велику кількість музичних творів, у тому числі опери і хорові твори.

Його музику дуже експресивна.

Одна з його кращих робіт — опера «Пітер Граймс».

Це хвилююча історія про бідного рибалку, що був помилково обвинувачений і вигнаний з рідного села.

Англія відрізняється традиційною прихильністю до народної музики.

У більшості міст є клуби народної музики.

Сучасна музика також користується популярністю.

Найталановитішими і найвідомішими композиторами сучасності є Джон Леннон і Пол Маккартні — засновники легендарної групи «Бітлз», чия музика продовжує враховувати уяву багатьох поколінь.

**Vocabulary:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Henry Purcell</td>
<td>Генрі Перселл</td>
<td>choral works</td>
<td>хорові твори</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King Arthur</td>
<td>король Артур</td>
<td>folk music</td>
<td>народна музика</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benjamin Britten</td>
<td>Бенджамін Бриттен</td>
<td>Paul McCartney</td>
<td>Пол Маккартні</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectator</td>
<td>глядач</td>
<td>Beatles</td>
<td>Бітлз</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions:**

1. Who was the founder of the British opera?
2. What is the main idea of opera “King Arthur”?
3. Who was Benjamin Britten?
4. Has Britain good traditions of folk music?
5. Is modern music of Britain popular in other countries?
Madame Tussaud’s

Every visitor to London knows who Madame Tussaud is — or was.

And almost every visitor has seen her, an old lady of 81, standing at the entrance of her own exhibition.

She is made of wax, like all the models of people in this museum.

There are a lot of halls in the museum.

The first room is the “Garden Party.” Beneath a star-spangled sky, under an oak-tree, figures from the worlds of sports and the media enjoy a friendly drink and chat.

There are statues of A. Schwarzenegger, E. Taylor and others there.

“200 Years” room covers the history of Madame Tussaud’s over the last two centuries, and shows the developing of new technology during that time.

There are also other rooms, such as: “Legends and Superstars”, rooms with popular music singers, the members of royal families and military leaders.

There is the “Chamber of Horrors” which amuses visitors very much.

“The Spirit of London” is a magnificent journey through London’s history.

The cabs travel past the figure of W. Shakespeare, Sir Christopher Wren, who directs the rebuilding of St Paul’s Cathedral.

It’s not easy to tell about all interesting things one can see in the museum.

This is the place that is worth visiting.

Vocabulary:

chat [tʃæt] — бесіда, розмова
wax [wæks] — восковий
beneath [bɪˈnɛθ] — під
to fascinate [ˈfæsɪneɪt] — зачаровувати
cathedral [ˈkæθədrəl] — собор

Tussaud [tʌˈsɔud] — Тюссо
Chamber of Horrors [ˈtʃæmbr əvˈhɔrəz] — кімната жаху
Sir Christopher Wren [səˈkrɪstəfə ˈren] — Кристофер Рен
Questions:
1. Where is Madam Tussaud’s?
2. What kind of museum is it?
3. What is the history of it?
4. What rooms are there in this museum?
5. Is it a famous museum in the world?

My Favourite Video Film

My favourite video film is “Titanic”.

It tells the story of a famous ship, the “Titanic”, which sank in 1912.

The “Titanic” was a colossal ship even by modern standards.
Its tragic sinking will always be remembered, for the ship went down on the first voyage with heavy losses.

The director of the film is James Cameron.
The main parts in the film are played by young actors Leonardo Di Caprio and Kate Winslet.
To my mind their acting is superb.
The camerawork is fantastic, too.
I’ve heard that they made a full-size model of the “Titanic” for this film.

It’s a very spectacular film.
It is also a moving love-story.
I advise all my friends to see “Titanic”.

The film was awarded 11 Oscars and I’m sure it deserves every one of them.

Vocabulary:

Titanic [taɪˈtænɪk] — Титанік
James Cameron [ˈdʒeɪmz ˈkæmərən] — Джеймс Камерон
colossal [kəˈlɒsəl] — колосальний

tragic [ˈtrædʒɪk] — трагічний
acting [ˈæktɪŋ] — гра (акторів)
full-size model [ˈfʊl saɪz ′mɒdəl] — модель в натуральну величину
Questions:
1. What is your favourite video?
2. Who is the director of the film?
3. Do you have a video at home?
4. Who played the main parts in the film?
5. Is it a spectacular film?

Television in Great Britain

Television (colloquially known as “TV” or the “telly”) is nowadays so popular that it is hard to believe that the first pictures were transmitted about fifty years ago.

The BBC was the first company in the world to provide a public television service, which began in 1936.

Viewers are now able to watch television for many hours a day, if they have time and wish.

Moreover, viewers now have four channels at their disposal.

In 1955 the Independent Broadcasting Authority opened a television service and in 1982 a second independent service came into operation.

The BBC provides two channels.

Advertisers buy time for advertising on Independent Television, but advertising time is short; it is limited by the special Act that allowed commercial television.

Viewers of any of the programmes can watch plays, reports about different events, sports, news, interviews with famous people, musical performances and many other things.

Films are often televised and many of them are made specially for television.

The cinema industry is jealous of television, and keeps new films for showing in cinemas.

Телебачення в Великобританії

Телебачення (у розмовному варіанті вимовляється ТВ) зараз настільки популярне, що важко повірити, що перші картини стали транслюватися близько 50 років тому.

БіБіСі — стала першою в світі компанією, яка в 1936 році почала масову телетрансляцію.

Глядачі зараз можуть дивитися телебачення багато годин на день, якщо в них є час і бажання.

Більш того, глядачі зараз мають у своєму розпорядженні чотири канали.

У 1955-му незалежна трансляційна компанія почала роботу, а в 1982-му з’явилися друга незалежна компанія.

БіБіСі працює на двох каналах.

Рекламодавці купують рекламний час на незалежному телебаченні, але рекламний час обмежений спеціальним Актом, що є законом про комерційне телебачення.

Глядачі будь-якого каналу можуть дивитися п’єси, репортажі про різні події, спорт, новини, інтерв’ю зі знаменитостями, музичні шоу і багато чого іншого.

Чаще показують фільми, і багато з них зняти спеціально для телебачення.

Кіноіндустрія суперникає з телебаченням і притримує нові фільми для показу в кінотеатрах.
But sometimes television shows new films.

Television has attracted many people away from cinema and, in recent years, many cinemas have been closed.

Most programmes are now transmitted in colour — but can of course also be received in black-and-white.

The number of colour sets in use is very large.

British television is linked with Europe through the Eurovision network.

Vocabulary:

nowadays [ˈnɔːdəʊz] — зараз, в теперішній час

BBC [ˈbiːbiː siː] — British Broadcasting Corporation

to transmit [trænsˈmɪt] — передавати

to provide [prəˈvaɪd] — забезпечувати

broadcasting [ˈbrɔːdkɑːstɪŋ] — трансляція

at their disposal [dɪzˈpəʊzəl] — в їх розпорядженні

interview [ˈɪntərvjuː] — інтерв’ю

to attract [əˈtrækt] — приваблювати

Authority [ɔːˈθɔrəti] — повноваження, тут компанія

Eurovision [juːərəvjuːˈvɪʒən] — Євробачення

Questions:

1. When did television appear?
2. What was the first broadcasting company in Britain?
3. What programmes are shown?
4. Do you like watching TV?
5. What is your favourite channel?
6. What is your favourite programme?

● Моя улюблена телепередача

Моя улюбленна телепередача «Поки усі вдома».

Моїм батькам і братові вона теж подобається, так що ми дивимося її всі разом.

У цій програмі ми зустрічаємося з цікавими людьми.

● My Favourite TV Programme

My favourite TV programme is “While Everyone’s at Home”.

My parents and my brother like it too, so we watch it all together.

In this programme we meet interesting people.
They tell us about themselves and their work, introduce members of their families.
The atmosphere of the programme is very friendly and informal.
The participants often tell amusing stories and make jokes.
Sometimes I feel as if they are our guests, our close friends, sitting with us in our living-room.
Another interesting feature of this programme is the "do-it-yourself" part.

My brother is especially interested in it. He often tries to make the things they describe.
I also like this programme because it makes our family more united.

Vocabulary:

**to introduce** [ɪntrəˈdʒuːs] — знайомити
**to feel** [fɪːl] — відчувати

**joke** [dʒəʊk] — жарт
**united** [juːˈnɪtɪd] — об’єднаний

Questions:
1. What is your favourite TV programme?
2. Do you like to watch this programme with your family?
3. Is the atmosphere of the programme friendly and informal?
4. Are there interesting features of your favourite programme?
5. How long do you watch TV every day?

---

**My Favourite Cinema Actor**

I like to go to the cinema.
There is a cinema theatre not far from my house.
Usually I go to the cinema with my friends on Sundays.
We do not like to attend evening film shows and usually buy tickets for morning or daytime film shows.
I prefer to see American, English and other foreign films, but I like our films too.

My favourite cinema actor is Yuriy Nikulin.

He is known in all parts of the former Soviet Union and is loved by many people.

As a young man Yuriy Nikulin took part in the Great Patriotic War.

After the war he entered the All-Union Institute of the Cinematography and became an actor.

Yuriy Nikulin played parts in many films, but most of all he is known as a comedy actor.

Some of these comedies became favourites with many spectators: who does not know such comedies as “The Caucasian Prisoner” or “The Diamond Arm”?

Yuriy Nikulin was not only a film actor, but a famous circus clown too.

Nikulin was a director of Moscow Circus.

Questions:
1. Who is your favourite actor?
2. Is he (she) a theatre or a cinema actor?
3. What do you know about his (her) childhood and education?
4. What films (performances) did he (she) take part in?
5. Why do you like his (her) acting?
6. What films with this actor (actress) have you seen?
Holidays in Ukraine

The most important holiday of Ukraine is the Day of Independence, which is celebrated on the 24th of August.

On this day in 1991 the independence of Ukraine was proclaimed and the Ukrainian people began to build a new society.

We always celebrate this date.

We also celebrate the 9th of May — Victory Day — every year.

The New Year Eve, Christmas, Easter are also celebrated in Ukraine.

Everyone likes the New Year Eve.

We usually buy a New Year tree, decorate our house with garlands, send postcards to our relatives and friends, wishing them joy and happiness.

Christmas is the day when Jesus Christ was born.

Easter is the day when Jesus Christ resurrected.

On this day we go to a church service, bake Easter cakes and paint boiled eggs.

The first of May — is the day of solidarity of the workers of the world.

On the 8th of March we celebrate the Women’s Day.

We congratulate our mothers, sisters, friends, teachers.

In this country people usually invite their friends to their homes, or visit their relatives and friends, or just stay at home with the family on holidays.

On these days we lay the table, dance and sing, have a lot of fun.

Свята в Україні

Найважливіше свято в Україні — День незалежності, що відзначається 24 серпня.

У цей день у 1991 році була проголошена незалежність України, і український народ почав будувати нове суспільство.

Ми завжди відзначаємо цю дату.

Щороку ми також святкуємо 9 Травня — День Перемоги.

В Україні святкують також Новий рік, Різдво і Великдень.

Новий рік люблять усі.

Ми звичайно купуємо ялинку, прикрашаємо будинок гірляндами, відправляємо листівки родичам і друзям, бажаючи їм радості і щастя.

Різдво — це день, коли народився Ісус Христос.

Великдень — це день, коли Христос воскрес.

У цей день ми ходимо в церкву, пекемо паски і фарбуємо варені яйця.

Перше травня — День солідарності трудящих світу.

8 березня ми святкуємо Жіночий день.

Ми поздоровлюємо наших матерів, сестер, подруг і вчителів.

У нашій країні у свята люди звичайно запрошують друзів до себе домого, чи ходять у гости до родичів чи друзів, чи просто залишаються вдома з родиною.

У ці дні ми накриваємо стіл, танцюємо, співаємо і веселимося.
Vocabulary:

to celebrate [ˈselbrɛt] — святкувати
Christmas [ˈkrɪsməs] — Різдво
Easter [ˈɛstə] — Великдень
Jesus Christ [dʒəz ˈkraɪst] — Ісус Христос
to congratulate [kənˈɡrætjuːlət] — поздоровляти
solidarity [sələˈdaərəti] — солідарність
to invite [ɪnˈvait] — запрошувати

Questions:
1. When is the Holiday of Ukrainian Independence celebrated?
2. What are the most popular Ukrainian holidays?
3. What is the way of celebrating the New Year holiday?
4. When is the Christmas holiday observed in Ukraine? Is it the same day as in Great Britain and America?

● Ukrainian Holidays

There are dates and events in the life of our country that are memorable to every Ukrainian citizen.

The dates of this kind are: the Victory Day, the May Day, the Constitution Day, the Women’s Day, the Independence Day.

These are national holidays, people do not work on these days.

The most memorable date is the Victory Day which is kept on the 9th of May.

On this Day we celebrate the anniversary of the victory over fascism in World War II.

The Women’s Day, which is celebrated on the 8th of March, is like Mother’s Day in Great Britain.

On this day you can see many men buying or carrying flowers.

Children give their mothers presents, or send them postcards if they are away from home.

Recently new national holidays have appeared.

They are of religious origin.
Holidays and Vacation

They are: Christmas and Easter.
In Ukraine Christmas is celebrated on the 7th of January.
In Europe and in the USA it is celebrated on the 25th of December.
On Christmas people celebrate the birth of Jesus Christ.
Easter symbolizes the Resurrection of Jesus Christ.
Children like this holiday for traditional brightly painted eggs and special Easter cakes.
Easter cakes are sold at every bakery, but home-made ones are always much tastier.

There is one more holiday which is loved by everybody: children and adults.
This is New Year’s Eve.
People decorate New Year trees with toys and lights and believe that a miracle is a must on this day.
On the New Year night people go to dance, visit their friends or stay at home and watch TV.
It’s my favourite holiday.
And, of course, one of the main holidays of Ukraine is the Independence Day, celebrated on the 24th of August.
On this day in 1991 the “Act of Independence of Ukraine” was proclaimed.

Vocabulary:

Resurrection [rəzəˈrekʃn] — воскресіння
fascism [ˈfæsɪzəm] — фашизм
present [ˈprezənt] — подарунок

to carry [ˈkærɪ] — нести
religious origin [rɪˈlɪdiŋz ˈɔrɪdʒən] — релігійне походження
adult [ˈædʌlt] — дорослий
miracle [ˈmɜːrəkl] — диво
Questions:
1. How do we celebrate Victory Day?
2. What is your favourite holiday?
3. When do we celebrate Easter?
4. What kind of holiday is the Women’s Day?
5. What kinds of holidays do you know?

Ukrainian Traditions and Religious Festivals

The Ukrainians, like any other people, have their own customs and traditions: many of these are very old, some appear nowadays.

Most of the customs are connected with the religious festivals or with Ukrainian dwelling.

The most popular of the holidays is the New Year Day; it is celebrated on the 1st of January.

On the eve of the holiday children and their parents decorate a New Year’s Tree with shining balls and other Christmas ornaments.

The mothers of the families prepare holiday dinners.

On that day people exchange presents with their relatives and friends: they often go to see them or invite them to their place to see in the New Year together.

They lay festive tables and at 12 o’clock raise their glasses with champagne and say to each other “Happy New Year”.

But the Orthodox Church in Ukraine celebrates New Year on the 14th of January to the old STYLE Calendar.

In the evening on the 13th of January children go from house to house and sing Christmas carols: they wish all the best to the people who live in these houses.
Of course, the carol-singers are given some reward — sweets, cakes or a little money.

The Orthodox Ukrainian people celebrate Christmas on January, 6: the evening before Christmas is called the Holy Evening.

On the Holy Evening all the family get together to have the Christmas Supper.

According to the religious tradition, it is necessary to prepare 12 different dishes because of 12 apostles; no one at the table can eat till the first star appears in the sky.

But, unlike in the English-speaking countries, in Ukraine people do not exchange presents on that day.

On the Christmas Evening the religious people go to church; some of them spend the whole night there — they pray and listen to Christmas religious songs which glorify Christ's birthday.

Another religious festival in winter is Twelfth-day or the Jordanian Holiday which is celebrated on memory of Jesus Christ's christening (on the 19th of January).

on the eve of this holiday at their supper people sing songs which are called “the generous songs” — that is why this evening is called “the generous evening”, too.

In the morning of the Jordanian Holiday the festival procession goes from a church to a river or to a pond where christening of water takes place.

After that the priest consecrates the peoples' homes and things.

Easter is another great religious festival: usually it is celebrated on one of Sundays in spring.

On that day the religious people go to church and listen to the service;

Звичайно, співакам дають деяку нагороду — цукерки, пироги чи небагато грошей.

Православні українці святкують Різдво 6 січня; вечір перед Різдвом називається Святим вечором.

На Святий вечір уся родина збирається разом на різдвяну вечерю.

Відповідно до релігійної традиції, необхідно приготувати 12 різних блюд по числу апостолів; ніхто за столом не може їсти, поки перша зірка не з'явиться у небі.

Але, на відміну від англомовних країн, люди в Україні не обмінюються подарунками в цей день.

У різдвяний вечір віруючі йдуть у церкву; деякі з них проводять там цілу ніч — вони моляться і слухають різдвяні релігійні пісні, що прославляють день народження Христа.

Інше зимове релігійне свято — Дванадцятий день чи Водохреще, що святкується в пам'ять про водохрещення Ісуса Христа (19 січня).

Напередодні цього свята під час вечері люди співають пісні, що називаються «щедрівки» — саме тому цей вечір також називають «Щедрим вечором».

Ранком на Водохреще святочна процесія йде від церкви до ріки чи до водойми, де відбувається водохрещення водою.

Після цього священик освячує будинки і речі людей.

Великдень — інше велике релігійне свято: звичайно воно святкується в одну з неділь весни.

У цей день віруючі йдуть у церкву і слухають службу; звичайно вони
usually they bring with them baskets with food — Easter cakes, butter, cheese and, of course, painted eggs.

The priest in the church consecrates all the food: many people believe that the Easter eggs possess magic power and can protect from evil, thunder or fire and have healing powers.

In the morning after the end of the service, the people greet each other with the words: “Christ has resurrected!” and return home for breakfast.

They celebrate Easter as the beginning of spring, too.

There are many other interesting customs and traditions in Ukraine, too.

**Vocabulary:**

- **dwelling** ([dwelɪŋ]) — житло, місце проживання
- **carol** ([kærəl]) — різдвяний гімн, колядка
- **Holy** ([ˈhɔli]) — святий
- **Orthodox** ([ˈɔːθədɔks]) — православний
- **to pray** ([preɪ]) — молитися

- **Jesus Christ** ([dʒɪz ˈkrist]) — Ісус Христос
- **to glorify** ([ˈɡlɒrɪfaɪ]) — уславлювати
- **Jordanian Holiday** — Хрещення
- **to consecrate** ([kənˈsɪkreɪt]) — освячувати

**Questions:**

1. What are the most important religious festivals of the Orthodox Church in Ukraine?
2. When do we observe Christmas in Ukraine?
3. How do people in Ukraine celebrate the New Year?
4. What is the Jordanian Holiday?

**Easter in Ukraine**

Easter is the most important holiday of the year. Easter egg is called pysanka.

Pysanka shells have been found in archaeological sites from more than 3000 years ago, and many of those designs are still being used on pysanka today.
Preparation for Easter starts seven weeks ahead of time with the advent of Lent.

Believers don’t eat meat and animal products.

Palm Sunday, the week before Easter, is known in Ukraine as Willow Sunday. People bring home willow branches which have been blessed in church. The week is dedicated to preparing for Easter.

The Thursday before Easter is called Clean Thursday. According to Ukrainian tradition one should bathe before sunrise on this day. The house must be clean too.

Good Friday is the day that the women of the family bake “paska”, Ukrainian Easter bread.

On Saturday children dye Easter eggs to add to the Easter basket which will be blessed in church. It also includes pysanka, salt, paska, sausage and ham.

In the evening people go to church for the Easter mass, which lasts all night.

Easter Sunday is a day of singing songs and eating. Young girls dance and sing about nature and spring. People exchange pysanky.

Vocabulary:

shell [ʃel] — шкаралупа
archaeological [ɑrˈkæələdʒɪkl] — археологічний
design [dɪˈзайн] — узор, малюнок
advent [ˈædvənt] — прихід
to dye [daɪ] — фарбувати
Lent [lent] — Великий піст

shell [ʃel] — шкаралупа
willow [ˈwɪloʊ] — верба
blessed [ˈblesd] — освячений
according to [əˈkɔːdɪŋ tu] — згідно
sunrise [ˈsaʊraɪz] — схід сонця
mass [mæs] — служба (у церкві)
to exchange [ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ] — змінювати
Questions:
1. What is the most important holiday of the year?
2. What is Lent?
3. What is pysanka?
4. When does preparation for Easter start?
5. How do people prepare for Easter?
6. When do children dye eggs?
7. What do people put into the Easter basket?

New Year in Our Country

New Year is a great holiday in our country.
Everybody likes it very much.
It is especially loved by little children.

People do not go to work on that day, and children do not go to school.
This holiday is considered to be a family holiday.
It is usually celebrated at home among the members of the family.
People decorate their houses and usually have a fir-tree which stands in the corner of the room.
Those fir-trees are very beautiful.
The presents are usually put under these trees.
Our parents prepare to this holiday well.
They buy a New Year tree, decorate it, buy a lot of tasty food and drinks.
At twelve o’clock in the night people can see the president on TV which addresses them with traditional words of congratulation.
At this time people are sitting at the tables to their holiday dinner and enjoy it in a good company.
Young people usually organize a dance party and have a lot of fun.

Новий рік у нашій країні

Новий рік — велике свято в нашій країні.
Усі його дуже люблять.
Особливо він подобається маленьким дітям.
Люди не йдуть на роботу в цей день, а діти не йдуть до школи.
Це свято вважається сімейним.

Його часто відзначають вдома в колі родини.
Люди прикрашають кімнату і звичайно ставлять у кутку кімнати ялинку.
Ялинки дуже красиві.
Під них звичайно кладуть подарунки.

Наші батьки ретельно готуються до свята.
Вони купують ялинку, прикрашають її, купують багато смачної їжі і напоїв.
О 12 годині ночі люди дивляться по телебаченню звертання президента до народу з традиційним поздоровленням.
У цей час люди сидять за столом і пригощаються святковою вечернею в гарній компанії.
Молодь звичайно організовує танцювальні вечірки і добре розважається.
Some of them go out into the streets and the squares. The next day friends usually come to wish a Happy New Year to all the members of the family. The New Year of our life has begun. Everyone hopes it will really be happy.

**Vocabulary:**

- especially [ˈespeʃəl] — особливо
- to celebrate [ˈselibreɪt] — святкувати
- among [əˈmʌŋ] — серед
- tasty [ˈteɪsti] — смачний
- congratulation [kənˌɡrætjuˈleɪʃn] — поздоровлення, вітання
- to organize [ˈɔɡənaɪz] — організовувати

**Questions:**

1. What is a great holiday?
2. Do children go to school on this day?
3. Is it a family holiday?
4. Where are the presents usually put?
5. How do our parents prepare to the holiday?
6. When does the president address people?
7. Do you like this holiday? Why?

● **The First of September**

The first of September is the first day of school. It is a happy day for all schoolchildren and their parents. It is especially a great holiday for those boys and girls who are beginning to go to school. Let’s go out and see what people are doing in the streets this morning.

There are a lot of schoolchildren in the streets. They are going to school. Boys and girls are carrying school-bags, many of them have flowers in their hands.

● **Перше вересня**

Перше вересня — це перший день навчання. Це щасливий день для всіх школярів і їхніх батьків.

Це особливо велике свято для тих хлопчиків і дівчаток, що йдуть до школи вперше.

Давайте вийдемо на вулицю і подивимося, що люди роблять на вулицях цим ранком.

Там багато школярів.

Вони прямують до школи.

Хлопчики і дівчатка несуть портфелі, у багатьох із них у руках квіти.
Big pupils are going to school by themselves, but small children are going with their parents at their side.

There are pupils in the schoolyard. They are not playing games this morning. They are speaking about the summer holidays, about their new teachers and what is new at school.

Music is playing and soon a meeting begins. The pupils, their parents and other people who are present listen to the director’s speech.

Then a small girl with flowers is ringing the bell.

The pupils are going to their classrooms and school year is beginning.

**Vocabulary:**

- **speech** [spɪːtʃ] — промова
- **to begin** [bɪˈgɪn] — почнати, починатися
- **to carry** [ˈkærɪ] — нести
- **present** [ˈpreznt] — присутній

**Questions:**

1. What is a holiday for schoolchildren?
2. What are people doing in the streets this morning?
3. Why do pupils have flowers?
4. What are pupils doing in the schoolyard?
5. Do you remember your very first day in school?

**UK Holidays**

There are many holidays in Great Britain. The main holidays are Christmas and Bank holidays. Christmas is celebrated on the 25th of December and symbolizes the birthday of Jesus Christ. This day is marked by setting the fir-tree and decorating it with different toys and candles.

**Свята у Великобританії**

У Великобританії багато свят. Найголовніші з них — Різдво і Банківське свято.

Різдво святкується 25 грудня і символізує день народження Христа.

У цей день установлюють ялинку і прикрашають її різними іграшками і свічами.
Children wait for Santa Claus who comes to every house and brings presents.

Going to bed children leave their stockings and shoes to receive presents the next morning.

There are a lot of parties organized by people to celebrate this wonderful holiday.

Young people like to spend it together in good companies.

There is a lot of fun and jokes on that day.

Meeting the New Year's Eve is held in the family circle in England.

Some people in Scotland go outside and meet New Year in squares singing songs or dancing.

The first man coming to you after the New Year Eve may bring you luck, especially if he comes with a piece of bread and coal.

Bread symbolizes wealth and coal — warmth.

Children like this holiday very much.

They go from house to house, sing songs and congratulate people.

People treat them to candies or give them little money.

Bank holidays are celebrated four times a year.

This day is a day-off for everybody because all banks and all offices are closed.

Englishmen spend this holiday in the country.

There are also great fairs with a lot of goods for sale, with fun, jokes and choosing the Pearl Queen and King.
The Pearl Queen and King are people at the fair who have the most unusual costume with a lot of pearl buttons on it.

There are many other holidays in Great Britain.

Vocabulary:
- **Bank holiday** [ˈbænk ˈhɒlɪdeɪ] — Банківське свято
- **to wait** [weɪt] — чекати
- **Santa Claus** [ˈsæntəklɔːz] — Санта Клаус
- **wealth** [welθ] — багатство

Questions:
1. What public holidays are there in Great Britain?
2. What kind of celebration the New Year holiday is observed in Great Britain?
3. When do English people celebrate Easter?
4. When do English people celebrate Bank Holidays?
5. How do English people celebrate Christmas Day?

Christmas in Great Britain
For many British families Christmas is the most important holiday of the year.
It is a combination of the Christian celebration of the birth of Christ, and the traditional winter holidays.

On the Sunday before Christmas many churches hold a carol service where special hymns are sung.

Most families decorate their houses with coloured paper or holly, and they usually have a Christmas tree in the front room.

It is decorated with coloured lights and beautiful toys.

The most important and pleasant tradition of Christmas is the giving of presents.

People wrap up their gifts and leave them at the bottom of Christmas
Children leave long socks near their bed hoping that Father Christmas will come at night and bring them small presents, fruits and nuts.

Children also write to Father Christmas letters and say what presents they want to get.

In the evening the family will sit down to a big turkey dinner followed by Christmas pudding.

Then they may watch the Queen on television as she delivers her traditional congratulations to the United Kingdom.

Vocabulary:

- **carol service** — різдвяне богослужіння з гімнами
- **holly** ['hɒli] — гостролист
- **Christmas** ['krɪsməs] — Різдво
- **combination** [ˌkɒmbɪˈneɪʃn] — з’єднання, поєднання
- **Christ** [kraɪst] — Христос
- **church** [tʃaːtʃ] — церква
- **hymn** [haɪm] — церковний гімн
- **to wrap up** [tərəp ʌp] — завернути
- **turkey** [ˈtɜːki] — індичка
- **congratulation** [kənˌɡrætjuˈleɪʃn] — поздоровлення, вітання

Questions:

1. What does Christmas mean for most British people?
2. What takes place on Sunday before Christmas?
3. How are the houses decorated?
4. What are the traditions?
5. What do children believe?
6. How do you usually celebrate Christmas?

New Year’s Eve in Great Britain

The first of January, New Year’s Day, is a big holiday in Scotland.

Scottish people celebrate New Year’s Eve in every family.

Friends usually come on that day.

They have a good dinner.

Новий рік у Великобританії

1 січня, Новорічне свято, — це велике свято в Шотландії.

Шотландці відзначають Новий рік у кожній родині.

Друзі звичайно приходять у цей день.

Вони пригощаються святковим обідом.
After dinner there are apples, other fruit, and different sweets to eat. Then all the family and the friends begin to play games and dance. Before twelve o’clock at night many people in the towns go out into the streets to dance and to sing songs. In England New Year’s Day is not a big holiday, it is not so popular. Very many people go to bed before twelve o’clock on New Year’s Eve. But some families celebrate this evening at home. At midnight they also go out into the streets and squares. In London people go to the Trafalgar Square. In this square they see a great tree brightly decorated with little lamps. When the largest clock of London — Big Ben — begins to strike twelve, the people in the square join their hands and sing. They also wish a Happy New Year to each other. New Year is one of the favourite holidays for many people in Great Britain.

Vocabulary:

Eve [iːv] — переддень
square [skweə] — площа
brightly [ˈbraɪtli] — яскраво
to strike [straɪk] — бити, ударити
Trafalgar Square — Трафальгарська площа

Questions:

1. Is the 1st of January a big holiday in Scotland?
2. Who usually comes on that day?
3. How do Scottish people celebrate it?
4. Do English people love this day?
5. Where is a great tree decorated in London?
6. What is the largest clock of London?
7. What do the people wish to each other on that day?
Holidays and Vacation ●

● Easter in Great Britain

Easter is a very popular holiday in Great Britain.
At Easter the British celebrate the idea of the new birth by giving each other chocolate Easter eggs, which are opened and eaten on Easter Sunday.

On Good Friday bakers sell hot cross buns.

Easter Monday is a holiday and many people travel to the seaside for the day or go and watch one of the many sporting events as football or horse racing.

Egg-rolling is a traditional Easter pastime which is still popular in Northern England, Scotland, Wales and Isle of Man.

It takes place on Easter Sunday or Monday, and consists of rolling coloured, hard-boiled eggs down a slope until they are cracked and broken after which the players eat them.

In some parts of Britain the competitions take place and the winner is a player whose egg remains longest undamaged, but usually the fun is just rolling and eating.

This is the older form of the custom, since egg-rolling does not appear to have been a game to be lost or won.

Vocabulary:

- chocolate [‘tʃɔklət] — шоколадний
- cross [krɔs] — хрест
- pastime [‘pɑːstaim] — розвага
- Ulster [‘ʌlstə] — Ольстер
- Isle of Man [‘aɪl əv mæn] — острів Мен
- to consist of [kən’sɪst] — складатися

● Великодень у Великобританії

Великодень — це дуже популярне свято у Великобританії.

На Великодень британці святкують відродження, даруючи один одному великодні шоколадні яйця, що відкриваються і з’їдаються у великодню неділю.

У Страсну П’ятницю булочники продають гарячі булочки у формі хреста.

Наступний після Великодня понеділок виходний, і багато людей йдуть на морське узбережжя на цілій день чи їдуть на яке-небудь спортивне змагання — футбол чи стрибки.

Катання яєць — це традиційна розвага на Великодень, що дотепер популярна в Північній Англії, Шотландії, Уельсу і на острові Мен.

Гра відбувається у великодню неділю чи понеділок, і полягає в тому, що розфарбовані, зварені яйця катають по похилій поверхні, поки вони не розіб’ються, після чого гравці їдять їх.

У деяких областях Британії влаштовують навіть змагання, і перемагає гравець, чиє яйце довше всього залишається цілим, але частіше задоволення надає сама гра.

Це просто традиція, а не гра, де повинні бути переможці і переможені.
Questions:
1. What do the British celebrate at Easter?
2. What is Easter Monday and how do people spend it?
3. What is egg-rolling?
4. Who is the winner in such competitions?

● Boxing Day and Halloween

Boxing day is a day when one visits friends, goes for long walks or just sits resting from too much food — everything to eat is cold.

In Great Britain there are usually Boxing Day Meets (fox-hunting).

In the cities tradition on that day demands a visit to the pantomime, where once again one is entertained by the story of Cinderella, Puss in Boots or something like that.

This holiday takes place on December 26th.

Halloween means “holy evening” and takes place on October 31st.

It is celebrated by many people in the United Kingdom.

It is connected with witches and ghosts.

At parties people dress up in strange costumes and pretend they are witches.

They cut horrible faces in pumpkins and put a candle inside, which shines through their eyes.

People play different games such as trying to eat an apple from a bucket of water without using their hands.

● День на святках і Хеллоуїн

День на святках — це день, коли кожний відвідує друзів, дякує гуляє чи просто відпочиває від великої кількості їжі — потрібно з’їсти в цей день щось холодне.

У Великобританії звичайно в день на святках проводяться збори мисливців (полювання на лисиць).

У містах традиція в цей день вимагає відвідування пантоміми, де кожний розважається історією про Попелюшку, Кота в чоботях чи чимось на зразок цього.

Це свято відзначається 26 грудня.

Хеллоуїн означає «День усіх святих» і святкується 31 жовтня.

Він святкується багатьма людьми в З’єднаному Королівстві.

Він зв’язаний з відьмами і примарами.

На вечірках люди одягаються в казкові костюми і представляють, що вони відьми.

Вони вирізають жахливі обличчя в гарбузах і ставлять усередину свічку, що світить крізь прорізи очей.

Люди грають у різні ігри, як, наприклад, у гру, в якій потрібно з’їсти без допомоги рук яблуко, що знаходиться в цебрі з водою.
In recent years children dressed in white sheets knock at doors at Halloween and ask if you would like a “trick” or “treat”.

If you give them something nice, a “treat”, they go away.

If you don’t, they play a “trick” on you, such as making a lot of noise near your house.

**Vocabulary:**

- **Boxing day** ['bɔksɪŋ deɪ] — день на святках
- **fox-hunting** ['fɒkshʌntɪŋ] — полювання на лисиць
- **witch** [wɪtʃ] — відьма
- **entertain** [entəˈteɪn] — розважатися
- **to pretend** [prɪˈtend] — уявляти
- **pumpkin** [ˈpʌmpkɪn] — гарбуз
- **treat** [trɪ:t] — частування

**Questions:**

1. What is Boxing day?
2. How do people in the country usually celebrate it?
3. What does Halloween mean?
4. What is it connected with?
5. How do people celebrate it?
6. What do children ask when they knock at the door?

**National Celebrations in the USA**

- **January:** the 1st of January — New Year’s Day
  the 15th January — Martin Luther King Day

- **February:** the third Monday — President’s Day
  the 14th of February — St Valentine’s Day

- **May:** the fourth Monday — Memorial Day

- **July:** the 4th of July — Independence Day

- **September:** the first Monday — Labour Day
October: the 12th of October — Columbus Day
the 31st of October — Halloween
November: the 11th of November — Veterans Day
the fourth Thursday — Thanksgiving Day
December: the 25th of December — Christmas

Americans share three national holidays with many countries: Easter Sunday, Christmas Day, and New Year’s Day.

Easter, which falls on a spring Sunday that varies from year to year, celebrates the Christian belief in the resurrection of Jesus Christ.
For Christians, Easter is a day of religious services and the gathering of family.
Many Americans follow old traditions of colouring hard-boiled eggs and giving children baskets of candies.

On the next day, Easter Monday, the president of the United States holds an annual Easter egg hunt in White House lawn for young children.

Christmas day, December 25, is another Christian holiday, it marks the birth of the Christ Child.
Decorating houses and yards with lights, putting up Christmas trees, giving gifts, and sending greeting cards have become traditions even for many non-Christian Americans.

New Year’s Day, of course, is in January.
The celebration of this holiday begins the night before, when Americans gather to wish each other a happy and prosperous coming year.

October: 12 жовтня — День Колумба
31 жовтня — Хеллоуїн
November: 11 листопада — День ветеранів
чвертый четвер — День Віддяки
December: 25 грудня — Різдво

Американці поділяють три національних свята з багатьма країнами: Великодня неділя, Різдво і Новий рік.

Великдень, який випадає на весняну неділю, що міняється щорічно, святкують християни, що вірять у воскресіння Ісуса Христа.
Для християн Великдень є днем релігійної служби і збором усієї родини.
Багато американців дотримуються старої традиції розфарбовувати варені яйця і дарувати дітям кошика з цукерками.
Наступного дня, у Великодній понеділок, президент США проводить щорічне змагання з розбивання яйця для маленьких дітей на галявині перед Білим домом.
Різдвяний день, 25 грудня, є другим християнським святом, що відзначає народження дитини Христа.
Прикраса будинків і дворів вогниками, установка різдвяної ялинки, вручення подарунків і відправлення вітальних листівок стало традицією навіть для американців — не християн.
Новорічний день, звичайно ж, 1 січня.
Святкування цього дня починається за ніч до нього, коли американці збираються побажати один одному щасливого майбутнього року і про-цвітання.
Holidays and Vacation

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Martin Luther King</td>
<td>Мартін Лютер Кінг</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memorial Day</td>
<td>День поминання</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labour Day</td>
<td>День праці</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thanksgiving</td>
<td>віддяка</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christ Child</td>
<td>дитина Христа</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to fall on</td>
<td>припадати на</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to belief</td>
<td>вірити</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resurrection</td>
<td>воскресіння</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servis</td>
<td>служба</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annual</td>
<td>щорічний</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lawn</td>
<td>газон</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to gather</td>
<td>збиратися</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions:

1. What national holidays do Americans share with many countries?
2. What kind of day is Easter for Christians?
3. What does the president of the United States usually do on Easter Monday?
4. What have become traditions for many non-Christian Americans?
5. When does the celebration of New Year’s Day begin?

Holidays in the USA

There are a lot of holidays in the USA. Many of them are associated with the history of the nation. There are also some holidays that have come from the old colonial days. The main holidays of the USA are New Year’s Day, Easter, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Thanksgiving Day and Christmas.

The New Year’s Eve is a time for merriment. Most Americans spend this night with friends at home or in restaurants. Thousands of people gather in New York in Times Square to see the New Year in.

The Tournament of Roses takes place in Pasadena, California, on January 1 each year.

Prizes are given to the cities with the most unusual floral compositions.

At Easter there is a tradition for people to buy new clothes.
After church services many people take walks along the streets of their towns, wearing their new Easter hats and suits.

This is usually called the “Easter Parade”.

Memorial Day comes on May 30.

It is dedicated to the memory of those who died for America in different wars.

The national flags are put on the graves of soldiers on this day.

The fourth of July, an Independence Day, is the biggest national holiday of the USA.

On this day in 1776 a document, known as the Declaration of Independence, was adopted.

During this holiday American cities have parades, people shoot off fireworks in parks and fields.

Thanksgiving Day comes on the fourth Thursday of November.

When the first settlers landed in America, their first year was very hard and 50 of 100 people died.

But the Indians taught people how to plant corn and wild vegetables and in autumn they got a large harvest.

Thanksgiving Day was their holiday, the day of giving thanks to God.

It is a family holiday and Americans try to gather all family at home on this day.

There are also some holidays which are not celebrated nation-wide, but only by each state separately.
Holidays and Vacation

Vocabulary:

to associate [əˈsəʊʃɪeɪt] — пов’язувати
merriment [ˈmɜrəmənt] — радість
to gather [ˈgæðə] — збиратися

fireworks [ˈfaɪəwɜːks] — фейєрверк
vegetables [ˈvedʒtəblz] — овочі

Questions:

1. What are the most popular American holidays?
2. In what way do American people celebrate Christmas holiday?
3. When was the Declaration of Independence adopted in America?
4. When is Thanksgiving day celebrated?
5. When is Memorial Day observed in the United States?

American Holidays

Probably the most widely celebrated holidays in the United States of America are Thanksgiving, Independence Day and Christmas.

Thanksgiving Day is marked on the fourth Thursday of November. On this day Americans thank their God for his blessings. Families gather together for a traditional dinner which includes roast turkey and pumpkin pie.

Independence Day is marked on the 4th of July as the birthday of the United States as a free and independent nation. Generally, picnics, parades and firework displays are held all over the country on this day.

Christmas is the most important religious holiday for Christians. Gift-giving is very common at Christmas. American children look forward to Christmas morning, when they find gifts brought by Santa Claus.

Other important holidays are Easter, Labour Day and Memorial Day.

Американські свята

Напевно, найбільш популярними святами в Сполучених Штатах Америки є День Віддяки, День незалежності і Різдво.

День Віддяки відзначається в четвертый четвер листопада. У цей день американці дякують Богу за послані їм милості.

Родини збираються разом за традиційним обідом, що включає смажену індичку і гарбузовий пиріг.

4 липня відзначається День незалежності, день народження Сполучених Штатів як вільної і незалежної держави. Звичайно в цей день по всій країні влаштовуються пікніки, паради і феєрверки.

Різдво — найважливіше релігійне свято для християн. Звичайно дарувати подарунки на Різдво дуже розповсюджений.

Американські діти з нетерпінням чекають Різдвяного ранку, коли вони знаходять подарунки, принесені Санта Клаусом.

Інші важливі свята — це Великдень, День праці і День Поминання.
Labour Day is observed on the 1st Monday of September to honour the working people. Memorial Day, on the 4th Monday of May, is a day when the dead of all wars are remembered.

**Vocabulary:**

- *generally* [ˈdʒenərəli] — звичайно
- *all over the country* [ɔːl ˈɔːvə də ˈkʌntri] — по всій країні
- *blessing* [ˈblesɪŋ] — благословіння
- *fireworks* [ˈfaɪəwɜːks] — фейєрверк

**Questions:**

1. What are the main holidays in America?
2. When was Labour Day made national holiday?
3. When did Thanksgiving day become an official holiday?
4. What kind of holiday is Memorial Day?
5. What day do Americans honour the memory of members of the armed forces killed in wars?

**Uniquely American Holidays**

**July 4th — Independence Day**

On July 4, 1776, a group of Americans representing the thirteen British colonies on the Atlantic coast of North America signed a document stating that these colonies had the right to be free and independent.

This document is known as the Declaration of Independence.

July 4 is celebrated by Americans as a national holiday — Independence Day.

There is a building in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, which is called Independence Hall.

Here the Declaration was signed.

On the building there is the famous Liberty Bell which rang to tell people in the streets that a new country had been born.

Цей документ відомий як Декларація незалежності.

4 липня святкується американцями як національне свято — День незалежності.

У Філадельфії (штат Пенсільванія) є будинок, що називається Залом незалежності.

На будинку підписана Декларація.

Цей документ відомий як Декларація незалежності.
But Britain did not recognise this fact until 1783, when the American colonists were victorious in the war of Independence with Britain.

June, 14 is Flag Day in the USA.

On that day in 1777, the Americans adopted their own flag.

No one really knows who sewed the American flag but many Americans believe that it was made by Betsy Ross in her own home.

You can see Betsy Ross sewing the flag on an American stamp.

Vocabulary:

to sign [sain] — підписати
to recognise [rekərˈnaɪz] — визнати
to adopt [əˈdɑːpt] — заснувати
to sew [sɔː] — шити

Questions:

1. What happened on July 4th, 1776?
2. Where was the Declaration of Independence signed?
3. Where is Independence Hall situated?
4. When is Flag Day in the USA?
5. Who sewed the first American flag?

● The Fourth of July — Independence Day

The Fourth of July is the biggest national holiday of the USA.

It is celebrated as the birthday of the country.

On July 4, 1776, when the American colonies were fighting against Britain, the legislative assembly of the colonists, the continental Congress, adopted a resolution which has come to be known as the Declaration of Independence.

The resolution was drafted by Thomas Jefferson (1743—1826).

The Declaration of Independence was a letter from the Continental Congress to the King of Great Britain.

● Четверте липня — День незалежності США

4 липня — найбільше національне свято в США.

Він відзначається як день народження країни.

4 липня 1776 р., коли американські колонії боролися проти британців, законодавчі збори колоністів і Континентальний конгрес прийняли резолюцію під назвою «Декларація незалежності».

Резолюція була складена Томасом Джефферсоном.

Декларація незалежності вийшла з Континентального конгресу і була направлена королю Великобританії.
Thomas Jefferson wrote to the King that the people in America did not want to pay taxes if they were not allowed to decide how to spend the taxes.

But the Declaration was just a letter, it did not make the American people independent of Britain, the people had to fight for their independence.

Though the Declaration of Independence had been adopted on July 4, it was not signed by the members of the Congress until August 2, 1776.

The Congress held its meetings in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

When the people of Philadelphia heard that the Congress had voted to send the Declaration of Independence to the King, they rang a big bell in the tower of Independence Hall and celebrated their first “Fouth of July”.

It has become a tradition to celebrate the Fourth of July with speeches about the “American democracy”, the “American system”, the “American way of life”.

Vocabulary:

to adopt [əˈdɑːpt] — приймати
Thomas Jefferson [ˈtɒməs ˈdʒefərson] — Томас Джефферсон
legislative [ˈlɛdʒɪslətɪv] — законо-давчий
to draft [drɑːft] — накидати, скласти (законопроект)

tax [tæks] — податок
hold (held) [həuld] — проводити (зібрання)
sign [saɪn] — підписати

Questions:
1. What is the biggest holiday of the USA?
2. Is it celebrated as the birthday of the country?
3. When was a resolution adopted?
4. What can you say about the Declaration of Independence?
5. Whom was Thomas Jefferson’s letter sent to?
6. Where did the Congress have its meetings?
7. Has it become a tradition to celebrate the Fourth of July — Independence Day?
Thanksgiving Day

Eight other holidays are uniquely American.

For most Americans, two of these stand out above the others as occasions to cherish national origins: Thanksgiving Day and the 4th of July.

Thanksgiving Day is the fourth Thursday in November, but many Americans take a day of vacation on the following Friday to make a four-day weekend, during which they may travel long distances to visit family and friends.

The holiday dates back to 1621, the year after the Puritans arrived in Massachusetts, determined to practise their dissenting religion without interference.

After a rough winter, in which about half of them died, they turned for help to neighbouring Indians, who taught them how to plant corn and other crops.

The next fall’s bountiful harvest inspired the Pilgrims to give thanks by holding a feast.

The Thanksgiving feast became a national tradition — not only because so many other Americans have found prosperity but also because the Pilgrims’ sacrifices for their freedom still captivate the imagination.

To this day, Thanksgiving dinner almost always includes some of the foods served at the first feast: roast turkey, cranberry sauce, potatoes, pumpkin pie.

Before the meal begins, families or friends usually pause to give thanks for their blessings, including the joy of being united for the occasion.
Vocabulary:

Puritans [ˈpjuərɪtænz] — пуритани
Massachusetts [ˌmæsəˈtʃuːsəts] — Массачусетс
dissenting [dɪˈsentɪŋ] — розкольницька релігія
interference [ˌɪntəˈfɪərəns] — утримання
fall [fɔːl] — осінь (Ам. Е.)
bountiful [ˈbaʊntɪfl] — щедрий
to inspire [ɪnˈspaɪər] — надихати
feast [fɛst] — бенкет, свято
prosperity [ˌprɔsəˈpərəti] — процвітання
to sacrifice [ˈsækrəfai] — жертвувати
to captivate [ˈkæptɪvət] — полонити
imagination [ɪˌmædʒɪˈneɪʃn] — уява

Questions:
1. When is Thanksgiving Day?
2. When was the first celebration of Thanksgiving Day?
3. Who helped the Puritans to plant corn and other crops?
4. What does Thanksgiving dinner include?

Mother’s Day

Mother’s Day comes on the second Sunday in May.

It is a day when Americans honour their mothers.

It is not a national holiday.

Mother’s Day is an American national observance in honour of motherhood.

The holiday, suggested by Anna Jarvis of Philadelphia, was set (1914) by an act of Congress for annual celebration.

It is also observed in England and Germany.

In 1907, the day was celebrated in a church in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

A member of that church planned the Sunday morning service to honour her own mother.

More and more churches in cities and states set aside the day to honour mothers.

Since 1914, the whole country has observed Mother’s day.

Most mothers like to celebrate the day with family reunions.

День матері

День матері відзначається у другу неділю травня.

Це день, коли американці ушановують своїх матерів.

Це не національне свято.

День матері — це національна данина американців материнством.

Свято, запропоноване Ганною Джарвіс з Філадельфії, у 1914 р. Актом Конгресу було установлене щорічним.

Його також дотримуються в Англії і Німеччині.

У 1907 р. День матері відзначався у церкві Філадельфії — Пенсільванія.

Настоятель цієї церкви заланував проведення служби на честь своєї матері.

Багато церков міст і штатів були осторонь від того, щоб ушановувати матерів.

Із 1914 р. уся країна відзначала День матері.

Велика частина матерів любить святкувати цей день із усією родиною.
Many people send their mothers a card or a gift.
Some people take their mothers to a restaurant for dinner.
It is a custom to wear a red or pink flower if one’s mother is living.
It is the custom to wear a white flower if one’s mother is dead.

**Vocabulary:**

- Philadelphia [ˈfɪlədelfjə] — Філадельфія
- Germany [ˈdʒɜːməni] — Німеччина
- Pennsylvania [ˈpensəlˈveɪnijə] — Пенсільванія
- honour [ˈɒnər] — честь; поважати
- to observe [əˈbɜːz] — дотримуватися (законів, звичаїв)
- observance [əˈbɜːzvəns] — виконання (закону)
- to suggest [səˈdʒest] — пропонувати
- annual [ˈænjʊəl] — щорічний
- to set aside [ˈsetəsaɪd] — відкладати
- reunion [rɪˈjuːnɪən] — возз’єднання

**Questions:**

1. When did Mother’s Day come in America?
2. What is Mother’s Day like?
3. Is it a national holiday?
4. Who suggested this holiday?
5. Was it set by an act of Congress for annual celebration?
6. Where is it also observed?
7. Where was the day celebrated in 1907?
8. What did a member of that church plan?
9. Since when has the whole country observed Mother’s Day?
10. Most mothers like to celebrate the day with family reunions, don’t they?

**Father’s Day**

Father’s Day comes on the third Sunday in June.
It is not a national holiday on that day.
Americans honour their fathers.

Many people send their fathers a card or a gift.
Americans are great letter-writers.
Whatever happens in a family, they congratulate all the members.
They congratulate people on Easter, Christmans and Whitsun.

They do not have to possess great literary talent themselves, because one can find printed texts for all possible occasions.

One may select and check any of these suggested texts: “Here’s to Father: always loved, respected, and admired”.

“Wearest wishes for your happiness on Father’s Day and ever after”.

About 1909, the churches of Spokane, Washington, set aside the day to honour fathers.

The custom soon spread throughout the United States and Canada.

During the autumn, some colleges celebrate Dad’s Day.

They set aside a Saturday during the football season.

On Dad’s Day, they honour the fathers among the members and friends of the college.

They congratulate people on Easter, Christmans and Whitsun.

They do not have to possess great literary talent themselves, because one can find printed texts for all possible occasions.

One may select and check any of these suggested texts: “Here’s to Father: always loved, respected, and admired”.

“Wearest wishes for your happiness on Father’s Day and ever after”.

About 1909, the churches of Spokane, Washington, set aside the day to honour fathers.

The custom soon spread throughout the United States and Canada.

During the autumn, some colleges celebrate Dad’s Day.

They set aside a Saturday during the football season.

On Dad’s Day, they honour the fathers among the members and friends of the college.

**Vocabulary:**

- **to congratulate** [kənˈɡrætʃuːlt] — вітати
- **to respect** [rɪsˈpekt] — поважати
- **to admire** [ədˈmaɪə] — захоплюватися
- **to spread** [spred] — розповсюджувати

- **occasion** [əˈkeɪʒn] — випадок; обставини
- **Whitsun Monday** — день Святого Духа
- **throughout** [θruːˈaut] — всюди

**Questions:**

1. When does Father’s Day come?
2. Is it a national holiday?
3. How do Americans honour their fathers?
4. What other holidays do they send congratulations at?
5. Is it easy to find printed texts for all possible occasions?
6. When did the churches of Spokane set aside the day to honour fathers?
7. Where did the custom spread throughout?
8. What can you say about colleges’ celebration of Dad’s Day?
Memorial Day
Celebrated on the fourth Monday of May, Memorial Day honours the dead.

Although it originated in the aftermath of the Civil War, it has become a day on which the dead of all wars, and the dead generally, are remembered in special programs held in cemeteries, churches, and other public meeting places.

Vocabulary:
- to honor [ˈhɑːnə] — вшановувати
- dead [ded] — померлий
- Civil War [ˈsɪvɪl wɔːr] — Громадянська війна

Questions:
1. When is Memorial Day celebrated?
2. Whom does this holiday honour?
3. Where are special programs held?

Labour Day
The first Monday of September is the national holiday that honours national working people, typically with parades. For most Americans it means the end of the summer vacation season, and for many students it is the beginning of academic year.

Vocabulary:
- typically [ˈtɪpɪkəli] — типово, звичайно
- parade [pəˈreɪd] — парад
- to mean [mɪn] — означати

Questions:
1. When is Labour Day celebrated?
2. Whom does this holiday honour?
3. What does this holiday mean for most Americans?

Columbus Day
On October 12, 1492, Italian navigator Christopher Columbus landed in the New World.
Although most other nations of the Americans observe this holiday on October 12, in the United States it takes place on the second Monday of October.

Vocabulary:

Christopher [ˈkrɪstəfə] — Христофор  
to land [lænd] — висадитися  
navigator [ˈnævɪgətə] — штурман  
to observe [əˈbɜːzv] — відзначати  

Questions:

1. When did Christopher Columbus land in the New World?  
2. When do most other nations of the Americans observe this holiday?

Veterans Day

Veterans Day is originally called Armistice Day.  
This holiday was established to honour Americans who had died in World War I.  
It falls on November 11, the day when that war ended in 1918, but it now honours veterans of all wars in which the United States has fought.  
Veterans’ organizations hold parades, and the president customarily places a wreath on the Tomb of the Unknowns at Arlington National Cemetery, across the Potomac River in Washington, D. C.

Vocabulary:

armistice [ˈɔ:mɪstɪs] — перемир’я  
to serve [sɜːv] — служити  
to fall on [fɔːl] — припадати  
customarily [ˈkʌstəmərɪli] — зазвичай  
wreath [rɪθ] — вінок  
tomb [tʌm] — могила  

Questions:

1. When is Veterans Day celebrated?  
2. What does the president customarily place on the Tomb of the Unknowns?
Presidents’ Day

Until the mid — 1970s, the February 22, the birthday of George Washington, the hero of the Revolutionary War and the first president of the United States, was a national holiday.

In addition, the February 12, the birthday of Abraham Lincoln, the president during the Civil War, was a holiday in most states.

The two days have been joined, and the holiday has been expanded to embrace all former presidents.

It is celebrated on the third Monday in February.

Vocabulary:

Revolutionary War — Революційна війна
George Washington — Джордж Вашингтон
Abraham Lincoln — Абраам Лінкольн
in addition — крім того, до того ж

Questions:

1. When was George Washington born?
2. What was he famous for?
3. Who was the first president of the USA?
4. When was Abraham Lincoln born?
5. When is the Presidents’ Day celebrated?

Martin Luther King Day

The Reverend Martin Luther King, Jr., an African-American clergyman, is considered a great American because of his tireless efforts to win civil rights for all people through nonviolent means.

Since his assassination in 1968, memorial services have marked his birthday on the 15th of January.

Vocabulary:

to be joined — бути приєднаним
to be expanded — призначений
to embrace — охоплювати

Questions:

1. When was Martin Luther King Jr. born?
2. What was he famous for?
3. Who was the first president of the USA?
4. When was Abraham Lincoln born?
5. When is the Presidents’ Day celebrated?

День президентів

До середини сімдесятих років день 22 лютого, день народження Джордж Вашингтона, героя революції і першого президента США, було національним святом.

Крім того, 12 лютого — день народження президента Авраама Лінкольна, під час Громадянської війни було святом у багатьох штатах.

Два дні були об’єднані, і свято покликане згадати всіх попередніх президентів.

Він святкується в 3-й понеділок лютого.

День Мартіна Лютера Кінга

Афро-американський священик Мартін Лютер Кінг вважається великим американцем, тому що він доклав багато зусиль для перемоги громадянських прав усіх людей через ненасильство.

З часу його віроломного убивства в 1968 році поминальні служби відзначають його день народження 15 січня.
In 1986, that day was replaced by the third Monday of January, which was declared a national holiday.

Vocabulary:
- clergyman — священик
- to consider — розглядати, вважати
- civil — громадянський
- to declare — оголосити
- assassination — віроломне вбивство

Questions:
1. What was Martin Luther King?
2. Why is he considered a great American?
3. When was he killed?
4. What day was his birthday replaced by?

Ethnic Holidays in the USA
Various ethnic groups in America celebrate days with special meaning to them even though these are not national holidays.

Jews, for example, observe their holy days in September.
Irish Americans celebrate St Patrick on the 17 of March.
Many Americans wear green clothing in honour of the “Emerald Isle”.

The celebration of Mardi Gras is an occasion in New Orleans, Louisiana, where parades take place.
Mardi Gras means “Fat Tuesday”, the last day before the season of Lent.

The tradition goes back to the city’s settlement by French immigrants.

There are many other such ethnic celebrations, and New York City is particularly rich in them.

Ethnic Holidays in the USA
Various ethnic groups in America celebrate days with special meaning to them even though these are not national holidays.

Jews, for example, observe their holy days in September.
Irish Americans celebrate St Patrick on the 17 of March.
Many Americans wear green clothing in honour of the “Emerald Isle”.

The celebration of Mardi Gras is an occasion in New Orleans, Louisiana, where parades take place.
Mardi Gras means “Fat Tuesday”, the last day before the season of Lent.

The tradition goes back to the city’s settlement by French immigrants.

There are many other such ethnic celebrations, and New York City is particularly rich in them.

Ethnic Holidays in the USA
Various ethnic groups in America celebrate days with special meaning to them even though these are not national holidays.

Jews, for example, observe their holy days in September.
Irish Americans celebrate St Patrick on the 17 of March.
Many Americans wear green clothing in honour of the “Emerald Isle”.

The celebration of Mardi Gras is an occasion in New Orleans, Louisiana, where parades take place.
Mardi Gras means “Fat Tuesday”, the last day before the season of Lent.

The tradition goes back to the city’s settlement by French immigrants.

There are many other such ethnic celebrations, and New York City is particularly rich in them.
Vocabulary:

**ethnic** [eθnɪk] — етнічний
**Jew** [dʒuː] — єврей
**Irish** [ˈaɪərɪʃ] — ірландський
**New Orleans** [njuːˈɔːləns] — Новий Орлеан

**Louisiana** [luːiˈziːənə] — Луізіана
**to observe** [əˈbɜːzv] — дотримуватися
**occasion** [əˈkeɪʒn] — випадок, привід
**holy** [ˈhɔli] — святий
**Lent** [lent] — Бліжній піст

Questions:

1. What do Jews observe?
2. What holiday do Irish Americans celebrate?
3. What does Mardi Gras mean?
4. What city is rich in ethnic celebrations?

● **St Valentine’s Day**

St Valentine’s Day comes on February 14.
It is not a legal or a national holiday.
Banks and offices are not closed, but it is a happy little festival for young people.
It is widely celebrated among people of all ages by exchange of “valentines”.
A “valentine” may mean a special greeting-card or a little present.

It may be for the person who receives the gift.
St Valentine is the patron of sweethearts.
February 14 is the anniversary of his death.
The day is the time to send little gifts to those you love.

Flowers and candy are favourite presents which sweethearts send to each other.
Valentine candy is packed in red heart-shaped boxes and sold for this one day.

● **День Св. Валентина**

День Св. Валентина припадає на 14 лютого.
Це не узаконене національне свято.
Банки й офіси не закриті, але це радісне невелике свято молоді.

Воно широко святкується людьми різного віку, що обмінюються «валентинками».
«Валентинка» означає спеціальну вітальну листівку чи невеликий подарунок.
Вона може бути призначена особі, що одержує подарунок.
Святий Валентин — заступник закоханих.
Можливо, 14 лютого — річниця його смерті.
Цей день означає те, що час послати невеликі подарунки тим, кого любиш.
Квіти і цукерки — улюблені подарунки, що закохані посилають один одному.
Цукерки в День Валентина упаковані в червоні коробочки у формі серця і продаються тільки в цей день.
Valentines are special greeting cards.

They are often coloured red, have red trimmings and pictures of hearts.

Some “valentines” are very fancy, they are trimmed with paper lace and little bows of paper ribbon.

They have verses of love poetry printed on them.

It is a good day for parties, especially by young people.

The hosts trim the hall with red and white paper hearts.

Refreshments are often coloured red, like red candy and punch.

Sandwiches and cakes are often cut in the shape of hearts.

Sometimes, a King and Queen of Hearts are chosen for the evening of dance.

Questions:
1. When does Valentine’s Day come?
2. Is it a legal or a national holiday?
3. Who likes this Day very much?
4. What does a “valentine” mean?
5. How do people celebrate Valentine’s Day?
6. Valentines are special greeting cards, aren’t they?
Halloween

On October 31, Halloween (the evening before All Saints), American children dress up in funny or scary costumes and go “trick or treating”: knocking at doors in their neighbourhood.

The neighbours are expected to respond by giving them small gifts of candies or money.

Adults may also dress in costumes for Halloween parties.

People usually put pumpkins on the window-sills.

They cut nose, eyes and mouth on the pumpkin and put the candles into them.

Vocabulary:

to dress [dres] — одягати
neighbourhood ['neibә,hu:d] — сусідство

candy [kәndi] — цукерка
adult [ә'dәlt] — дорослий

Questions:

1. When do the American children dress up in funny or scary costumes and go “trick or treating”?
2. What are the neighbours expected to respond?
3. What do people put on the window-sills?

My Summer Holidays

In summer schoolchildren do not go to school.

They have summer holidays which are three months long.

Children don’t have to get up early.

There is no homework to do or lessons to learn.

That’s why they like holidays.

I never stay in bed long in a bright summer morning.

Sometimes my friends and I go to the cinema or to a concert.
Sometimes we play football or badminton in the yard.
Every summer I go to the country to stay with my grandmother for a week or two.
I help Granny to work in the kitchen garden or to look after chickens and ducks.
In the village I often go for long bike rides with my cousins.

Sometimes we go fishing.
I like to go to the beach in the morning when it is not too hot.
I swim, sunbathe and play with my friends on the bank of the river.
If my uncle is not very busy he takes my cousins and me on a hike in the forest.
I like sleeping in a tent, sitting by the fire and singing songs.
Summer holidays are never too long for me.

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yard [jɑːd]</td>
<td>двор</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to stay [steɪ]</td>
<td>залишатися</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hike [haɪk]</td>
<td>похід</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tent [tent]</td>
<td>намет</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions:

1. Why do you like your summer holidays?
2. What do you usually do in summer?
3. Do you go to the village to see your Grandmother?
4. Where else do you like to spend your holiday?
5. Are summer holidays too long for you?

My Winter Holidays

Winter holidays are shorter than summer ones.
They begin at the end of December and last about two weeks.
It is so nice to have a rest from school.
During winter holidays we celebrate the New Year’s Eve and Christmas.
There are New Year parties for children at schools and theatres.
Cinemas show children films and cartoons.
It is usually very cold in winter, but frost and snow can’t keep children indoors.
It’s so great to go skiing down a hill.
Boys like to play hockey on the ice.
Many children go to the skating-rinks to skate.
Small children play snowballs and make snowmen, or ride on the sledges happily.
When the weather is bad, I stay at home and watch TV.
There is always something interesting on during winter holidays.
Sometimes my friends come to see me and we play computer games or listen to music.
There is also more time for reading, drawing, making model planes and other hobbies.
Holidays pass quickly and soon it’s time to go to school again.

**Vocabulary:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>indoors</td>
<td>у домі</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skating-rink</td>
<td>каток, ковзанка</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to pass</td>
<td>проходити</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sledges</td>
<td>санки</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions:**

1. How long are your winter holidays?
2. Which holidays do we celebrate during the winter holidays?
3. What is the weather like in winter?
4. What do you usually do during your winter holidays?
5. Do you like your winter holidays?
Travelling

There are moments in every person’s life when he wants to travel. Everyone understands travelling in his own way. Some people consider trips to new towns and countries offered by different tourist firms to be the best way to travel. These package tours are for the laziest. The others prefer walking tours and tourism. There is nothing more beautiful for them than walking in some pinewood, or rowing down the river in a boat, or even riding a bicycle and enjoying the landscape. There are also people who are fond of mountain climbing. The most unforgettable feeling for them is the one you have at the peak of the mountain. And the view, which opens from it, is just magnificent. The sea has also attracted mankind as one of the powers of nature. That is why sea tours are very popular among people. They offer a great possibility to enjoy the sight of the sea in different seasons and weather, and also to open some new towns and countries for oneself. For some people travelling is associated with visiting ancient cities. There one can see ancient palaces, cathedrals and fortresses, visit different museums and follow the flow of time. There also exists a very interesting and cheap kind of travelling — hitch-hiking.

Подорожі

У житті кожної людини є моменти, коли їй хочеться подорожувати. Кожний розуміє подорож по-своєму. Деякі люди вважають, що кращий вид подорожі — це поїздки в нові міста і країни, що пропонують різні туристичні фірми. Це тури для найледачіших.

Іншим подобаються піші подорожі і туризм. Для них немає нічого кращого, ніж поблукати по соснових лісах чи пропливи в човні по ріці, чи навіть прокотитися на велосипеді, насолоджуючись природою. Також є люди, яким подобається альпінізм. Для них найбільш незабутне почування — це те, що вони відчувають на вершині. А вид, що відкривається з неї, просто прекрасний. Море завжди приваблювало людство як одна зі стихій природи. Саме тому морські подорожі дуже популярні. Вони надають прекрасну можливість натішитися морем у різні пори року і при будь-якій погоді, а також відкрити для себе нові міста і країни.

Для деяких людей подорож зв’язана з відвідуванням стародавніх міст. Там можна побачити давні палаци, собори і фортеці, відвідати різні музеї і простежити хід часу. Існує також дуже цікавий і дешевий вид подорожей — автостопом.
It is very popular among young people. And it is not surprising — one can get a real adventure full of romantics. And there are also people who like exotic kinds of travelling, like travelling on a balloon. But only bold people can risk and surrender themselves wholly to the will of the wind. Speaking about different types of travelling, one should say that any of them is a good method of having a rest and spending some new unusual life.

Vocabulary:

to travel [ˈtrəvl] — подорожувати
to consider [kənˈsɪdə] — вважати
tourist [ˈtjuərɪst] — турист
package tour [ˈpækɪdʒ tʊə] — тур

to row [rəʊ] — пливти у човні

Questions:
1. What is the fastest way of travelling?  
2. Why do people travel by air?  
3. What can passengers see from a moving train?  
4. What kind of travelling do you prefer?  
5. Have you ever travelled by sea?

My Last Trip

Last time I went on a walking tour was last summer. My friends and I decided to go and find some picturesque place on the bank of the Siversky Donets. You know there is a fine pinewood on its banks. So we took all necessary things for sleeping and cooking meals with us. We chose a route of our journey and planned our trip. Our rucksacks were rather heavy, but this fact didn’t spoil our journey.
As it was a walking tour we got to the place on foot.

We set out early in the morning, the weather was perfect, and we enjoyed the freshness of the air and the silence of the morning.

There were some clouds in the sky but soon the wind took them away.

We stopped at some fine grove not far from the river.

But as there are always a lot of mosquitoes at the river — not too close to it.

All day long the sun was shining brightly, and we sunbathed and swam in the river, played volleyball and football.

Our first meal in the open air was unusual — it was a bit burnt — but we didn’t pay much attention to it.

In the evening we made a fire and sang different songs.

One of my friends plays the guitar, and he accompanied us.

As soon as we got into our sleeping bags we were fast asleep.

Early in the morning one of us went fishing.

Some time later we heard a tremendous splash.

We all ran to the river to see what had happened.

Our friend saw a huge fish and wanted to catch it with his hands, but fell into the water.

We all laughed, and that was the end of his fishing.

The day was not sunny, so we just hired a boat and ran it down the river.

Oскільки це був похід, то ми добрались до місця пішки.

Ми виступили рано вранці, погода була прекрасною, і ми насолоджувалися свіжістю повітря і тишею ранку.

У небі були хмари, але вітер незабаром їх прогнав.

Ми зупинилися в одному красивому гаї на березі річки.

Але оскільки на річці дуже багато комарів — то і не занадто близько до неї.

Весь день яскраво світило сонце, і ми купалися в річці і загоряли, грали у волейбол і футбол.

Наша перша їжа на відкритому повітрі була незвичайною — вона трішки підгоріла, але ми на це не звернули увагу.

Увечері ми розпалили багаття і співали різні пісні.

Один з моїх друзів грає на гітарі, і він нам акомпанував.

Як тільки ми забралися в спальні мішки, то відразу заснули.

Рано-вранці один із нас пішов порибалити.

Якийсь час по тому ми почули сильний сплеск.

Ми усі побігли до ріки, щоб подивитися, що ж трапилося.

Наш друг побачив велику рибу і хотів піймати її руками, але упав у воду.

Ми всі посміялися, і на цьому риболовля його закінчилася.

День не був сонячним, тому ми просто нainяли човен і попливли по річці.
We saw a lot of beautiful places, and the nature was magnificent.

It was time we went home, but no one wanted to leave.
It was an unforgettable journey.

Vocabulary:

walking tour ['wɔːkɪntʊə] — похід
heavy ['hevi] — важкий
rucksack ['rʌksæk] — рюкзак

fire ['faɪə] — багаття
tremendous [trɪˈmendəs] — сильний

Questions:

1. When did you go on a walking tour last time?
2. Did you like it?
3. Was it interesting?
4. What did you do?
5. Who chose the route of your journey?
Physical Training and Sports in Ukraine

Such kinds of sports as swimming, running, equestrian sport, wrestling and others date back to ancient times in Ukraine.

The system of military and physical training of Cossacks in Zaporizhia was built on the basis of national games and physical exercises.

First sports organizations were founded in the second half of the 19th century.

They were not numerous, among them there were aristocratic yachting clubs and also some tennis clubs.

The first of them opened in Kyiv in 1869 and in Odesa in 1895.

At the beginning of the 20th century the first athletic clubs appeared.

The first one was founded as a part of a medical centre.

In 1900 196 clubs that included nearly 8000 people existed on the territory of Ukraine.

In 1912 the first 2 months’ courses on the training of specialists in physical training were organized in Kyiv.

The first sports stadiums and centres were built in 1913 after the Olympiad.

Some sports magazines: “Sport”, “Beauty and Strength”, and others appeared the same year.

Nowadays specialists in physical training are trained by Kyiv Institute of Physical Training, in Lviv, Dnipropetrovsk and by 14 high physical training schools.

Фізична культура і спорт в Україні

Такі види спорту як плавання, біг, кінний спорт, боротьба й інші беруть початок із давніх часів в Україні.

Система військового і фізичного навчання козаків Запоріжжя ґрунтувалася на національних іграх і фізичних вправах.

Перші спортивні організації з’явилися в другій половині 19 століття.

Вони були нечисленними, серед них були аристократичні яхт-клуби і тенісні клуби.

Перші з них відкрилися в Києві у 1869 і в Одесь в 1895 роках.

На початку 20 сторіччя з’явилися перші гімнастичні клуби.

Перший з них був заснований як частина медичного центру.

У 1900 році на території України існувало 196 клубів, до яких входило близько 8000 чоловік.

У 1912 році в Києві були організовані перші двомісячні курси підготовці фахівців фізкультури.

Перші спортивні стадіони і центри були побудовані в 1913 році після олімпіади.

У тому ж році з’явилися перші спортивні жurnalи «Спорт», «Краса і сила» та інші.

У наші дні фахівці з фізкультури навчаються в Київському інституті фізкультури, у Львові, Дніпропетровську й у 14 вищих школах.
The largest stadiums are Kyiv stadium for 100 000 spectators and Kyiv Palace of Sports for 12 000 spectators.

Ukrainian voluntary sports organizations develop different sports programmes, work among young people and children. They have their own conferences once in four years. Each organization has its own banner and symbol.

There are also some international sports clubs like “Spartak” or “Progress” in Lviv, Chernivtsi and other cities.

The most popular kinds of sports in Ukraine are football, volleyball, athletics, shooting and chess. There are also special “sports uniforms” at schools, and some specialized sports schools in Ukraine.

They unite young sportmen according to their specialization.

Sports is paid much attention to in this country, as Ukrainian people were always fond of it.

Vocabulary:

**physical training** [ˈfɪzɪkəl ˈtreɪnɪŋ] — фізична культура

**sport organization** [ˈspɔːt ˈɔːɡənəɪzaʃən] — спортивна організація

**unite** [juːˈnaɪt] — об’єднувати

**stadium** [ˈstɛdɪəm] — стадіон

**voluntary** [ˈvəʊləntəri] — добровільний

Questions:

1. What kinds of sports do you know?
2. When were the first sports organizations founded in Ukraine?
3. When was the first sports stadium built?
4. What is the largest stadium in Kyiv?
5. Is sports paid much attention to in our country?
People all over the world are fond of sports and games.

Sport makes people healthy, keeps them fit, more organized and better disciplined.

Some people go in for sports for their health and some for professional aims.

There are a lot of stadiums, sports grounds, swimming pools, football fields in each town.

Practically all kinds of sports are popular in this country, but football, figure-skating and tennis enjoy the greatest popularity.

A lot of people are fond of jogging.

In the morning and in the evening we can see people jogging in the parks, stadiums and even in the streets.

In every school pupils spend much time going in for sports.

First of all they have their physical training lessons.

And after classes they may train different kinds of sport at different sports clubs and sections.

Professional sport is also paid much attention to in this country.

Every year there are a lot of sports competitions, sports days and Olympiads.

Once in four years the Olympic Games take place in different countries.

There are Summer and Winter Olympic Games.

This is a great sports competition of the best sportsmen in the world.

As for me I go in for table tennis (ping-pong).
It needs mobility, liveliness and much energy.
It keeps a person in a good form.
I have been playing tennis for five years, but the more I play the more I like it.

Vocabulary:

disciplined [dɪsəplɪnd] — дисциплінований
jogging [dʒɒgɪŋ] — біг підтюпцем
to keep fit [kɪ:p fi:t] — підтримувати в формі

Questions:

1. Are you fond of sports?
2. What do people go in for sports for?
3. Which kinds of sports are popular in our country?
4. What is your favourite kind of sports?
5. What is one of the things that makes people fit?

● The Olympic Games

The tradition of the Olympic Games runs back to ancient Greece.
We know that the first Olympic Games took place in the town of Olympia more than 2700 years ago.
There was no war in the country for these five days when sports competition took place.
It was a great athletic festival of wrestling, foot-racing, discus throwing and others.
The Games were organized and held up to the year of 393.
Then, for more than 1700 years nothing more was heard of the Olympiads.
The first modern Olympic Games were held in Athens in 1896.
They take place every fourth year.
The Games cannot take place in
a country which is at war.
That’s why there were no Olympic
Games during the two world wars.
During the Olympic Games there are
tournaments in many kinds of sports.
Summer sports competitions take
place in summer during the Summer
Olympic Games.
The Winter Olympic Games are held
the same year but in a different
country.
Famous sportsmen are proud to par­
ticipate in the Games.
They compete in football, basketball,
volleyball, boxing, weight-lifting, field
athletics, gymnastics and many other
kinds of sport.
At the Winter Olympic Games many
teams from different countries take
part in competitions in figure-skating, skiing, free-style, ice-hockey and
other winter sports.
The Olympic Games are very popular
in our country.
All sports fans see the Games on TV
and many of them see the events live
and support their national team.

**Vocabulary:**

tradition [trəˈdɪʃn] — традиція
ataltic [æθəˈletɪk] — атлетичний,
спортівні

to be held [bɪ: hold] — проводитися
competition [ˈkɒmpətʃən] — змагання

**Questions:**

1. When were the first Olympic Games held?
2. When did the first modern international Olympic Games start?
3. Why are the Olympic Games considered to be a great sports event?
4. What are the aims of the Olympic movement?
5. When and where will the summer and winter Olympic Games be held next
time?
Basketball as a game appeared at the end of the 19th century. It was introduced by one college coach during the winter of 1891—1892. He wanted to train his students between the end of the football season and the beginning of the baseball season. He placed baskets on the walls at the opposite ends of the gymnasium and organized nine-men teams who played with a ball. Each team tried to throw the ball into the other team’s basket and at the same time tried to keep that team from throwing the ball into their basket. The students had a lot of exercise, they moved a lot about the gymnasium, jumped and ran. They liked the game and called it basketball. Today the game is the same but there are some changes in it. Now there are five players in a team. This game is very popular in Europe. This game can be played indoors and outdoors.

Vocabulary:
- **basket** ['bɔːskɪt] — корзина, кошик
- **gymnasium** [dʒɪmˈnæzɪəm] — спортивний зал
- **indoor** [ɪnˈdɔːr] — у приміщенні

Questions:
1. What do you know about the history about basketball?
2. Do you like to play basketball?
3. How did this game appear?
4. How many players were there in the team?
5. What is your favourite kind of sports?
Can All People Become Champions?

We know a lot about physical training and sports. They are part of our everyday life.

Sports help people to keep in good health.
Many boys and girls are interested in sports.

They take part in sports activities, they go either to a sports club or to a sports school.

From time to time competitions are held in sports and games and we hear about new champions.

But what is the aim of such competitions?
Is it to find out those who can produce the best results?
Yes, that is one of the aims.

But the main thing is to help young people to be healthy and strong.

All people can go in for sports, but not all of them can become champions.

It’s a very difficult thing to win a victory in an athletics competition.

An athlete must train a great deal and know many things about his or her kind of sport.

At the same time it must be said that physical training and sports are very useful.

They are: tennis, athletics, hockey, football, swimming, basketball and so on. We can go on and on!
I think that during school years team sports are more interesting because they develop quick thinking, character and self control but there is no obligatory aim to become a champion.

I want someone to become a champion and advise to remember that we are playing for our school, not for yourself, with a team, not alone.

**Vocabulary:**
- **aim** [æm] — мета
- **to produce** [prəˈdjuːs] — виробляти, досягати
- **to develop** [dɪˈveləp] — розвивати
- **alone** [əˈləʊn] — один, сам

**Questions:**
1. Are many people interested in sport? How can you explain this?
2. Can you give an example to show that physical culture and sports are a part of our cultural and public life?
3. Only some of those who take part in sports activities can become champions. Why?
4. What is the main aim of sports competitions?

**My Attitude to Sports**

If you want to be healthy, strong and beautiful you should go in for sports.

Nobody likes to be stout and clumsy. We enjoy watching nice bodies of sportsmen, their strength and adroitness.

When I go in for sports I feel wonderful.

I don’t sneeze or cough.

I am cheerful, active and full of energy.

In summer I go in for swimming or rowing.

I enjoy spending winter holidays in the country.

**Моє ставлення до спорту**

Якщо ви хочете бути здоровим, сильним і красивим, вам треба займатися спортом.

Нікому не подобається бути повним і незграбним.

Нам подобається бачити красиві тіла спортсменів, їхню силу і спритність.

Коли я займаюся спортом, я дуже добре себе почуваю.

Я не чхаю і не кашляю.

Я життерадісний, активний і повний енергії.

Улітку я займаюся плаванням чи веслуванням.

Зимові канікули я люблю проводити в селі.
There I can ski or skate.

For those who have already decided to go in for sports it is very important to choose the kind of sports they like best.

Some games are quiet, others are very lively, active.

Some kinds of sports need simple equipment and facilities, others need rather complex ones.

I doubt whether the bare idea that sport is helpful to make us healthy, will make somebody go in for sports if he doesn’t like physical exercises.

That’s why the lessons of physical training at school are very important.

### Vocabulary:

- **stout** [staut] — товстий
- **clumsy** [klʌmzi] — неповороткий, неспритний
- **adroitness** [aˈdɹaɪtnəs] — спритність

### Questions:

1. What kind of sports are you fond of?
2. Is professional sports paid much attention to?
3. Do pupils in the schools go in for sports?
4. Is jogging popular in our country?
5. Which kinds of sports are popular in your class?

### Sports in Great Britain

Sport plays such an important part in British life that many idioms in the English language have come from the world of sport.

For example, “to play the game” means “to be fair”, and “that’s not cricket” means “that’s not fair”.

### Спорт у Великобританії

Спорт відіграє таку велику роль у житті британців, що багато стійких оборотів увійшли в англійську мову зі спорту.

Наприклад, «to play the game» означає «дотримуватися правила», «поводитися шляхетно», «that’s not cricket» означає «не за правилами», «нечесно».
The British are proud that many sports originated from their country and then spread throughout the world.

The national British sports are: football, golf, cricket, table tennis, lawn tennis, darts, racing.

The most popular kind of sports in Britain is football.
A lot of people support their local clubs at matches on Saturday afternoons or watch the matches live on television.

Golf is Scotland's chief contribution to British sport.

English people love cricket.

Cricket is played at schools, colleges, universities, in most towns and villages.

Test matches with other countries are held regularly.

Tennis is played by both men and women either in exclusive tennis clubs or on public tennis courts.

People all over the world know Wimbledon as the centre of lawn tennis.

The Wimbledon championship, in which the leading rackets of the world compete, is held annually in the southern suburb of London.

Englishmen like racing.

There are all kinds of racing in England: horse-racing, motor-car racing, boat-racing, dog-racing, donkey-racing.

The most famous boat race in England is between Oxford and Cambridge.
Thousands of people arrive to watch it.

You see, all kinds of sports are very popular among the British.

**Vocabulary:**

- idiom [ɪdɪəm] — сталий вираз
- national [ˈneɪʃnl] — національний
- to be proud [praʊd] — пишатися
- racing [ˈreisɪŋ] — змагання по бігу, перегони

**Questions:**

1. What are the most popular kinds of sports in Great Britain?
2. Are the English fond of sports?
3. Do the Englishmen regard themselves as good sportsmen?
4. When is cricket played in England?
5. Are the English fond of racing?
Outstanding People of Ukraine

In the history of humanity there have always been people whose actions and ideas produced a great impact on the lives of other people.

They have made a great contribution to the science, culture, social life of this country.

That’s why they are called outstanding.

The names of Taras Shevchenko, Lessya Ukrainka, Ivan Franko, Marko Vovchok and Hrygoriy Skovoroda won universal recognition.

There’s hardly a country in the world which doesn’t have Taras Shevchenko’s poems translated into its language.

Gentle melodies and deep emotions of Lessya Ukrainka’s verses are dear to poetry-lovers throughout the world.

Ukraine has also given the world many outstanding scientists.

Such names as Vernandskyi, Zabolotnyi, Bogomolets, Sklifosovskyi, Paton, Filatov are well-known all over the world.

Nowadays modern Ukrainian scientists achieved great successes in the field of mathematics, physics, biology and medicine.

Great contribution to the world’s historical science was made by such prominent Ukrainian historians as Mykola Hrushevskyi, Mykhailo Draganov, Dmytro Yavornitskyi, Mykola Kostomarov.

The Ukrainian national composer school is connected with the name of Mykola Lysenko.
M. Lysenko’s operas “Taras Bulba”, “Natalka Poltavka”, “Eneida” are still staged at the world’s opera-houses. Опери М. Лисенка «Тарас Бульба», «Наталка Полтавка», «Енеїда» і сьогодні ставлять на оперних сценах світу.

The Ukrainian fine art is represented by the names of Kostandi, Murashko, Borovikovskyi, Pymonenko. Українське образотворче мистецтво представлене іменами Костанді, Мурашка, Боровиковського, Пимоненка.

The Ukrainian culture always developed human traditions of the mankind. Українська культура завжди розвивала гуманістичні традиції людства.

**Vocabulary:**

- humanity [hjuˈmaːnəti] — людство
- contribution [ˌkɒnˈtrɪbjuːʃn] — внесок
- melody [ˈmelədi] — мелодія
- science [ˈskaɪns] — наука
- impact [ɪmˈpækt] — вплив

**Questions:**

1. Why do we call some people outstanding?
2. What Ukrainian poets are well-known all over the world?
3. Name some outstanding Ukrainian scientists.
4. Which names are connected with the Ukrainian fine art?
5. What does the Ukrainian culture develop?

---

**Taras Shevchenko**

Taras Shevchenko is a great Ukrainian poet. Тарас Шевченко — великий український поет.

He is the founder of the modern Ukrainian literary language. Він є засновником сучасної української літературної мови.

Shevchenko was born in the family of a serf in the village of Moryntsy in 1814. Шевченко народився в родині кріпака в селі Моринці у 1814 році.

Young Taras became an orphan very early. Юний Тарас дуже рано став сиротою.

He was a shepherd, a labourer to a priest and, when he was fourteen, his master took him into the manor house as a boy-servant — “kozachok”. Він був пастухом, батраком у попа, а коли йому виповнилося чотиридцять, хазяїн забрав його у свій будинок як хлопчика-слугу — «козачка».

In 1829 Shevchenko’s master moved to Vilno and then — to St Petersburg. У 1829 році хазяїн Шевченка переїхав у Вільно, а потім — у Санкт-Петербург.

He took his boy-servant with him, too. Хлопчика-слугу він узяв із собою.
Still in his early childhood Shevchenko was very fond of drawing and his master decided to make a serf painter of him.

For this purpose he sent Taras to study painting.

The boy was so talented that several Russian artists decided to free him from slavery.

Karl Brulov, the great Russian artist, painted a portrait of Vasiliy Zhukovsky and sold it for 2 500 roubles.

With this money they bought out Shevchenko from his master.

Later on the young painter continued his studies at the Petersburg Academy of Arts.

Karl Brulov influenced Shevchenko greatly.

Soon they became close friends.

In 1838 Shevchenko wrote his first poems in Ukrainian.

In 1840 he published his first book of poems which he named “Kobzar”.

His first poetical works are mainly examples of romanticism.

The subject of many poems was unhappy love.

He also wrote several poems about historical past of Ukraine.

In these works he glorified the heroic struggle of the Ukrainian people against their oppressors and their fight for national liberation (the long poem “Gaidamaky”).

In 1843 Shevchenko returned to Ukraine.
He travelled a lot about the country and learned to know the heavy life of the Ukrainian serfs.

In 1846 Shevchenko joined a revolutionary organisation — Kiril and Mephodiy Society, which aimed to liberate the serfs.

He wrote several revolutionary poems directed against the tsarist despotism (“Dream”, 1844, “The Caucasus”, 1845, and his famous “Testament”).

In 1847 he was arrested and exiled as a soldier to Orsk fortress in Kazakhstan.

Here, being a soldier, he wrote several novels in Russian.

He also painted several of his best pictures.

In 1857 Shevchenko returned from the exile to St Petersburg.

Here he published several of his masterpieces in which he criticised the tsarist regime and demanded liberty for serfs.

In St Petersburg he made close friends with well-known Russian writers — N. Chernyshevskyi, N. Dobrolubov, N. Nekrasov and others.

In 1859, when Shevchenko went to Ukraine, he was arrested and forced to return to St Petersburg — the tsarist government was afraid of the elderly poet.

On the 10th of March, Shevchenko died.

His death was a great loss for Ukrainian literature and liberation movement — A. Gertsen published a big article on Shevchenko’s death in his magazine “Kolokol” in London.

Він багато подорожував по країні і дізнавався про важке життя кріпаків в Україні.

У 1846 році Шевченко вступив у революційну організацію — Кирило-Мефодіївське товариство, що боролося за звільнення кріпаків.

Він написав кілька революційних поем, спрямованих проти царського деспотизму («Сон» (1844), «Кавказ» (1845), і його знаменитий «Заповіт»).

У 1847 році він був арештований і відданний у солдати в Орську фортецю у Казахстані.

Тут, будучи солдатом, він написав кілька повістей російською мовою.

Він також намалював кілька кращих своїх картин.

У 1857 році Шевченко повернувся із заслання в Санкт-Петербург.

Тут він опублікував кілька своїх шедеврів, у яких критикував царський режим і вимагав волі для кріпаків.

У Санкт-Петербурзі він став близьким другом відомих російських письменників — М. Чернишевського, М. Добролюбова, М. Некрасова і інших.

У 1859 році, коли Шевченко поїхав в Україну, він був арештований і насило повернутий у Санкт-Петербург — царський уряд боявся поета.

10 березня Шевченко помер.

Його смерть стала великою утратою для української літератури і визвольного руху — А. Герцен написав і опублікував велику статтю на смерть Шевченка у своєму журналі «Дзвін» у Лондоні.
Shevchenko is the favourite author of millions of Ukrainians, a real people's poet.
His works are translated into many languages.

**Vocabulary:**

- **orphan** ['ɔːfn] — сирота
- **manor** ['mænə] — садиба
- **shepherd** ['ʃɛpəd] — пастух
- **close** [kləʊz] — близький
- **St Petersburg** [səntˈpiːtərzbɔɡ] — Санкт-Петербург
- **The Caucasus** [ˈkɔkəsɔs] — Кавказ
- **to glorify** [ˈɡlɔrəfaɪ] — уславлювати
- **exile** [ˈɛksaɪl] — посилання
- **masterpiece** [ˈmæstərpiːs] — шедевр
- **people’s poet** [ˈpiːplz ˈpɜːt] — народний поет

**Questions:**

1. Who is Taras Shevchenko?
2. What do you know about Taras Shevchenko's childhood?
3. Who freed Taras Shevchenko from slavery?
4. Why was Taras Shevchenko arrested and exiled to Orsk fortress?
5. What poems did Taras Shevchenko write?

---

**Modern Ukrainian Writers**

**Oles Honchar**

Ukrainian literature contains a lot of glorious names.

Among them one can name Lina Kostenko, Pavlo Zagrebelny, Vasyl Stus, Roman Ivanychuk.

One can continue this list for many pages.

But I want to tell you about the work of Oles Honchar.

This author can justly be called the conscience of Ukraine.

In his works such problems as the good and the evil, the honour and the dishonour, the love and the hate were raised.

His book “Praporonostsi” was one of the first true stories about the

---

**Сучасні українські письменники**

**Олеся Гончар**

В українській літературі є багато славних імен.

Серед них можна назвати Ліну Костенко, Павла Загребельного, Василя Стуса, Романа Іваничука.

Можна продовжувати цей список на багато сторінок.

Але я хочу розповісти вам про творчість Олеся Гончара.

Цього автора можна справедливо назвати совістю України.

У його добутках піднімалися такі проблеми, як добро і зло, честь і безчестя, любов і ненависть.
Great Patriotic War in the Ukrainian literature.

“Tronka”, “Ziklon”, “Tvoya Zorya” — all these are the novels about the difficult fate of a person in the modern world, about his place among other people, about his moral choice.

The most famous novel “Sobor” is also about it.

This novel was unknown to the reader for a long period of time, it was banned.

Some philosophical, moral, historic and ecological problems are considered in it, in particular, the problem of the historic memory of the nation.

“Sobor” became the symbol of existance of spiritual bounds between the generations.

This novel left no one indifferent.

Unfortunately, this marvellous novel became the last written by the writer.

This outstanding man died not long ago, and this event hurt every person.

Oles Honchar is my favourite writer and I always liked his books because of their beautiful language, meaningful plots and unusual fates of the characters.

Vocabulary:

conscience [‘kɔnʃəns] — сумління
bound [baʊnd] — зв’язок

plot [plot] — сюжет
fate [feɪt] — доля

Questions:

1. Why do you think the names of modern writers are not so wide-known as they should be?
2. What problems were raised in the works of Oles Honchar?
3. Name some of his novels. Did you read them?
4. What can you tell about his novel “Sobor”?
5. Why do you like the books by Oles Honchar?
Roman Ivanchuk

I like reading and I can tell about such well-known writers as Lessya Ukrainka, Taras Shevchenko, Ivan Franko, Mykhailo Kotsiubynskyi.

But these writers belong to the previous century.

They made a great contribution to the development of our national literature.

And the names of modern writers are not so well-known as they should be.

The reason of this is that not so long ago the Ukrainian literature was far from being popular.

Such names as Lina Kostenko, Oles Honchar, Valentyn Chemerys, Vasyl Symonenko, Ivan Druch, Borys Oliynyc and others were forgotten.

Nowadays much is done for us to know them and like their works.

I would like to tell about the writer who created beautiful historical novels.

He is Roman Ivanchuk.

Roman Ivanchuk was born in 1929.

When he was a schoolboy he wrote his first poems and plays.

After the Army Service he entered the Philological Department of Lviv University.

Then Roman Ivanchuk started to work as a teacher in one of the villages in the Lviv Region.

He wrote many good stories.

They became very popular then.

He wrote his first historical novel in 1957.

Román Ivaničuk

Я люблю читати і я можу розповісти про таких відомих письменників, як Леся Українка, Тарас Шевченко, Іван Франко, Михайло Коцюбинський.

Але ці письменники належать минулому сторіччю.

Вони зробили величезний вклад у розвиток національної літератури.

А імена сучасних письменників не настільки відомі.

Причина полягає в тому, що не дуже давно українська література була далеко не популярна.

Такі імена як Ліна Костенко, Олесь Гончар, Валентин Чемерис, Василь Симоненко, Іван Драч, Борис Олійник та інші були забуті.

Зараз багато зроблено для того, щоб ми почули їхні імена і полюбили їхні твори.

Мені б хотілося розповісти про письменника, що створив прекрасні історичні романи.

Це Роман Іваничук.

Роман Іваничук народився в 1929 році.

Свої перші вірші і п’єси він написав ще в шкільному віці.

Після служби в армії він вступив на філологічний факультет Львівського університету.

Потім Роман Іваничук почав працювати учителем в одному із сіл Львівської області.

Він написав багато гарних розповідей.

Вони стали популярні в той час.

Свій перший історичний роман він написав у 1957 році.
Roman Ivanychuk wanted to show main events of our Ukrainian history in his novels.

The most famous of his novels are “Red Wine”, “Manuscript from Ruska Street”, “Water from a Stone” and others.

I like historical novels by Roman Ivanychuk because they are not only interesting but help me to learn the history of Motherland.

Vocabulary:

- to belong [bɪˈlɒŋ] — належати
- previous [ˈprɪvɪəs] — попередній
- novel [ˈnəʊvəl] — роман
- to enter [ˈentə] — вступати

Questions:

1. Name some Ukrainian writers.
2. Do you know anything about Roman Ivanychuk?
3. What works by Ivanychuk can you name?
4. Do you like his historical novels? Why?
5. What problems were raised in his novels?

Ukrainian Painters

Vasyl Kasiian

V. Kasiian was a well-known and interesting artist.

He worked in all graphic techniques — wood engraving, copper engraving, lithography and others.

His drawing and water-colours are also well-known.

He was the editor of “Taras Shevchenko: the Artist’s Heritage”, which contained all of Shevchenko’s known works.

Since 1927 Kasiian’s numerous artistic works were displayed at exhibitions.

V. Kasiian worked as a painter and book designer.

He was one of the founders of the Association of Independent Ukrainian Artists.
He also edited his journal “Mystetstvo” and organised arts exhibitions.

After his immigration to the USA he helped to found the Ukrainian Artists’ Association.

Since 1990 he has painted over 50 churches in North America and Europe.

His wall paintings and iconostases combine neo-Byzantine and modernist styles.

Vocabulary:

graphic [ˈɡræfɪk] — графічний
Heritage [ˈhɛrɪtɪdʒ] — спадщина
Byzantine [ˈbizəntɪn] — візантійський

art exhibition [ˈɑːtˌɛksɪˈbɪʃn] — мистецька виставка
founder [ˈfaʊndə] — засновник
to paint [peɪnt] — малювати

Questions:

1. What was V. Kasiian?
2. What kind of graphic techniques did he work in?
3. Who was the founder of the Association of Independent Ukrainian artists?
4. What journal did he edit?
5. Where did he immigrate?

Ilia Repin

Ilia Repin was born on the 5th of August in 1844 in Chuhuiv, Zmiiv County, Kharkiv gubernia and died on the 29th of September in 1930 in Kuokkala, Finland.

Repin, an outstanding painter, a full member of the St Petersburg Academy of Arts from 1893, started his career under I. Kramskoi at the Drawing School of the Society for the Support of Artists (1863—1864).

He studied at the Academy of Arts (1864—1871), which granted him a scholarship to study in Italy and France (1873—1876).

He joined the Perevdivznhiki Society in 1878 and the Mir Iskusstva group in 1890.
For many years he lived in St Petersburg and served as a professor (1894—1907) and the rector (1898—1899) of the Academy of Arts, where his students included the Ukrainian painters M. Pymonenko, O. Murashko, F. Krasytsky, and S. Prokhorov.

Since 1900 Repin lived in Kuokkala.

A good part of his work consists of genre paintings.

Some of the works show his attachment to Ukraine, its people, and its history.

Among them is the famous painting “The Zaporizhian Cossacks Write a Letter to the Turkish Sultan” (1880—1891), “Evening Party” (1881), “Haidamakys” (1898—1917), “Cossack in the Steppe” (1908), and “Hopak” (1926—1930, unfinished).

He painted many portraits of Russian and Ukrainian cultural figures, including A. Kuindzhi (1877), M. Kostomarov (1880, 1886), I. Kramskoi (1882), T. Shevchenko (1888), and D. Bahalii (1906).

He also did illustrations for editions of Gogol’s “Taras Bulba” (1872) and “Sorochynskiy Fair, 1882” and for his friend D. Yavorницький’s “The Zaporizhia in the Remnants of Antiquity and the Legends of the People”.

He submitted four drawings in the competition for the design of the monument to Shevchenko in Kyiv (1910—1914).

Repin sketched many Ukrainian landscapes and inhabitants.

Багато років він жив у Петербурзі й обіймав посаду професора (1894—1907), а потім ректора (1898—1899) в Академії мистецтв, де його учнями були українські художники М. Пимоненко, О. Мурашко, Ф. Красицький, С. Прохоров.

З 1900 року Рєпін жив у м. Куоккале.

Велика частина його робіт складає жанровий живопис.

Деякі його роботи показують його прихильність до України, її народу й історії.


Він написав багато портретів російських і українських культурних діячів, включаючи А. Куїнджі (1877), М. Костомарова (1880, 1886), І. Крамського (1882), Т. Шевченка (1888), Д. Багалія (1906).

Він також ілюстрував видання гоголівських «Тараса Бульби» (1872) і «Сорочинського ярмарку» (1882) і книгу свого друга Д. Яворницького «Запоріжжя в залишках старовини і переказах народу».

Він подав чотири малюнки на конкурс проектів пам’ятника Шевченкові в Києві (1910—1914).

Рєпін зробив багато начерків української природи і жителів.
Although Repin was a realist, his rich colours and restless lines often produce an almost expressionistic effect. Some of his paintings show the influence of impressionism and symbolism.

Vocabulary:

- career [ˈkərɪər] — кар’єра
- painte [ˈpeɪntə] — художник, маляр
- genre [ˈɡrɑːnər] — жанр
- Fair [fɛə] — ярмарок

Antiquity [ænˈtɪkwətɪ] — стародавність
attachment [ætˈtætʃmənt] — прихильність

Questions:

1. Where was Repin born?
2. What style did he paint in?
3. Whose poems did he illustrate?
4. What is Ilia Repin known for?
5. Have you seen his pictures in the Kharkiv gallery?

Ukrainian Musical Culture

Ukrainians are known as a musical people with a lot of folk songs and talented performers.

Groups of musicians performed during festivals and banquets at the courts of ancient princes.

The first church music came from Byzantium.

In the second half of the 11th century the Kyivan monasteries became the centres of the development of religious music in Ukraine.

The 16th and 17th centuries saw the development of the polyphonic singing.

The “Musical Grammar”, written by the composer M. Dyletskyi in 1675 was a complete description of the theory of polyphonic music.

In the 19th century in Galicia there was a school of music initiated by M. Verbytskyi and I. Lavrynskyi.

Українська музична культура

Українці відомі як музична нація з великою кількістю народних пісень і талановитих виконавців.

Групи музикантів виступали на святах і бенкетах при дворах князів.

Перша церковна музика прийшла з Візантії.

У другій половині 11 століття київські монастирі стали центром розвитку релігійної музики в Україні.

У 16—17 століттях розвивався багатоголосий спів.

«Музична граматика», написана композитором М. Дилецьким у 1675 році, була повним описом поліфонічної музики.

У 19 столітті в Галичині М. Вербицький і І. Лавринський організували музичну школу.
That century Ukrainian music was absorbed by Russian musical development.

The musical talents of Ukraine usually moved to Russia.

In that time "Music Society" was founded in Ukraine.

It established music schools, which later became conservatories in Kyiv, Kharkiv and Odesa.

The second trend of this period was the development of interest in folk music.

M. Lysenko became the main figure in this process.

By 1904 he founded a school of music in Kyiv which served as a major centre for the development of the Ukrainian music.

Lysenko Institute of Music was established in Lviv in 1903.

Nowadays Ukrainian contemporary music and folk singing enjoy growing popularity.

Most modern singers and musicians include folklore motives in their works.

Vocabulary:

folk songs [fɔːk sɔŋz] — народні пісні
festivals [ˈfestɪvəlz] — свята
banquet [ˈbæŋkwɪt] — бенкет
Byzantium [ˈbaɪzəntiəm] — Візантія
Society [səˈsəʊəti] — товариство
religious [rɪˈlɪdʒən] — релігійний

conservatory [kənˈsɜːvətri] — консерваторія
folklore [ˈfɔːklɔːr] — фольклорний
development [dɪˈveləpmənt] — розвиток
description [dɪskrɪpʃən] — опис

Questions:
1. Where were the first music schools established?
2. Where was the first institute of music set up?
3. Where did the musical talents of Ukraine usually move?
4. What vocal festivals of Ukraine do you know?
5. Who established the Institute of Music in Lviv?
Outstanding People of Ukraine

- Mykola Lysenko

Mykola Lysenko was born in Poltava gubernia in 1842 and died in Kyiv in 1912.

He was an outstanding Ukrainian composer, a pianist and a teacher.

He got his abilities of piano playing from his mother.

From 1860 he studied in Kharkiv and Kyiv Universities.

He graduated in 1865 with the degree in natural sciences.

As a member of “Gromada” in Kyiv he made a great contribution to the development of the Ukrainian music.

He continued his studies of music in Leipzig.

After returning to Kyiv he worked as a conductor and a teacher of music.

Then he moved to St. Petersburg to study at N. Rimsky-Korsakov.

He returned to Kyiv in 1904 and opened his own school of music and drama.

At that time Lysenko was in the centre of Ukrainian cultural and musical life.

He gave piano concerts about Ukraine.

His musical compositions were numerous and varied.

His works include “Natalka-Poltavka”, “Taras Bulba” and operas for children.

Lysenko wrote many compositions for the piano and the violin.

He was interested in the Ukrainian musical folklore.

- Українські музиканти

- Микола Лисенко

Микола Лисенко народився в Полтавській губернії в 1842 році і помер у Києві в 1912 році.

Він був видатним композитором, піаністом і педагогом.

Свої здібності гри на піаніно він успадкував від матері.

З 1860 року він учився в Харківському і Київському університетах.

У 1865 році він одержав диплом з природничих наук.

Як член організації «Громада» у Києві він зробив значний внесок у розвиток української музики.

Він продовжив вивчати музику в Лейпцігу.

Після повернення в Київ він працював диригентом і вчителем музики.

Він виїхав у Петербург, щоб учитися в Римського-Корсакова.

У 1904 році він повернувся в Київ і відкрив власну школу музики і драми.

У цей час М. Лисенко виявився в центрі українського культурного і музичного життя.

Він давав фортепіанні концерти по всій Україні.

Його музичні композиції були численними і різноманітними.

Його роботи: «Наталка Полтавка», «Тарас Бульба» і опери для дітей.

Лисенко написав п’єси для фортепіано і скрипки.

Він дуже цікавився українським музичним фольклором.
Lysenko was the founder of the national movement in music. He developed the Ukrainian musical culture.

**Questions:**
1. Where was N. Lysenko born?
2. What degree did he graduate the university with?
3. Where did he open his own school of music and drama?
4. What operas by Lysenko do you know?
5. What was his contribution into the Ukrainian musical culture?

**Ukrainian Scientists**

**Yevhen Paton**

Yevhen Paton was born in 1870 in a French town Nizza.

Paton was an outstanding constructor and a scientist.

Since 1929 Paton was the member of the Ukrainian Academy of Sciences.

He graduated from the Polytechnical Institute of Dresden in 1894 and St Petersburg Institute of Civil Engineers in 1896.

In 1904—1939 Paton was the professor of Kyiv Polytechnical Institute.

Heading the laboratory of testing the bridges, he formulated the main scientific principles and discovered the scientific technology of testing the bridges.
In 1896—1929 he constructed 35 bridges, among them the main bridge across the Dnieper in Kyiv. Now this bridge bears his name. In 1929 Paton organized the laboratory of electric welding, which became an Institute in 1934. Yevhen Paton died in 1953 in Kyiv.

Questions:
1. Where and when was Yevhen Paton born?
2. What was he?
3. What can you tell about Yevhen Paton?
4. What are his main contributions to the Ukrainian science?
5. What laboratory did he organize in 1929?

Vocabulary:
constructor[kənˈstrʌktə] — будівник
civil[səˈvɪl] — цивільний
polytechnical[ˌpɒlɪtekˈnɪk] — політехнічний
to discover[ˈdɪsˈkʌvə] — відкривати
electric welding[ˈɛlektriːkˈweldɪŋ] — електрозварювання
to bear[biː] — носити

Questions:
1. Where and when was Yevhen Paton born?
2. What was he?
3. What can you tell about Yevhen Paton?
4. What are his main contributions to the Ukrainian science?
5. What laboratory did he organize in 1929?

Valentyn Voino-Yasenetskyi

There were a lot of bright representatives of Ukrainian science who contributed to the world progress.

One of them was Valentyn Voino-Yasenetskyi, an outstanding surgeon and teacher.

He was born in 1877 in Kerch in the family of the pharmacist.

At the end of the 1880s the family moved to Kyiv, where they lived in Khreshchatyk.

Voino-Yasenetskyi studied at Kyiv Art School.

After graduating from it he wanted to enter St Petersburg Academy of Arts.

Questions:
1. Where and when was Valentyn Voino-Yasenetskyi born?
2. What was he?
3. What can you tell about Valentyn Voino-Yasenetskyi?
4. What are his main contributions to the Ukrainian science?
5. What school did he graduate from?

Валентин Войно-Ясенецький

Багато яскравих представників української науки зробили свій внесок у світовий прогрес.

Один з них — Валентин Войно-Ясенецький, видатний хірург і викладач.

Він народився в 1877 році в Керчі в родині провізора.

Наприкінці 1880-х родина переїхала в Київ, де вони жили на Хрещатику.

Войно-Ясенецький учився в Київській художній школі.

Щоб закінчений він хотів вступити до Санкт-Петербургської Академії мистецтв.
But he considered that a person in his life should not do what he wants but what is useful to people.

That’s why he entered the Department of Law.
He studied there one year and then in 1898 entered the Medical Department of Kyiv University.
Being a talented artist, he transferred all his love of art to the surgery.

In 1904, when the Russian-Japan war started, he left for the Far East.

He was the head of a surgical department and brilliantly conducted all his operations.
The case when Voino-Yasenetskyi operated the blind, who recovered his sight, is very famous.
It brought the surgeon wide acknowledgement.

In 1915 he published his book “Regional Anaesthesia”, illustrated by the author.
For this work Voino-Yasenetskyi was awarded the prize of Hoynatsky by Warsaw University.
He also got the degree of Doctor of Medicine.
He gave lectures on anatomy at the Medical Department of Tashkent University.
Later he was arrested and exiled to Siberia.
But he continued to serve people with all his talents and abilities.

During World War II Voino-Yasenetskyi worked in a hospital as a chief surgeon.
In 1946 he moved to Simferopol, where he continued to give lectures and operate in hospitals. He combined his work as a surgeon with the order of archbishop. Nowadays his works on anaesthesia and surgery continue to serve people, his methods are widely used in surgery. His only aim in life was to help mankind.

Vocabulary:

progress [ˈprɔgres] — прогрес
representative [ˌreprɪˈzentətɪv] — представник
world progress [ˈwɜːld ˈprɔgres] — світовий прогрес
surgeon [ˈsɜːdʒən] — хірург

pharmaceutical [ˌfaːməˈʃuːtɪkl] — фармацевтичний
acknowledgement [əkˈnɔldʒmənt] — визнання
anaesthesia [ˈænəθiːziə] — анестезія

Questions:

1. When and where was Valentine Voino-Yasenetskyi born?
2. Where did he study?
3. Why did he decide to be a surgeon?
4. When did he publish his famous book? What was its title?
5. What was his only aim in his life?
Outstanding People of Great Britain

Great Britain made a great contribution to the science, literature, music and arts of the world. It gave mankind a lot of outstanding scientists, writers and poets, musicians and painters. Thomas More, who lived in the 15th century was an outstanding humanist, scientist and statesman. His work “Utopia” brought him worldwide acknowledgement.

Many prominent people were influenced by his ideas of a free democratic state described in “Utopia”. William Shakespeare is one of the most famous writers in the world. His plays “Romeo and Juliet”, “Hamlet, Prince of Denmark”, “King Lear”, “Macbeth” were translated into almost every language and staged in every theatre.

He described the characters and feelings, which can be called international and living forever.

Daniel Defoe, Robert Burns, Walter Scott, Charles Dickens, Lewis Carroll are only a few names well-known all over the world.

William Hogarth, Sir Joshua Reynolds, Thomas Gainsborough, John Constable contributed to the world’s painting treasures.

Great Britain has also given the world many outstanding scientists.

Alexander Fleming, the discoverer of penicillin was born in Scotland.

Outstanding People of Great Britain

(Видатні люди Великобританії)

Великобританія зробила великий внесок у світову науку, літературу, музику і мистецтво. Вона дала людству багато видатних ученіх, письменників і поетів, музикантів і художників. Томас Мор, що жив у 15 сторіччі, був видатним гуманістом, ученим і державним діячем.

Його робота «Утопія» принесла йому світове визнання. Багато відомих людей перебували під впливом його ідей про вільну демократичну державу, описану в «Утопії».

Вільям Шекспір — один з найбільш відомих письменників у світі. Його п'єси «Ромео і Джульєтта», «Гамлет, принц датський», «Король Лір», «Макбет» були перекладені практично всіма мовами і поставлені в кожному театрі світу.

Він описував персонажів і почуття, які можна назвати загальнополюськими й існуючими вічно.

Деніель Дефо, Роберт Бернс, Вальтер Скотт, Чарлз Дікенс, Люйсіс Керролл — ось тільки кілька імен, широко відомих в усьому світі.

Вільям Хогарт, Сер Джошуа Рейнольдс, Томас Гейнсборо, Джон Констебл зробили внесок у світову скарбницю образотворчого мистецтва.

Великобританія також дала світу багатьох видатних ученіх.

Олександр Флемінг, відкривач пеніциліну, народився в Шотландії.

(Видатні люди Великобританії)

Великобританія зробила великий внесок у світову науку, літературу, музику і мистецтво. Вона дала людству багато видатних учених, письменників і поетів, музикантів і художників.

Томас Мор, що жив у 15 сторіччі, був видатним гуманістом, ученим і державним діячем. Його робота «Утопія» принесла йому світове визнання.

Багато відомих людей перебували під впливом його ідей про вільну демократичну державу, описану в «Утопії».

Вільям Шекспір — один з найбільш відомих письменників у світі. Його п'єси «Ромео і Джульєтта», «Гамлет, принц датський», «Король Лір», «Макбет» були перекладені практично всіма мовами і поставлені в кожному театрі світу.

Він описував персонажів і почуття, які можна назвати загальнополюськими й існуючими вічно.

Деніель Дефо, Роберт Бернс, Вальтер Скотт, Чарлз Дікенс, Люйсіс Керролл — ось тільки кілька імен, широко відомих в усьому світі.

Вільям Хогарт, Сер Джошуа Рейнольдс, Томас Гейнсборо, Джон Констебл зробили внесок у світову скарбницю образотворчого мистецтва.

Великобританія також дала світу багатьох видатних ученіх.

Олександр Флемінг, відкривач пеніциліну, народився в Шотландії.
He spent his working hours almost entirely in hospitals and laboratories. His discovery of penicillin did more to help suffering people than anything else for centuries. When he died in 1955 his old friend said: “...by his work he relieved more suffering than any other living man”.

Ernest Rutherford, a famous English physicist worked in the field of radioactivity. His brilliant researches established the existence and nature of radioactive transformations. He was one of the founders of the atomic theory of physics and creators of the first atomic model.

M. Faraday made his major discovery in the field of electricity — the electromagnetic induction. He also made several important observations on the conductivity of different materials. Enjoying world-wide popularity, Faraday remained a modest man, who rejected high titles.

All of them considered hard labour and love for mankind to be the main reason of their success.

Vocabulary:
acknowledgement [əkˈnɔlɪdʒmənt] — визнання
statesman [ˈsteɪtsmən] — державний діяч
“Romeo and Juliet” [ˈrʊmiənd ˈdʒuːliət] — «Ромео і Джульєтта»
“Hamlet, Prince of Denmark” [ˈhæmlətˈprɪnsəvˈdɛnma:k] — «Гамлет, принц Датський»
“King Lear” [ˈkɪŋlɪə] — «Король Лір»
“Macbeth” [ˈmækbəθ] — «Макбет»

Daniel Defoe [ˈdænɪəl dɛfəu] — Даниел Дефо
Robert Burns [ˈrɔbət ˈbɜːns] — Роберт Бернс
Walter Scott [ˈwɔltər ˈskɔt] — Вальтер Скотт
character [ˈkærɪktə] — персонаж
Charles Dickens [ˈtʃærlz ˈdɪkɪnz] — Чарлз Дікенс
Lewis Carroll [ˈluːɪs ˈkærəl] — Льюїс Керролл
Questions:
1. Who were the most prominent persons in British history?
2. What did they give to mankind?
3. What do you know about British writers? Name them.
4. What were the achievements of British scientists?
5. What was the main reason of their success?
At first he only helped actors and then began writing plays for them.

Soon Shakespeare’s plays were staged more and more and became famous.

The theatre where he worked was called “The Globe”.

It became the first professional theatre.

Everyone knows Shakespeare’s plays.

The most famous of them are “Othello”, “Hamlet”, “Romeo and Juliet”, “King Lear”.

Shakespeare showed the real life and relations between people.

Love and death, friendship and treason, devotion and lie are the main ideas of his plays.

Shakespeare’s works will always be interesting for all people.

Vocabulary:

to become [bɪˈkæm] — ставати

to stage [steɪdʒ] — ставити на сцені

to join [dʒɔɪn] — приєднуватись

relation [rɪˈleɪʃn] — стосунок

Questions:

1. When was William Shakespeare born?
2. How did actors perform in those times?
3. How did he begin his career?
4. What was his theatre called?
5. What are the main topics of his plays?

● Oscar Wilde

Oscar Wilde is one of the most interesting representatives of British literature.

He was born in 1856 in the Irish family.

His father was an optician, an author of some books on Irish folklore.

His mother was a poetess and was well-known in aristocratic society.

● Оскар Уайльд

Оскар Уайльд — один із найбільш цікавих представників британської літератури.

Він народився в 1856 році в ірландській родині.

Його батько був окулістом, автором книг з ірландського фольклору.

Його мати була поетесою, добре відомою в аристократичному суспільстві.
After graduating from Oxford University Wilde delivered lectures on ethics and aesthetics in Europe and America. He was accused of immoral behaviour and got into prison. After it he left for Paris where he died in 1900. He is well-known for his extraordinary talent and humour.

“The truth is rarely pure and never simple”, “There is no sin except stupidity”, “Art never expresses anything but itself” are only a few of his famous aphorisms.

He always considered the aesthetic feeling of a person to be the moving force of human development. Wilde’s fairy-tales always depicted the union between the good and the beauty. Every detail in his lyrical fairy-tales has symbolic meaning.

“The Picture of Dorian Gray” is one of his most famous novels. It is a story of a young man Dorian Gray. Under the influence of Lord Henry, his spiritual “teacher”, Dorian becomes an immoral murderer. Despite this fact his face remains young and beautiful. But his portrait painted by his friend reflects Dorian’s immorality and cruelty.

Thrusting a knife into his portrait Dorian kills himself. His face becomes ugly while the portrait shines with perfect beauty. Oscar Wilde’s literary heritage is very large and his works are often staged nowadays.
Vocabulary:

- **optician** [ˈɒptɪʃən] — окуліст
- **poetess** [ˈpoʊətəs] — поетеса
- **ethics** [ˈɛθɪks] — етика
- **Oscar Wilde** [ˈɒskər ˈwайлд] — Оскар Уайльд
- **behaviour** [ˈbeɪvjuər] — поведінка
- **feeling** [ˈfɛlɪŋ] — почуття
- **Paris** [ˈpærɪs] — Париж
- **Dorian Gray** [ˈdɔrɪən ˈɡreɪ] — Доріан Грей

Questions:

1. Where and when was Oscar Wilde born?
2. What were his parents?
3. Was his life easy?
4. Do you know his famous aphorisms?
5. What is his most famous novel? Say some words about it.

---

Rudyard Kipling

Rudyard Kipling is one of the outstanding British writers.

He was born in 1865 in the family of an Englishman in India.

He got his education in England but returned to India in 1882.

There he spent 6 years working in colonial English press.

There he published his first literary works.

In 1890 he published his first novel “The Light that Failed”, which brought him fame.

He was one of the most popular writers of his time.

During his life he visited South Africa, Australia, New Zealand and Japan.

“Plain Tales from the Plain Hills”, “Barrack Room Ballads”, “Naulakka” enjoyed great popularity.

During the years of Anglo-Boer War Kipling used to visit the English Army.

His novel “Kim” was written under the impressions of the War.

In October 1902 his “Just so Stories for Little Children” were published.

---

Редьярд Кіплінг

Редьярд Кіплінг — один з видатних англійських письменників.

Він народився в 1865 році в родині англійця в Індії.

Він одержав освіту в Англії, але повернувся в Індію в 1882 році.

Там він провів 6 років, працюючи в колоніальній англійській пресі.

Там же він опублікував свої перші літературні праці.

У 1890 році він опублікував свій перший роман «Світло згасло», що призвело йому популярність.

Він був одним із найбільш популярних письменників свого часу.

За своє життя він відвідав Південну Африку, Австралію, Нову Зеландію і Японію.

«Прості розповіді з пагорбів», «Казармені балади», «Наулакка» були дуже популярні.

У роки англо-бурської війни Кіплінг відвідував англійську армію.

Його роман «Кім» був написаний під враженням війни.

У жовтні 1902 року були опубліковані «От так казки для маленьких дітей».
His fairy-tales from the book were rather unusual for the British literature of that period.

One can find the influence of Lewis Carroll’s “Alice in Wonderland” in Kipling’s work.

But this influence didn’t prevent Kipling from creating absolutely new, unusual fairy-tales.

The unusual effect of his tales is reached by the rhythm and the music of words.

Those who were lucky to listen to Kipling reading his fairy-tales noted that they always sounded truthful.

Besides, not only children but even adults were very fond of “Just so Stories”.

Together with “The Jungle Book” it still enjoys great popularity.

Every year the children in “Kipling Society” write continuation to his fairy-tales.

In 1907 Kipling was awarded the Nobel Prize.

Questions:
1. What do you know about Kipling’s childhood?
2. When did he publish his first novel?
3. How is the unusual effect of his tales reached?
4. What tales did you read? What are they about?
5. What was Kipling awarded in 1907?
Charlotte Brontë
Charlotte Brontë is a unique English writer of the 19th century. Her literary works were characteristic for the English realism trend. She was born in 1816 in Yorkshire.

Charlotte was the third child in the family. Her father was Irish and he was a cleric of England Church. Charlotte's mother died in 1821 and the children were cared for by their aunt, Elizabeth Branwell. Charlotte attended the Clergy Daughter's School. After it she worked as a teacher and a governess. In 1846 “Poems” written by the three Brontë sisters were published. Charlotte Brontë's novel “Jane Eyre”, published under the pseudonym Currer Bell brought her fame. Her other novels “Shirley” and “Villette” were not so famous. “Villette” is one of the first psychological novels in the English literature of that period, and later it was developed by different writers. “Jane Eyre” is an autobiographical novel. It is a story about a shy, but independent girl, Jane Eyre. From her childhood she learned to be independent and rely only on herself. Jane studied at Lowood institution for poor children, and worked as a teacher and later as a governess. She fell in love with her master, Mister Rochester, but found out that he was already married.

Шарлотта Бронте
On the eve of their wedding she left his house and started a new life.
At the end of the novel Jane married Rochester who had lost his wife and got blind.
A lot of screen versions of the novel were made, and it is still read with great interest nowadays.

Vocabulary:
Charlotte Bronte [ˈʃərlot brɔnti:] — Шарлотта Бронте
Yorkshire [ˈjɔ:kəri] — Йоркшир
Clergy [ˈklɛrә] — духівництво
“Jane Eyre” [dʒiˈni: ˈeə] — «Джейн Ейр»
“Shirley” [ʃəˈreɪ] — «Ширлі»
Lowood [ˈluːwud] — Лувуд
unique [ˈjuːnɪk] — унікальний
trend [trend] — напрямок
pseudonym [ˌsjuːdəˈnɪm] — псевдонім
governess [ˈɡəʊvənəs] — гувернантка

Questions:
1. What do you know about Brontё’s childhood?
2. Who wrote “Poems” in 1846?
3. What Brontё’s novel brought her fame?
4. What other novels do you know? Have you read them?
5. What is “Jane Eyre” about?

Robert Burns
Robert Burns is the world famous Scottish poet.
He was born in a small village in the south-west of Scotland.
The village is called Alloway.
In Alloway visitors can see this clay built cottage.
Robert Burns was born here on January 25th, 1759.
The cottage belonged to William Burns, Robert’s father.
The family was quite poor but hard working, honest and proud.
Many years later Robert Burns wrote: “The cottage leaves the palace far behind”.
When Robert’s father died, Robert was left to farm for himself.

Robert Бернс
Роберт Бернс — всесвітньо відомий шотландський поет.
Він народився в невеликому селі на південному заході Шотландії.
Назва села Еловей.
У цьому селі відвідувачі можуть побачити глиняний котедж.
Роберт Бернс народився тут 25 січня 1759 р.
Котедж належав Вільямові Бернсово ві, батьку Роберта.
Родина була зовсім бідна, але працьовита, чесна і горда.
Через багато років Роберт писав: «Будь-якому палацу далеко до моєго котеджу».
Коли батько Роберта помер, Роберт залишився, щоб самому господарювати.
Robert Burns built this cottage at his farm near the town of Dumfries.

“An honest man’s the noblest work of God”.

Burns engraved these words on the window glass.

Though being a famous poet Burns was quite poor.

The farm proved a failure.

Burns sold the farm and moved to Dumfries.

There he became a small government official.

Robert Burns was 27 when his first book of poems was published.

It was called “Poems chiefly in Scottish Dialect”.

“O, Scotia! My dear native soil!” wrote Burns.

This old church and this old bridge in Alloway saw the adventures of Tam O’Shanter who tried to run away from devils and witches.

“Tam O’Shanter”, one of the best poems written by Robert Burns, followed the tradition of popular ballads and songs.

Robert Burns was buried at Dumfries.

He died of heart disease on the 21st of July, 1796.

He was only 37 years old.

Robert Burns was a great son of the Scottish people.

Vocabulary:

Alloway [əˈlaʊə] — Еловей

engrave [ɪnˈgreɪv] — гравірувати

to prove [pruːv] — виявлятися

Dumfries [ˈdʌmfriːz] — Дамфріс

Scotia [ˈskɒtʃə] — Шотландія

failure [ˈfeɪlə] — провал

to bury [ˈbɜːri] — ховати
Questions:
1. Where and when was Robert Burns born?
2. What was his family like?
3. Where did Burns build his cottage?
4. What words were on the window glass engraved?
5. When was his first book published?

British Painters

Joseph Turner

Joseph Turner, the greatest English romantic landscape painter, was born in Covent Garden, London, on the 23rd of April in 1775.

He was the son of a fashionable barber.

He started drawing and painting as a small boy.

His father used to sell the boy’s drawings to his customers.

In such a way he earned money which his father paid for his lessons in art.

At the age of 14 he entered the Royal Academy School.

His water-colours were exhibited at the Royal Academy from the time he was fifteen.

At 18 he set up his own studio.

Turner worked at first in water-colours, then in oils.

Between 1802 and 1809 Turner painted a series of sea-pieces, among them “Sun Rising in Mist”.

The masterpieces of this period are “The Lake of Geneva”, “Frosty Morning”, “Crossing the Brook”, etc.

In 1819 Turner got out on his first visit to Italy.

During the journey he made about 1500 drawings and the next few
years he painted a series of pictures inspired by what he had seen.

Turner was the master of the air and wind, rain and sunshine, horizon, ships and sea.

He dissolved the forms of his landscape in the play of light and shade, he anticipated the work of French Impressionist paintings.

During his life Turner painted hundreds of paintings and thousands of water-colours and drawings.

On his death Turner's own entire collection of paintings and drawings was willed to the nation and they are in the National and the Tate Galleries.

Vocabulary:

Covent Garden ['kɒvənt 'ɡɑːdn] — Ковент-Гарден
landscape ['lændskɪp] — пейзаж
barber ['bɑːbə] — перукар
water-colours ['wɔtəkələz] — акварелі
oils ['ɔɪlz] — олійна фарба
Royal ['rɔːl] — королівський
Geneva [dʒiːˈnɛvə] — Женева

Questions:

1. Who was Joseph Turner?
2. How old was he when he set up his own studio?
3. What are his famous masterpieces?
4. How many pictures and drawings did he make?
5. Where is the collection of paintings now?

● Thomas Gainsborough

Thomas Gainsborough was a master of English school of painting.

He was a portraitist and a landscape painter.

He was born in Sudbury in 1727 and was the son of a merchant.

His father sent him to London to study arts.

He spent 8 years working and studying in London.

There he got acquainted with the Flemish traditional school of painting.
In his portraits green and blue colours predominate.
He was the first British painter who painted British native countryside.

He painted a wagon of hay, a poor cottage, poor peasants.
His works of landscape contain much poetry and music.

His best works are “Blue Boy”, “The Portrait of the Duchess of Beaufort”, “Sara Siddons” and others.

The particular discovery of Gainsborough was the creation of a form of art in which the characters and the background form a single unity.

The landscape is not kept in the background, but in most cases man and nature are fused in a single whole through the atmospheric harmony of mood.

Gainsborough emphasized that the natural background for his characters should be nature itself.

His works, painted in clear and transparent tones, had a considerable influence on the artists of the English school.

He was in advance of his time.
His art became a forerunner of the Romantic Movement.

Vocabulary:
Sudbury [ˈsʌdberi] — Садбері
Flemish [ˈflemɪʃ] — фламандський
merchant [ˈmɑːtʃənt] — купець

to acquaint [əˈkwent] — знайомитися
to emphasize [ˈemfəsaɪz] — підкреслювати

background [ˈbækgrəund] — фон

to predominate [priˈdɒmɪneɪt] — перевищувати
transparent [trəsˈpeərənt] — прозорий

Duchess of Beaufort [ˈdʌfɪsəv ˈbɔːfərt] — герцогиня Бофер

Questions:
1. When and where was he born?
2. What colours predominate in his pictures?
3. What are the best works of Gainsborough?
4. What did his art become?
John Constable, one of the greatest landscape painters, was born in Suffolk, on June 11, 1776. He was the son of a wealthy miller. He began to take interest in landscape painting while he was at grammar school. His father did not favour art as a profession. As a boy Constable worked almost secretly, painting in the cottage of an amateur painter. His keen artistic interest was such that his father allowed him to go to London in 1795, where he began to study painting. In 1799 Constable entered the Royal Academy School in London. He was the first landscape painter who considered that every painter should make his sketches direct from nature, that is, working in the open air. Constable’s art developed slowly. He tried to earn his living by portraits. His heart was never in this and he achieved no popularity. Constable was a realist. He put into his landscape cattle, horses, the people working there. He put the smiling meadows, the sparkle of the sun on rain, or the stormy and uncertain clouds. The most notable works of Constable are “Flatford Mill”, “The White Horse”, “The Hay Wain”, “Waterloo Bridge”, “From Whitehall stairs” and others.

Джон Констебль
Джон Констебль, один з найвидоміших пейзажистів, народився в Саффорді 11 червня 1776 року. Він був сином заможного мірошника. Він почав цікавитися живописом ще в початковій школі. Його батько не схвалив мистецтво як професію. Хлопчиком Констебль працював по-тайні, малюючи в будинку художника-аматора. Його інтерес до мистецтва переконав батька відправити його в 1795 році в Лондон, де він почав вивчати живопис. У 1799 році Констебль вступив до школи при Королівській Академії в Лондоні. Він був першим з пейзажистів, хто вважав, що необхідно робити замальовки з натури, тобто працювати на відкритому повітрі. Майстерність Констебля розвивалася поступово. Він почав заробляти на життя, малюючи портрети. Його серце ніколи не лежало до цього, і тому він не завоював популярності. Констебль був реалістом. На своїх полотнах він зображував велику рогату худобу, коней і людей, що працюють там. Він малював блискучі від роси луки, іскри сонця в краплях дощу і суворі грозові хмари. Найвідоміші роботи Констебля — «Млин у Флатфорда», «Білий кінь», «Віз сіна», «Міст Батерлоо», «Зі сходинок Уайтхолла» та ін.
In England Constable never received the recognition that he felt he was due. The French were the first to acclaim Constable publicly. His influence upon foreign painting schools has been powerful. Constable may truly be considered the father of modern landscape painting.

Vocabulary:

- miller [ˈmɪlə] — мірошник
- secretly [ˈsɪkrətli] — потайки
- sketch [sketʃ] — замальовка, начерк
- Royal [ˈrəʊəl] — королівський
- Waterloo [ˈwɔtəluː] — Ватерлоо
- open air [ˈəʊpən eə] — відкрите повітря
- to earn [ɛən] — заробляти

Questions:

1. What was John Constable?
2. Did his father favour art as a profession?
3. What did he say about painters?
4. What pictures did he paint?
5. What has his influence been powerful upon?

British Musicians and Actors

George Handel

A musical giant of the late baroque period, George Frederic Handel was born in Germany but spent most of his adult life in England. He successfully combined German, French, Italian, and English musical styles in about 40 operas, 20 oratorios, and numerous other vocal pieces, instrumental works, and church music. Handel was born on February 23, 1685, in Halle in Saxony. In addition to musical studies, he was trained in the law at Halle University. Although appointed an organist of the Halle Cathedral in 1702, he moved...
to Hamburg the next year, where he obtained a position as a violinist in the opera orchestra.

His “St John Passion” was performed in 1704 and his first opera, “Almira”, in 1705.

Then Handel went to Italy, which was the musical centre of Europe, where his work was already known.

He met the leading musicians of the day and composed the operas “Rodrigo” and “Agrippina”, many Italian solo cantatas, Latin Church music, and the oratorio.

In 1710 Handel left for London. His opera “Rinaldo” was received enthusiastically in London in 1711.

His “Ode for the Queen’s Birthday” and his work in celebration of the Treaty of Utrecht in 1713 won him a royal pension.

As a composer, producer, and director of operas, Handel continued his work until 1741 despite changing public tastes and financial problems.

In 1718 he became the director of music to the duke of Chandos, for whom he composed the 12 “Chandos Anthems”.

He also composed “Haman and Mordecai”, later reworked as “Esther”.

His famous “Messiah” was written for a performance in Dublin, Ireland, in 1742.

After recovering from several periods of poor health, Handel began to have trouble with his eyes in 1751.

Two years later he was nearly blind.

He died on April 14, 1759, and was buried in Westminster Abbey.
Vocabulary:

baroque [bəˈroʊk] — бароко
George Frederic Handel [ˈdʒɔːdʒ ˈfriːdərɪk ˈhændəl] — Джордж Фредерик Гендель
Germany [ˈdʒɜːmnɪ] — Німеччина
Halle University [ˈhælə] — Галльський університет
musical giant [ˈmjuːzɪkal ˈdʒaɪənt] — музичний велетень
to combine [kəmˈbain] — поєднувати
to compose [kəmˈpəuz] — створювати
church music [ˈtʃɜːtʃ mjuːzɪk] — церковна музика
public tastes [ˈpʌblɪk teɪsts] — громадський смак
Saxony [ˈsæksənɪ] — Саксонія
Treaty of Utrecht [ˈtriːtiəv ˈjuːtɛk] — Утрехтський договір
Duke of Chandos [ˈdjuːk əv ˈtʃændəʊs] — герцог Шандос
Anthems [ˈænθəmz] — гімни
“Esther” [ˈɛstə] — «Естер»

Questions:
1. Where did George Frederic Handel live and when was he born?
2. What musical styles did he combine in his different music?
3. How many operas, oratorios, vocal pieces and other works did he create?
4. What did he win in 1713?
5. Where was he buried in 1759?

● Henry Purcell

The most original English composer of his time, Henry Purcell composed for the church, stage, and court and for private entertainment.

He combined thorough knowledge of past musical achievements with obvious interest in the work of his contemporaries, especially Italian music of the 17th century.

Purcell was born in Westminster (now part of Greater London), England, probably in 1659.

As far as it is known he spent his entire life in Westminster.

His father was a musician in service to the king, and Purcell received his early training as a chorister in the Chapel Royal.

He held various posts, including that of organ tuner at Westminster Abbey.

Purcell became one of the organists at the Chapel Royal in 1682.

● Генрі Перселл

Найбільш самобутній композитор свого часу Генрі Перселл писав музику для церкви, сцени, двору і для приватних розваг.

Він поєднував гарні знання музичних досягнень минулого з явним інтересом до робіт його сучасників, особливо до італійської музики 17 століття.

Перселл народився у Вестмінстері (тепер частина Лондона) в Англії в 1659 році.

Наскільки відомо, він провів усе своє життя у Вестмінстері.

Його батько був музикантом на службі в короля, і Перселл одержав освіту як хорист у Королівській Капелі.

Він займав різні посади, включаючи посаду настроювача органа у Вестмінстерському Абатстві.

Перселл став одним з органістів у Королівській Капелі у 1682 році.
After the death of King Charles II in 1685, he devoted much of his time to writing music for the stage.

Purcell’s compositions, many of which were not published until after his death, include numerous songs.

His opera “Dido and Aeneas” was first performed in 1689.

He also wrote music for the harpsichord and music for various combinations of instruments.

His instrumental music includes 13 fantasias for ensembles of varied numbers of viols and a series of sonatas for strings with organ or harpsichord.

He also composed music for 43 plays.

His music for “The Fairy Queen” (1692) is an adaptation of William Shakespeare’s “Midsummer Night’s Dream”.

His songs, while not quite operas, are still more than mere plays with added music.

Purcell’s work for the Chapel Royal includes a number of odes — six written for the birthday of Queen Mary and four for St Cecilia’s Day — and the anthem “My Heart Is Inditing” (1685), written for the coronation of James II.

Purcell left his last work, the opera “The Indian Queen” (1695), unfinished at his death.

It was completed by his brother Daniel.

Purcell died in London on November 21, 1695.

Vocabulary:

Henry Purcell [ˈhenrɪ ˈpɜːrsl] — Генрі Перселл
Chapel Royal [ˈtʃeɪpl ˈrəʊxl] — королівська каплиця
“Dido and Aeneas” [ˈdaɪdəʊənd ˈiːnɪs] — «Дідона та Еней»

harpsichord [ˈhɑːpsɪkɔːrd] — клавесин
Fairy [ˈfeərɪ] — чарівний, казковий
St Cecilia’s Day [ˈsænts.siːliə] — День Святої Сесілії
obvious [ˈɒbviəs] — явний, дійсний
unfinished [ʌnˈfɪnɪt] — незакінчений
Dame Edith Evans (1888—1976)

Dame Edith Evans is a famous English actress.

She made her first appearance on the stage in 1912 as an amateur, playing in Shakespeare's “Troilus and Cressida”.

She then became a professional actress and toured with Even Terry.

She was with many companies playing roles in the plays by Shakespeare, Shaw, Wilde, Congreve, Wycherley, Sheridan, Chekhov.

Dame Edith had an enormous success playing the part of Millament.

The actress had to reflect a very real, feministic woman and had to be checked a bit.

Dame Edith concentrated her talent on the style of the character and didn't think too much about being great but she thought exceedingly much about being true in a part.

There are some parts of the play which are very hard work for the actress but she did all her best to play in a very good way.

Dame Edith always remembered the words that “Mankind marches forward, perfecting its strength.

Everything that is unattainable for us will be near and clear one day; but we must work; we must help

Questions:
1. What kind of music did Henry Purcell compose?
2. Where was he born?
3. Did he write music for musical instruments?
4. What are his famous songs, operas and odes?
5. Was Henry Purcell's last work finished?

Дейм Едіт Іванс (1888—1976)

Дейм Едіт Іванс — відома англійська акторка.

Вона вперше з'явилася на сцені в 1912 р. як аматор у п'єсі Шекспіра «Тройлес і Крессида».

Потім вона стала професійною акторкою і подорожувала з Івеном Тері.

Вона зіграла багато ролей у п'єсах Шекспіра, Шоу, Вайлда, Конгрива, Вичерлі, Шеридана, Чехова.

Дейм Едіт мала величезний успіх, граючи роль Мілламент.

Акторка повинна була зіграти справжню феміністку і повинна була відповідати цьому образу.

Дейм Едіт зосередила своє вміння на створенні образу і не думала про те, щоб стати великою, але вона думала надзвичайно багато над тим, щоб зіграти правдиво свою роль.

У п'єсі є моменти, які акторці важко грати, але вона робила все можливе, щоб зіграти щонайкраще.

Дейм завжди пам'ятала слова: «Людство рухається вперед, використовуючи свою силу.

Усе, що недосяжно для нас, одного разу виявиться близьким і зрозумілим; але ми повинні працювати; ми
with all our force those who seek for truth..."
That's why Dame Edith has become a famous actress.
She said that her task was to govern the audience and never let it run away from the play.

Vocabulary:

**amateur** ['æmətə] — аматор, любитель

**tour** [tɔə] — подорож

**Congreve** ['kɔŋɡriːv] — Конгрив

**Wycherley** ['wɪtʃəliː] — Вічерлі

**to reflect** [riˈflekt] — відбивати

**to be checked** — toym: відповідати

**exceedingly** [ɪkˈsiːdɪŋli] — надзвичайно

**strength** [ˈstreŋθ] — сила

**unattainable** ['ʌnəˈteɪnəbl] — недосяжний

**to seek** [siːk] — шукати

**to govern** ['gʌvən] — керувати

**audience** ['ɔːdiəns] — публіка

Questions:

1. Who was Dame Edith?
2. When did she appear on the stage?
3. Then she became a professional actress, didn’t she?
4. What role brought her an enormous success?
5. What was her attitude to the theatre?

**Thomas Betterton’s an Ideal Model for Actors**

Thomas Betterton, the leading actor of the second half of the 17th century, appeared first on the London stage in 1660.

An original and inventive actor, he was greatly admired in his own days by many of his contemporaries.

He was Macbeth, Henry VIII, Mercutio, King Lear, Othello and Brutus.

Betterton’s admirers endowed him with the great virtues: passionate feeling, variety in characterization and judicious use of the voice instead of exhibitions of lung power for easy applause.

**Томас Беттертон — ідеальний приклад для акторів**

Томас Беттертон, видатний актор другої половини 17 століття, уперше з’явився на лондонській сцені в 1660 році.

Оригінальний і винахідливий актор, він захоплював у ті дні своїх сучасників.

Він був у ролі Макбета, Генріха VIII, Меркуціо, Короля Ліра, Отелло і Брута.

Шанувальники Беттертона наділяли його величезними достойностями: паліксть у почуттях, розмаїтість у характеристиці і розважливість у використанні голосу замість показу сили легень.
Dignity in his work and personal life made Betterton the model for actors.

Many observers were impressed by Betterton’s acting in specific scenes.

Richard Steele, in “The Tatler” described a few important moments in “Othello”, while “The Laureat”, in 1740, quoted the memories of an old playgoer who remembered Betterton’s Hamlet upon meeting the Ghost.

One of Betterton’s admirers wrote about Mr. Betterton’s performing this part of Hamlet: he has observed the actor’s countenance in the Scene of the fourth act when his Father’s Ghost appears.

Through the violent and sudden emotions of amazement and horror it turns instantly on the sight of his Father’s spirit, as pale as his neckcloth.

You can imagine well enough what loud applause accompanied this exit!

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to admire</td>
<td>захоплюватися</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macbeth</td>
<td>Макбет</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercutio</td>
<td>Меркуціо</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King Lear</td>
<td>Король Лір</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Othello</td>
<td>Отелло</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brutus</td>
<td>Брут</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admirer</td>
<td>прихильник</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to endow</td>
<td>наділяти</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(якостями)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passionate</td>
<td>палкий</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtue</td>
<td>гідність</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laureat</td>
<td>придворний поет</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ghost</td>
<td>примара, дух</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judicious</td>
<td>розсудливий</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variety</td>
<td>різноманітність</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dignity</td>
<td>звання</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>countenance</td>
<td>вираз обличчя</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lung</td>
<td>легені</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to quote</td>
<td>посилатися</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions:

1. When did Thomas Betterton appear on the London stage?
2. What roles did he act?
3. How did Betterton’s admirers endow him?
4. Many observers were impressed by Betterton’s acting, weren’t they?
Charles Spencer Chaplin

With shoes and trousers too big for him, and jacket too tight, moustache, bowler hat and walking cane the famous tramp portrayed by Charlie Chaplin as the little man suffering all unfair things of life.

He produced a figure that would be immortal in film history.

Charlie Chaplin was born in London as the son of a poor variety artist and appeared on the stage when was a child.

During a tour of the USA in 1913 he was offered an engagement by the Keystone film company.

His role in the film “The Tramp” made him world-famous during the 1920s.

He also played in such films as “The Child” and “The Gold Rush” produced by United Artists, a film company he founded in 1919 together with Mary Pickford and others.

Chaplin continued his work when the “talkies” appeared and produced such film as “Modern Times” and his masterpiece “The Great Dictator”.

After the Second World War he settled down in Switzerland.

He died in 1977.

Although he became famous in the USA he remained a British citizen all his life.

Vocabulary:

- moustache [məˈstɑːʃ] — вуса
- bowler hat [ˈbəʊlə hæt] — капелюх
- tramp [træmp] — бродяга
- unfair [ʌnˈfeə] — несправедливий
- immortal [ɪˈmɔːrəl] — вічний, неумираючий
- engagement [ɪnˈɡeɪdʒmənt] — запрошення
- masterpiece [ˈmæstəˈpiːs] — шедевр
- settle down [ˈsetl] — поселитися, укластися
- citizen [ˈsɪtɪzn] — громадянин
- Switzerland [swɪtʃəʊənd] — Швейцарія
British Scientists

Isaac Newton — the Great English Scientist

Isaac Newton was a great English scientist.

He was born in 1642 in a little village in Lincolnshire: Newton's father was a farmer and died before his son's birth.

When Newton was 15, his uncle removed him from school because he wanted to make a farmer of him.

But a young Isaac was a bad farmer and his uncle sent him to the University of Cambridge.

After graduation from the University he became a professor of Mathematics and lectured at Cambridge for more than 30 years.

In 1665 the great plague broke in England and Cambridge was closed — Newton had to return home for eighteen months.

It was the most important period in his life when he made his three great discoveries — those of the differential calculus, of the nature of white light and of the law of gravitation.

He advanced an idea that light consisted of small particles — corpuscles (today the scientists call them photons).

British Scientists

Isaac Newton — the Great English Scientist

Isaac Newton was a great English scientist.

He was born in 1642 in a little village in Lincolnshire: Newton's father was a farmer and died before his son's birth.

When Newton was 15, his uncle removed him from school because he wanted to make a farmer of him.

But a young Isaac was a bad farmer and his uncle sent him to the University of Cambridge.

After graduation from the University he became a professor of Mathematics and lectured at Cambridge for more than 30 years.

In 1665 the great plague broke in England and Cambridge was closed — Newton had to return home for eighteen months.

It was the most important period in his life when he made his three great discoveries — those of the differential calculus, of the nature of white light and of the law of gravitation.

He advanced an idea that light consisted of small particles — corpuscles (today the scientists call them photons).

Questions:

1. Who was Charles Spencer Chaplin?
2. What is he famous for?
3. When was he born? Where?
4. What films did he play?
5. Where did he live after the World War II?
6. Have you seen any films with Charlie Chaplin? Did you like them?
Later on he, however, came to the conclusion that light had a dual nature, namely, it was a combination of the corpuscles and the ethereal waves.

Newton was also interested in the problem of what was the cause of the motion of the planets.

He came to the conclusion that the force that kept the planets in the orbits round the Sun was the same force that caused objects to fall onto the ground, namely, the force of gravity.

A popular legend says that he made this discovery while observing the fall of an apple from a tree in his garden.

But only in 1684 Newton published his famous book the “Principia” in which he explained the movement of the planets and laid down the law of universal gravitation.

This book made a great contribution to Physics and Mathematics: the publication of the “Principia” was compared to a sunrise, but Newton himself was always modest.

Newton was not only theorist but a great inventor, too: he invented a mirror telescope.

The demonstration of the mirror telescope made a great impression on the contemporaries and in 1672 Newton was elected a member of the Royal Scientific Society.

In 1695 Newton was appointed an inspector at the Royal Mint; there he was in charge of coining new English money.

In 1703 Newton was elected a President of the Royal Scientific Society.

For the last time he attended its meeting in February, 1727.

Пізніше він, однак, прийшов до висновку, що світло має двоїсту природу, а саме, що воно є сполученням корпускул і ефірних хвиль.

Ньютон також цікавився проблемою причини руху планет.

Він прийшов до висновку, що сила, що тримає планети на орбітах навколо Сонця, це та ж сама сила, що змушує предмети падати на землю, а саме, сила ваги.

Відома легенда говорить, що він зробив це відкриття, коли спостерігав падіння яблука з дерева у своєму саду.

Але тільки в 1684 році Ньютон опублікував свою знамениту книгу «Початки», у якій він пояснив рух планет і сформулював закон всесвітнього тяжіння.

Ця книга зробила величезний внесок у фізику і математику: публікація «Початків» була подібна сходу сонця, але сам Ньютон завжди був скромний.

Ньютон був не тільки теоретиком, але і великим винахідником: він винайшов дзеркальний телескоп.

Демонстрація дзеркального телескопа справила величезне враження на сучасників, і в 1672 році Ньютон був обраний членом Королівського наукового товариства.

У 1695 році Ньютон був призначений інспектором Королівського монетного двору; там він відповідав за карбування нових англійських грошей.

У 1703 році Ньютон був обраний президентом Королівського наукового товариства.

Востаннє він відвідав його засідання в лютому 1727 року.
On March 20, the same year he died and was buried in Westminster Abbey.

There is a monument to Newton in Trinity College at Cambridge with the inscription: “Newton Who Surpassed All Men of Science”.

Vocabulary:

Isaac Newton [ˈaɪzək ˈnjuːtən] — Ісаак Ньютон
Lincolnshire [ˈlɪŋkənʃə] — Лінкольншир
Trinity [ˈtrɪnətɪ] — Трійця
plague [pleɪɡ] — чума
differential calculus [ˌdɪfəˈrɛnʃəl ˈkælkjʊləz] — диференційнечислення
particle [ˈpɑːtɪkl] — частка
corpuscle [ˈkɔːrpəs] — корпускула, частица
to advance an idea [ədˈvɑːns] — висунути ідею
to come to conclusion [kəm tə ˈkənkləʒən] — приходити до впевненості
to lay down [leɪ daʊn] — формулювати

to be in charge of [tʃeɪdʒ] — відповідати за
ether [ˈeθər] — ефір
gravity [ˈɡreɪvɪtɪ] — тяжіння
mirror telescope [ˈmɪrər ˈtelɪskəp] — дзеркальний телескоп
contemporary [ˈkənˈteɪmprəri] — сучасник
to appoint [əˈpent] — призначати
to coin [kɔɪn] — карбувати (монети)
to surpass [səˈpɜːs] — перевершувати
ethereal [ˈeθərəl] — ефірний
dual [djuːəl] — подвійний
namely [ˈnɛmli] — а саме
the Royal Mint [ˈrəʊəl mint] — Королівський монетний двір

Questions:

1. Who was Isaac Newton?
2. What do you know about Isaac Newton’s childhood?
3. What did Newton do after graduation from the University?
4. Why do we say that 1665—1666 was the most important period in Newton’s life?
5. What do you know about public activity of Isaac Newton?

Cecil Frank Powell

Powell was a prominent English scientist noted for his techniques and discoveries in particle physics.

He was also deeply concerned with problems relating to the responsibility of scientists.

Cesilь Франк Пауелл

Пауелл був видатним англійським учнем, відомим своєю технікою і відкриттями у фізиці елементарних часток.

Його також хвилювали проблеми відповідальності вчених.
Powell was a leader in the World Federation of Scientific Workers in the mid-1950s.

Powell was born in December 1903 in England.

His parents were poor but still they wanted to give good education to their children.

In 1921 Powell won a scholarship of one of the colleges at Cambridge.

He graduated from it in 1925 with first-class honours in natural sciences.

He started his scientific career at the Cavendish laboratory headed by Ernest Rutherford.

After gaining his scientific degree at Cambridge in 1928 Powell accepted a position at the new Physics laboratory in the University of Bristol.

Powell spent the rest of his career there advancing to professor in 1948 and director of the laboratory in 1964.

In 1947 Powell’s Bristol group identified a new particle in the cosmic radiation.

Powell and other two scientists discovered sub-nuclear particle, which was produced directly in nuclear reactions.

The discovery solved a complicated scientific problem and helped to open a new era of particle physics.

Powell continued to develop and apply the photographic method of Bristol.

His laboratory became the source of new experimental discoveries.

It was also an international training centre for physicists of many countries.
In 1950 he was awarded the Nobel Prize for his development of the photographic method and his meson discoveries.

Vocabulary:

Cecil Powell [ˈsesl ˈfrænk ˈpaulə] — Cecil Frank Powell
prominent [ˈprəʊminənt] — prominent
discovery [dɪsˈkʌvəri] — discovery
Ernest Rutherford [ˈɛəst ˈrʌðərfoʊd] — Ernest Rutherford

cosmic radiation [ˈkɒsmɪk ˌrɛdiəˈʃɛn] — cosmic radiation
particle physics [ˈpɑːtɪkl ˈfɪzɪks] — particle physics
photographic method [ˌfəʊtəˈɡræfɪk ˈmeθəd] — photographic method

Questions:

1. What kind of scientist was Powell?
2. When and where was Powell born?
3. When did he begin his scientific career?
4. What did Powell’s Bristol group identify in 1947?
5. What was he awarded the Nobel Prize for?

James Clerk Maxwell

Maxwell, born in a well-known Scottish family, early showed signs of mathematical talent.

At the age of 15 he contributed a piece of original work on the drawing of oval curves to the royal society of Edinburgh.

The work was so well done that many refused to believe that such a young boy could be the author.

At Cambridge, which he entered in 1856, he graduated the second in his class in mathematics.

Maxwell was appointed to his first professorship at Aberdeen in 1859.

In 1871 Maxwell was appointed a professor of experimental physics at Cambridge.

While at Cambridge he organized the Cavendish Laboratory, named
in honour of the eccentric English scientist of the previous century
Henry Cavendish.

Several decades later the Cavendish Laboratory was to do great work, which was connected with radioactivity.

The most important work of Maxwell's life was carried on between 1864 and 1873.

He placed into mathematical form the speculations of Faraday concerning magnetic lines of force.

Maxwell's theory showed that electricity and magnetism could not exist in isolation.

Where there was one, there was the other, so that his work is usually referred to as the electromagnetic theory.

Maxwell died before the age of fifty in 1879.

When Einstein's theories upset almost all of "classical physics", Maxwell's equations remained untouched and as valid as ever.

Vocabulary:

Maxwell ['mækswəl] — Максвел
Aberdeen [ˌæbəˈdɪn] — Абердін
Henry Cavendish [ˈhenrɪ ˈkævəndɪʃ] — Генрі Кавендиш
Einstein [ˈaɪnstaɪn] — Ейнштейн
sign [sain] — ознака
to refuse [rɪˈfjuːz] — відмовлятися
equation [ɪˈkeɪʃn] — порівняння
professorship [ˈprɛfəsəʃɪp] — професорська посада
magnetism [ˈmægnaɪtɪzəm] — магнетизм

Questions:
1. How old was Maxwell when he contributed a piece of original work on the drawing of oval curves?
2. When did he appoint his first professorship?
3. What was his most important work? What was it about?
4. What did Maxwell’s theory show?
5. Are Maxwell’s equations untouched nowadays?
Alexander Fleming

Alexander Fleming, the discoverer of penicillin, was born in Scotland in 1881 at a farm.

He began to go to school when he was five.

In 1895 he went to London and decided to dedicate his life to medicine.

At first Fleming wanted to become a surgeon but soon he got interested in bacteriology and decided that he was to find his future in research.

Sir Alexander Fleming did not have the life which was outwardly very exciting.

He spent his working hours in hospitals and laboratories.

He went from home to his laboratory every morning and went home from his laboratory every night.

He sat in front of his fire and talked to his wife.

He taught his son to swim and to fish.

It was life that did not seem to be different from the life of the bank manager or the office worker.

But it was not so.

The great work that he did was done for the benefit of sick men and women.

His discovery of penicillin did more to help suffering mankind than anything else for centuries.

When he died in 1955 his old friend said: “...by his work he relieved more suffering than any other living man”.

Vocabulary:

to differ ['dɪfə] — відрізнятися
research [rɪ'sɜːtʃ] — дослідження

penicillin [pɛnɪ'sɪlɪn] — пеніцилін
benefit ['bɛnɪfɪt] — благо
Questions:
1. What was Alexander Fleming the discoverer of?
2. What did he decide to dedicate his life to?
3. What did he get interested in?
4. What did his discovery of penicillin do for mankind?
5. What did his friend say when Alexander Fleming died in 1955?

Ernest Rutherford

Ernest Rutherford is called the Newton of atomic physics.
He was recognized by his fellow scientists as a man of colossal energy and tireless enthusiasm.
As he himself remarked he lived in the “heroic age of physics”.
Ernest Rutherford was born in New Zealand.
He graduated from New Zealand University and entered Trinity College, Cambridge.
In 1919 he was appointed a Professor of experimental physics in the University of Cambridge.

E. Rutherford’s early researches concerned electromagnetic waves.
His experiments led him to develop a magnetic detector, which at that time was the best detector of electromagnetic waves.
His detector was later used by Marconi, one of the inventors of the radio, in his well-known investigations.
E. Rutherford’s big triumph began when he turned his attention to radioactivity.
His brilliant researches established the existence and nature of radioactive transformations.

Ернест Резерфорд

Ернеста Резерфорда називають Ньютоном атомної фізики.
Його колеги-вчені вважали його людиною колосальної енергії і неви­черплого ентузіазму.
Як він сам говорив, він жив у «героїч­ну еру фізики».
Ернест Резерфорд народився в Новій Зelandії.
Він закінчив університет у Новій Зе­olandії і вступив до Коледжу Святої Trійці в Кембриджі, Англія.
У 1919 році він був призначений професором експериментальної фізики в університеті Кембриджа.
Перші дослідження Е. Резерфорд провів в області електромагнітних хвиль.
Експерименти привели його до винаходу магнітного детектора, що у той час був кра­щим детектором електромагнітних хвиль.
Його детектор пізніше використо­вував Марконі, один із винахідників радіо, у своїх знаменитих дослід­женнях.
Великий тріумф Е. Резерфорда по­чався, коли він звернув свою увагу на радіоактивність.
Його чудові дослідження установи­ли існування і природу радіоактив­них трансформацій.
He also investigated the electrical structure of matter and the nuclear nature of atom.

He was one of the founders of the atomic theory of physics and creators of the first atomic model.

He stated that the atom consisted of a nucleus around which electrons revolved in orbits.

His works didn’t lose their importance till nowadays.

Vocabulary:

atomic physics [ætɒmɪk ˈfɪzɪks] — атомна фізика

heroic age [hɪˈrəʊɪk ˈeɪdʒ] — героїчна ера, вік

tireless [ˈtaɪəlɪs] — невичерпний

wave [weɪv] — хвиля

nucleus [ˈnjuːklɪs] — ядро

magnetic detector [ˈmægənetɪk ˈdɪtektər] — магнітний детектор

attention [əˈtenʃn] — увага

Questions:

1. How do they call Ernest Rutherford?
2. What were his first early researches about?
3. What did he develop?
4. Who used Rutherford’s detector?
5. What did Rutherford state about the atom?
Famous People of America

The fates of many famous people of America have very much in common.

Thus, one of the most well-known statesmen of the USA, Abraham Lincoln, was born in 1809. His father was a poor farmer and the boy had to work much on their small farm. But he read a lot, too. When he grew older he felt a strong interest to law. He became a lawyer and he always tried to use the law to defend people.

In 1846 he was elected to Congress. There he said he was against slavery. In 1860 he became the President of the USA. In 1864 Abraham Lincoln was elected the President again, but a year later he was killed by his enemies in a theatre in Washington.

An American inventor, Thomas Alva Edison, was born in Ohio in 1847. His family was not rich and the boy’s education was limited to three months in the public school. When he was 12 he started to work.

Several years later Edison learned telegraphy and became a telegraph operator. He wanted to improve the telegraph system and worked very hard at it.
After a few months of work he built a transmitter of a new kind. This was his first important invention. The other two of Edison's greatest inventions were the gramophone and the electric lamp. Edison believed that only work could bring success. So did many of the famous American writers. O'Henry, for instance, a well-known short-story writer had to earn his living from the age of fifteen and he educated himself with the help of friends. Another famous American novelist, Theodore Dreiser had to leave school and work at a factory when he was still a boy. Later he became a newspaper correspondent and then he began to write books. He wrote such popular novels as "Sister Carrie", "Financier", "Titan", etc.

Vocabulary:

Abraham Lincoln [eibrəhæm ）lnkən] — Авраам Лінкольн
fate [feɪt] — доля
common [ˈkɒmən] — загальне, просто
slavery [ˈslævəri] — рабство
to limit [ˈlɪmɪt] — обмежувати
Thomas Alva Edison [θəməs ˈɔːlvə ˈɛdɪsən] — Томас Алва Едісон

transmitter [ˌtrænsˈmɪtə] — передавач
Theodore Dreiser [ˈθɪədərˈdraɪzə] — Теодор Драйзер
“Financier” [faɪnənsiər] — «Фінансист»

Questions:

1. What famous American persons can you name?
2. What can you say about the first American president?
3. What can you say about Edison's inventions?
4. What can you say about O’Henry as a writer?
Outstanding People of America

American Writers

Ernest Hemingway
Oak Park is a suburb of Chicago.
There Ernest Hemingway, the second child of the local doctor was born on July 21 in 1899.
In 1917 the USA entered World War I.

Hemingway tried to enlist but was rejected because of his poor eyesight.
For six months he worked as a reporter in the “Kansas City Star”, one of the biggest newspapers in the Middle West.
Then he found a way to leave for Europe with American Red Cross and served on the Italian front.

He was wounded, went to hospital in Milan, was decorated by the Italian Government and returned to America in 1919.

In 1929, when he was thirty, his book “A Farewell to Arms” appeared bringing him great success.

To some degree the book describes the events of World War I in which he took part.

In the summer of 1936 the Spanish Civil War broke out.
Hemingway sailed for Spain to support the Republicans.
During World War II he was a war correspondent first in China and then in Europe.
In 1954 Ernest Hemingway was awarded the Nobel Prize for literature.

Among his best works are “A Farewell to Arms”, “The Green Hills of Africa”, “The Old Man and the Sea”.

Американські письменники

Ернест Хемінгуей
Оак Парк — це пригород Чикаго.
Там 21 липня 1899 року народився Ернест Хемінгуей, друга дитина в родині місцевого лікаря.
У 1917 році США вступили в першу світову війну.

Хемінгуей хотів записатися в армію, але не пройшов через поганий зір.
Півроку він працював репортером у «Канзас Сіті Старий», однієї з найбільших газет Середнього Заходу.
Потім у нього з'явилася можливість виїхати в Європу з Американським Червоним Хрестом і служити на італійському фронті.
Він був пораний, потрапив у госпіtal у Мілані, був нагороджений італійським урядом і повернувся в Америку в 1919 році.
У 1929 році, коли йому було тридцять років, з'явилася його книга «Прощай, зброя», що принесла йому великий успіх.
У книзі деякою мірою описуються події першої світової війни, у яких він сам брав участь.
У липні 1936 року вибухнула іспанська громадянська війна.
Хемінгуей відплив в Іспанію, щоб підтримати республіканців.
Під час Другої світової війни він був військовим кореспондентом спочатку в Китаї, а потім у Європі.
У 1954 році Ернест Хемінгуей одержав Нобелівську премію з літератури.
Серед його кращих робіт: «Прощай, зброя», «Зелені пагорби Африки» і «Старий і море». 
Very often the books reflect the events that he himself witnessed. He died at his home in Sun Valley, Idaho, on July 2 in 1961.

**Vocabulary:**
- Ernest Hemingway [ˈɛrnɪst hɛmɪŋweɪ] — Ернест Хемінгуей
- suburb [ˈsʌbɜːb] — передмістя
- to enlist [ɪnˈliːst] — вступати
- Milan [mɪˈlæn] — Мілан
- degree [dɪˈɡriː] — ступінь
- to reflect [rɪˈflekt] — відбивати
- Nobel Prize [ˈnɔːbəl ˈpreɪz] — Нобелівська премія
- Idaho [ˈaɪdəhoʊ] — Айдахо

**Questions:**
1. Where was Ernest Hemingway born?
2. When did he begin to work?
3. Did he take part in World War I?
4. In what works did he treat problems of war, individual and society?
5. What is your favourite Hemingway’s novel?

**O’Henry**
O’Henry’s real name was William Sydney Porter.
He was born in Greensboro, a little town in North Carolina in 1862.

O’Henry is one of the most widely published American authors.
His works have been translated into nearly every language.
He has been called “the American Maupassant” and is ranked among the world’s outstanding short-story writers.
The best of these were published in books: “Cabbages and Kings”, “The Fourth Million”, “Heart of the West”, “The Voice of the City” and others.
The works of O’Henry reflect a specific period in American literature — the turn of the centuries.
O’Henry’s comments on society had a considerable force.
His credo was — art should be true, democratic, it should address contem-

**O'Генрі**
Дійсне ім’я О’Генрі — Вільям Сідней Портер.
Він народився в Гринсборо, невеликому містечку в Північній Кароліні, у 1862 році.
О’Генрі — один з найбільш друкованих американських авторів.
Його книги були перекладені майже всіма мовами світу.
Його називали «американським Мопассаном», і він — один з найвідоміших у світі авторів коротких оповідань.
Твори О’Генрі відбивають визначний період в американській літературі — переході до іншого століття.
Замітки О’Генрі про суспільство мали велику емоційну силу.
Його кredo було — мистецтво повинне бути щирим, демократичним,
porary life and embrace all aspects of life.

O’Henry was an outstanding humourist.

He worked out and enriched all types of the short story: the anecdote, the adventure story, tales and sketches.

He was very famous for his stories of city life.

O’Henry wrote about 150 stories with New York background.

O’Henry could work out a plot that would keep the reader in suspense up to the surprising end.

He was a born writer of great talent.

The conversation is witty, humorous, and often exact and precise.

His works have considerable influence on American literature.

His love for humanity, for the common people, his critical attitude towards injustice attract readers to this day.

Vocabulary:

William Sydney Porter [ˈwiljɔm ˈsidni ˈpɔrtə] — Вільям Сідні Портер
North Carolina [ˈnɔːθ ˈkærələn] — Північна Кароліна
Maupassant [mɔ̃pɔsɑ̃] — Мопассан

to be ranked [ræŋkt] — бути визнаним
to reflect [rɪˈflekt] — відбивати
to embrace [ɪmˈbreis] — охоплювати

society [səˈsaiəti] — суспільний
considerable [kənˈsɪdərəbl] — значний
witty [ˈwɪti] — дотепний
to enrich [ɪnˈrɪtʃ] — збагачувати
suspense [səsˈpens] — напруга
precise [prɪˈsais] — точний, ясний
injustice [ɪnˈdʒæstɪs] — несправедливість

Questions:
1. What was O’Henry’s real name?
2. What can you say about him as a writer?
3. What was the credo of the writer?
4. Which types of short stories did O’Henry work out?
5. Name the best of his books. Did you read any of them?
Mark Twain is a famous American writer and a journalist. His real name was Samuel Clemens. He was born in 1835 in Florida. Mark Twain started his literary career rather late. He worked as a journalist in newspapers in Nevada and California during the years of the Civil War. His father died when the boy was only 12 years old. Twain had to start working with his brother. In 1857 he became a sailor on the Mississippi. After the Civil War he worked as a reporter for the “Territorial Enterprise” in Virginia City. His witty style, characterizing all his following works, was formed during his work in that newspaper. Soon after his first stories had been published he received the fame of the first humourist of America.

“The Gilded Age”, “My Watch”, “The Adventures of Tom Sawyer” appeared during this period in Twain’s literary career.

The characteristic features of American comical folklore found their place in Twain’s creative works. He ignores all the rules of the “true” art and laughs at the European civilization.

As the Americans of his times he believes in democratic America, creating a new culture, ignoring all previous experience of mankind. His removal to New York and his marriage to a daughter of
Outstanding People of America

a coal tycoon changed a lot in his life.

He tried to become a businessman, but ruined himself and had to deliver lectures.

In the 1870s he wrote “Life on Mississippi”, and in 1885 — “The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn”.

“The Prince and the Pauper”, and “A Connecticut Yankee in King Arthur’s Court” were also published during this time.

In his works of that period Mark Twain showed racial prejudices, clash of humanism with anti-human materialism of bourgeois world.

His works of the period greatly influenced American literature.

The last period of his creative work is the time of pamphlet, which became his most favourite genre.

Vocabulary:

Samuel Clemens [sæmʃuəl ˈkleməns] — Семюел Клеменс

journalist [dʒɔːnɪlɪst] — журналіст

Nevada [nəˈvædə] — Невада

California [ˌkælɪˈfɔnja] — Каліфорнія

Virginia [vəˈdʒɪnjə] — Вірджинія

witty style [ˈwɪti stɑːl] — сатиричний стиль

sailor [ˈseɪlə] — моряк

marriage [ˈmærɪdʒ] — одруження

tycoon [ˈtaɪkən] — магнат

prejudice [ˈprɛdɪdɪs] — забобон

Huckleberry [ˈhʌklberi] — Гелкберрі

Pauper [ˈpærəp] — бідняк, жебрак

King Arthur's Court [ˈkiŋəθˈɑːz ˈkɔːt] — Двір короля Артура

Questions:

1. What was Mark Twain’s real name?
2. When did he begin to work?
3. When did his witty style characterizing all his following works form?
4. Did he believe in democratic America?
5. What books have you read? Which of them did you like best of all?

● Theodore Dreiser

Theodore Dreiser is a famous American writer and publicist.

● Теодор Драйзер

Теодор Драйзер — відомий американський письменник і публіцист.
He was born in 1871 in the state of Indiana.
He was the 12th child in the family.

His mother came from the family of Czech immigrants and his father came to America from Germany and was a factory worker.
Since his early childhood the boy knew what poverty was.
In 1887 he moved to Chicago where he worked in restaurants washing dishes and cleaning.
For a short period of time he studied at the University of Indiana.
Working at the newspaper “Chicago Daily Globe” he started to publish his first sketches and stories.
His first novel “Sister Carrie” is a story about real life.
One of his elder sisters, Emma, was the main character of the novel.
The story about the girl, who became an actress at a high price of losing her best human qualities was considered to be immoral by critics.
The feature of American literature that struck Dreiser most of all was the contradiction between the real life and the life described in literary works.
That is why Dreiser’s works always depicted the life of common people, the cruelty of their existence in American society.
His novel “An American Tragedy” was the sign of critical realism in the American literature of the 20th century.
He is not only a cruel American businessman, a person without “soul and heart”, but a very tragic figure.

Він народився в 1871 році в штаті Індіана.
Він був дванадцятою дитиною в родині.
Його мати була з родини чеських емігрантів, а його батько приїхав до Америки з Німеччини і був заводським робітником.
З раннього дитинства хлопчик пізнав, що таке бідність.
У 1887 році він їде в Чикаго, де працює в ресторанах: миює посуд і прибирає.
Якийсь час він учився в університеті Індіани.
Працюючи в газеті «Чикаго Дейли Глоб», він почав публікувати свої перші нариси і розповіді.
Його перший роман «Сестра Керрі» — це історія з життя.
Одна з його старших сестер, Емма, стала головною героїєю роману.
Історію дівчини, що стала акторкою ціною втрати своїх кращих людських якостей, критики оголосили аморальною.
В американській літературі Драйзера більш за все вражало протиріччя між реальністю і життям, описаним в літературних творах.
Тому в роботах Драйзера завжди зображувалося життя простих людей, трудність їхнього існування в американському суспільстві.
Його роман «Американська трагедія» був знаком критичного реалізму в американській літературі 20 ст.
У його трьох романах «Фінансист», «Титан» і «Стойкій» Драйзер описав життя фінансиста Каупервуда.
Він не тільки жорсткий американський бізнесмен, людина «без души і серця», але і дуже трагічна особистість.
Having an extraordinary personality, he can’t fully realize himself in American society.

His love of arts, his unusual talent stay deep inside him.

In 1928 Dreiser came to Russia, as he was always interested in the country and especially its literature.

The works of Tolstoy and Dostoyevskyi influenced his creative work.

Till nowadays Dreiser remains the largest master of realistic American literature of the 20th century.

Vocabulary:

Czech [tʃɛk] — чеський
Chicago [ˈʃɪɡəʊ] — Чикаго
cruelty [ˈkrjuːlti] — жорстокість

Questions:

1. What was Theodore Dreiser? Where and when was he born?
2. Why did he know what poverty was?
3. What did Dreiser depict in his works?
4. What can you say about his novel “An American Tragedy”?
5. Why did he visit Russia?

Jerome David Salinger

J. D. Salinger is one of the most famous contemporary writers.

He was born in 1919 in New York in a well-to-do family.

He graduated from the Pennsylvania Military Academy, and also studied at New York and Columbia Universities.

During World War II he served in the Army in Europe.

His only novel “A Catcher in the Rye” brought him fame.

Its main character, teenager Colefield, clearly perceives contradiction between the world of adults and teenagers.

Jerome David Salinger

J. D. Salinger is one of the most famous contemporary writers.

He was born in 1919 in New York in a well-to-do family.

He graduated from the Pennsylvania Military Academy, and also studied at New York and Columbia Universities.

During World War II he served in the Army in Europe.

His only novel “A Catcher in the Rye” brought him fame.

Its main character, teenager Colefield, clearly perceives contradiction between the world of adults and teenagers.

Questions:

1. What was Theodore Dreiser? Where and when was he born?
2. Why did he know what poverty was?
3. What did Dreiser depict in his works?
4. What can you say about his novel “An American Tragedy”?
5. Why did he visit Russia?
The drawbacks of the world of adults can be easily seen by the eyes of a sincere and innocent child.

He can’t understand the psychology of material success, which rules in the world of grown-ups, and he doesn’t want to become an adult.

The best stories of Salinger comprised his “Nine Stories”.

They are based on the ancient Indian poetics.

They are characterized by nine human states: erotic, humorous, pathetic, the state of dismay, heroic, fear, horror, surprise and calmness.

People are shown in different situations, and their behaviour reveals their inner state.

The mood, the feelings, the hint are the most important things in these stories.

The author considers the family as the ailment for a person.

It should bring up a child in the spirit of love to other people.

Salinger’s works influenced American students of the 50s and 60s.

A powerful movement for civil rights rose in the country.

After 1965 Salinger stopped publishing his works.

Vocabulary:

- contemporary [kənˈtempərəri] — сучасний
- well-to-do family [ˈweltdəu ˈfæməli] — заможня сім’я
- rye [rai] — жито
- Colefield [ˈkoʊlfiːld] — Колфілд
- contradiction [kəntrəˈdikʃn] — протиріччя
- sincere [sinˈsɪə] — щирий

Questions:

1. What kind of writer was J. D. Salinger?
2. How many novels has he written?
3. What are his best stories about? What are they based on?
4. When and why did he stop publishing his works?
Joe Hill

Somebody once said, “Poets are born not made”.

Some people think it is true, and some think it is not, but everybody agrees that Joe Hill was a born poet.

He did not learn the art of poetry at schools or colleges, but he always wrote poems and songs — while he worked and while he was looking for work, when he was free and when he was in prison.

Like thousands of other American workers in the years of depression before World War I, a tall, strong, energetic young Joe Hill was more often jobless than employed.

He did anything and everywhere.
He was an agricultural worker on western farms.
He worked on the docks of San Francisco, and in the food industry factories of the east.

Together with thousands of other jobless workers Joe Hill moved across America from the Atlantic to the Pacific looking for something to do.

Nobody helped these people.
Only skilled workers could be members of the American Federation of Labour trade unions.

In 1905, a new trade-union organization, the Industrial Workers of the World, was organized.

Joe Hill joined this organization and soon became one of the most active organizers in the labour movement.

Joe Hill’s songs and poems helped the workers to unite and fight for their rights.

Джо Хілл

Хтось колись сказав: «Поетами народжуються, а не стають».

Деякі думають, що це так, інші вважають інакше, але кожний згодний, що Джо Хілл — природжений поет.

Він не вивчав мистецтво поезії в школі чи коледжі, але він писав вірші і пісні завжди — коли працював і коли шукав роботу, коли був вільний і коли був у в’язниці.

Подібно тисячам інших американських робітників у роки депресії перед Першою світовою війною, високий, сильний, енергійний молодий Джо Хілл був частіше безробітним, ніж працюючим.

Він виконував все і скрізь.
Працював на західних фермах.

Працював у доках Сан-Франциско і на сході в харчовій промисловості.

Разом із тисячами інших безробітних Джо Хілл пересувався по Америці від Атлантичного до Тихого океану в пошуках якої-небудь роботи.
Ніхто не допомагав таким людям.
Тільки кваліфіковані робітники могли бути членами профспілок Американської федерації праці.
У 1905 році була організована нова профспількова організація «Всесвітній трудовий рух».

Джо Хілл вступив у цю організацію і незабаром став одним із найактивніших організаторів у робочому русі.
Пісні і вірші Джо Хілла допомагали робітникам поєднуватися і боротися за свої права.
Vocabulary:

the Pacific Ocean [pəˈsifikˈəʊʃən] — Тихий океан

the American Federation of Labour trade unions ['treɪd ˈjuːnjən] — тред-юніони, об'єднані в Американську асоціацію праці

labour [ˈleɪbə] — труд

labour movement [ˈmɔːrvmənt] — трудовий рух

to unite [juːˈnait] — поєднуватися

Questions:

1. Did Joe Hill ever study the art of poetry?
2. What did he do before World War I?
3. Where did Joe Hill work?
4. Was he active in political struggle?
5. What were his songs about?

American Painters

John Sloan

In 1908 a group of young artists started an exhibition of their paintings which had been rejected by the National Academy, at the Macbeth Gallery, New York.

The impact of them was enormous.

They broke down academic idealism and fostered a keen interest in contemporary American life.

They achieved for American art what Theodore Dreiser did for the literary world: they turned attention toward the common people and their daily lives.

John Sloan was the youngest of the group.

He began to paint seriously when he was twenty-six but his career as a painter really started when he moved to New York in 1904.

Then he fell in love with the city, and became its leading realistic interpreter of the time.
Sloan's chief motivating force was his interest in human beings.
He liked situations of daily life, and the infinitive variety of a great city.
He liked what was common, everyday and universal; he liked the places and occasions when people got together.
Though his satire of wealth and pretence could be sharp, on the whole it was a kind humour.
His art was based on a deep and warm love of humanity — not in the abstract but in the individual.

And he loved the city for itself, its moods in different seasons, weather and time of the day.
With all his realism, he was a poet who found beauty all around him, in the everyday life of city streets.

Sloan's best pictures register the pulse of urban life.
He joined the Socialist Party in 1910.

By 1912 he had become the art editor of the news journal "The Masses".
By that time he achieved an art of great sincerity and depth of feeling.

Sloan was interested in the everyday events of his own neighbourhood.
Children at play in the snow, the breeze blowing through the wash are part of the environment in his painting.
The real content was not events, but the warm sunlight on the snow, the cool shadows and the faded red of the brick wall with its green shutters.
His most famous picture is "Backyards, Greenwich Village".

Його рушійною силою був інтерес до людей.
Йому подобалися різні ситуації з повсякденного життя і нескінчена розмаїтість великого міста.
Йому подобалося усе, що було звичайним, щоденним, постійним; він любив місьця, де люди збираються разом.
Хоча його сатира багатства і пихатості була різкою, у цілому це був м’який гумор.
Його мистецтво було засновано на глибокій любові до людства — але не абстрактно, а до кожного особисто.
Йому подобалося місто само по собі, його настрої в різні пори року, при різній погоді і в будь-який час доби.
З усім своїм реалізмом, він був поетом, що знаходив красу навколо себе, у повсякденному житті міських вулиць.
Кращі картини Слоуна відбивають пульс міського життя.
Він вступив у соціалістичну партію в 1910 році.

До 1912 року він став художнім редактором журналу новин «Маси».
До цього часу його мистецтво відрізнялося щирістю і глибиною почуттів.

Слоуна цікавили події, що відбуваються по сусідству.
Діти, що грають на снігу, вітер, який колище білизну, усе це частина загального тла в його картинах.
Справжнім змістом були не події, а тепло сонячне світло на снігу, холодні тіні і вицвіла червона цегельна стіна з зеленими віконницями.
Його найвідоміша картина — це "Задній дворик, Гринвіч Віледж".
Vocabulary:

Macbeth Gallery [ˈmækbɛθ   ˈgæləri] — галерея Макбет
impact [ˈɪmpækət] — вплив
enormous [ɪnˈɔːməs] — величезний
interpreter [ɪnˈtɛprɪtə] — літописець

motivating force [məutɪˈvɛrɪŋ   fɔːs] — рухійна сила
universal [jʊnəˈvɜːsl] — постійний, універсальний

Questions:

1. How did John Sloan begin his career of an artist?
2. What did he do for American art?
3. What city did he love and why?
4. What was his art based on?
5. What are his best pictures? What can we see on them?

* Winslow Homer

Winslow Homer, one of the greatest American painters, was a self-taught artist.

His first important painting “Prisoners from the Front” was finished in 1866 and made him one of the most well-known painters in America.

His post-war paintings dealt with American country life: farm scenes, children, pretty girls, summer resorts.

“The Morning Bell”, “The Country School”, “Gloaster Farm” are down-to-earth paintings showing ordinary people doing their everyday work.

In the eyes of contemporary writer, Henry James, his paintings seemed hopelessly unfinished and ugly.

In the 1860s his subject matter and his style underwent a change.

He concentrated on the nature and mankind: the mountains, the forest and particularly the sea.

* Вінслоу Хомер

Вінслоу Хомер, один з найбільших американських художників, був самотечною.

Його першою значною картиною була «Полонені з фронту», закінчена в 1866 році, яка зробила його одним з найвідоміших художників Америки.

Його післявоєнні картини відбивають сільське життя Америки: види ферм, діти, гарненькі дівчата, літні курорти.

«Ранковий дзвонік», «Сільська школа», «Ферма в Глостері» — це картини на звичайні теми, що зображують звичайних людей, що виконують свою щоденну роботу.

В очах сучасного письменника Генрі Джеймса його картини здавалися безнадійно незакінченими і виродливими.

У 60-х роках основна тема його картин і його стиль трохи змінилися.

Він звертає увагу на природу і людство: гори, ліс і особливо море.
He painted woodsmen, fishermen, and sailors.

His central theme was man’s relationship with nature.

Homer completely ignored the life of the privileged classes of a society, and devoted his art to common people.

During the 1870s Homer’s art gained steadily in strength and skill.

His earlier themes continued, but with changes in viewpoint and emphasis.

His works of that period were much preoccupied with women.

New kinds of subjects appeared in these years and one of them was Negro life.

When he was 45, in 1881, Homer made the second visit abroad that had a deeper effect than his stay in France fifteen years before.

This time he went to England and spent two seasons near the fishing port on the North Sea.

Here he first began to paint the sea, and the men and women who earned their living from it.

Concentrating almost entirely on water-colour and drawing, he made pictures of the fisherfolk, particularly the women.

This part of the East Coast was noted for its storms and his works showed a new awareness of the power and danger of the sea.

Their dramatic force and realism soon won them a permanent place among pictorial descriptions of the sea.
In his paintings Homer gives us the mighty rhythm of the tides, and the beauty of dawn and sunset over the moving waters.

His marines are unique; they show the danger and the beauty of the sea.

Vocabulary:

- **self-taught artist** [self’ta:t ’ɔ:tist] — художник-самоучка
- **post-war** [’pɔustwɔ:]- післявоєнний
- **country-life** [’kʌntrɪ laɪf] — сільське життя
- **ugly** [’ʌɡli] — потворний
- **relationship** [rɪ’leɪʃənʃip] — взаємовідносини
- **marine** [mərɪ:n] — морський

Questions:

1. What can you say about Winslow Homer as an artist?
2. What was his central theme?
3. Did he like to paint women?
4. Where did he stay in England?
5. What did his marines show to us?

Rockwell Kent and his Works

Rockwell Kent was born in New York in 1882.

He studied at the department of architecture at Columbia University, but did not graduate as he decided to become a painter.

His first exhibition was when he was 20 years old and it brought him recognition.

Still he had to earn his living and in his search for work Rockwell Kent did all kinds of things.

He was an architect and a carpenter; he fished for crabs and worked on farms.

Rockwell Kent travelled through all of the United States and in the Far North.

He spent many years in Alaska, Greenland, Canada and in Patagonia.

Rockwell Kent і його картини

Роквелл Кент народився в Нью-Йорку в 1882 р.

Він училися на архітектурному факультеті в Колумбійському університеті, але не закінчив його, тому що вирішив стати художником.

Його перша виставка відбулася, коли йому було 20 років, і принесла йому визнання.

Незважаючи на це, він все ще повинен був заробляти на життя, і в пошуках роботи Р. Кент виконував будь-що.

Він був архітектором і теслею; ловив крабів і працював на фермах.

Роквелл Кент подорожував по всіх штатах і був на Крайній Півночі.

Багато років він провів на Алясці, у Гренландії, Канаді й у Патагонії.
Many of his landscapes and pictures of people reflect the beauty of the north, the hard life of its inhabitants and their courage.

The artist’s graphic work is especially outstanding and covers a wide range of subjects.

He has illustrated many books among them Shakespear’s plays, “Decameron” by Boccaccio and “Candide” by Voltaire.

Many paintings and drawings by Rockwell Kent express the artist’s thoughts as a fighter for peace and friendship on earth.

Rockwell Kent’s pictures are not only beautiful.

They are truthful and optimistic.

He is a leading exponent of the finest traditions of American realistic art.

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>department</td>
<td>факультет</td>
<td>to earn</td>
<td>заробляти</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to graduate</td>
<td>закінчувати</td>
<td>carpenter</td>
<td>тесляр</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recognition</td>
<td>визнання</td>
<td>to reflect</td>
<td>відображати</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>landscape</td>
<td>пейзаж</td>
<td>exponent</td>
<td>зразок</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions:
1. Who is Rockwell Kent and why is he spoken of here?
2. Where did he study?
3. Why didn’t he graduate from Columbia University?
4. What did his first exhibition bring him?
5. Rockwell Kent travelled much, didn’t he?

● American Musicians

● Louis Armstrong and Billie Holiday

Louis Daniel Armstrong was born on July 4, 1900, in New Orleans, the birthplace of American jazz.

His father, Willie, was a worker.

● Американські музиканти

● Луї Армстронг і Біллі Холідей

Луї Дениел Армстронг народився 4 липня 1900 року в Новому Орлеані, батьківщині américainського джазу.

Його батько Віллі був робітником.
His grandparents had been slaves. In 1913 he became the leader of the school band. A musician taught him how to read music when he joined Mississippi riverboat band. In 1922 he went to Chicago to play with Oliver’s Creole Jazz Band.

Armstrong organized his own band in Chicago in 1925. With his phenomenal gift for melodic variations, he was able to turn jazz from ensemble music to a solo art. The voice was first used as an instrument by Armstrong. Another Armstrong’s innovation was professional playing of jazz. He appeared on television frequently and made more than 35 short films or movies. His classics include “West End Blues”, “Weather Bird”.

He died on July 6, 1971, in New York City. Billie Holiday was the finest jazz singer of her generation, and in the opinion of her followers and many critics she was the greatest jazz singer of the 20th century. Although Holiday received no professional training, her singing was sophisticated. Billie Holiday was born on April 7, 1915, in Baltimore. Her father was a professional guitarist. Young Holiday made her singing debut in 1931 in Harlem night-clubs. She was not widely recognized until 1935, but her early recordings

Його предки були рабами. У 1913 році він став керівником шкільного ансамблю. Один музикант навчив його грати по нотах, коли він вступив у річковий оркестр Міссісіпі. У 1922 році він вийхав у Чикаго, щоб грати в Креольському джазовому ансамблі Олівера. Армстронг організував свій власний ансамбль у Чикаго в 1925 році. З його феноменальною здатністю до мелодійних варіацій він зміг перетворити джаз з оркестрової музики в сольне мистецтво. Армстронг уперше використовував голос як інструмент. Ще одним нововведенням Армстронга був професійний джаз. Він часто з’являвся на телебаченні і створив понад 35 фільмів. Його класичні твори включають «Вест Енд Блюз», «Везе Берд».

Він помер 6 липня 1971 року в Нью-Йорку. Біллі Холідей була кращою джазовою співачкою свого покоління, і, на думку її послідовників і багатьох критиків, вона була найвидатнішою джазовою співачкою 20 сторіччя. Хоча Холідей не одержала професійної освіти, її спів був дуже мистецьким. Біллі Холідей народилася 7 квітня 1915 року в Балтіморі. Її батько був професійним гітаристом. Перший співовий дебют Холідей відбувся в 1931 році в нічних клубах Гарлема. Вона не була широко відома до 1935 року, але її ранні платівки
are now regarded as jazz masterpieces.

She appeared in concert with Duke Ellington, Count Basie, Fletcher Henderson, Benny Goodman.

Holiday died in New York City on July 17, 1959.

Questions:
1. What family was Louis Daniel Armstrong born in?
2. What band did he play?
3. How did he use the voice?
4. Who was Billie Holiday?
5. What can you say about her early recordings?

George Gershwin was one of the first composers to use jazz themes within classical music forms.

George Gershwin was born on September 26, 1898, in Brooklyn.

He was the son of Russian immigrants whose name had been Gershovitz.

He began studying piano at the age of 12.

At 16 he left high school to work as a pianist for a music publishing company.

His first song was published in 1916.

The first musical for which Gershwin wrote all the music was “La, La Lucille”, produced in 1919.

Vocabulary:

Louis Armstrong [ˈluːɪs ˈɑːmstrɔŋ] — Луї Армстронг
New Orleans [ˈnjuːərələns] — Новий Орлеан
Creole Jazz Band [ˈkriːəl ˈdʒæz ˈbænd] — Креольський джазовий ансамбль

ensemble music [ənˈsembl ˈmjuːzɪk] — оркестрова музика
sophisticated [səˈfɪstɪkeitɪd] — вправний
record [rɪˈkɔrd] — платівка

George Gershwin

George Gershwin was one of the first composers to use jazz themes within classical music forms.

George Gershwin was born on September 26, 1898, in Brooklyn.

He was the son of Russian immigrants whose name had been Gershovitz.

He began studying piano at the age of 12.

At 16 he left high school to work as a pianist for a music publishing company.

His first song was published in 1916.

The first musical for which Gershwin wrote all the music was “La, La Lucille”, produced in 1919.

Vocabulary:

Louis Armstrong [ˈluːɪs ˈɑːmstrɔŋ] — Луї Армстронг
New Orleans [ˈnjuːərələns] — Новий Орлеан
Creole Jazz Band [ˈkriːəl ˈdʒæz ˈbænd] — Креольський джазовий ансамбль

George Gershwin was one of the first composers to use jazz themes within classical music forms.

George Gershwin was born on September 26, 1898, in Brooklyn.

He was the son of Russian immigrants whose name had been Gershovitz.

He began studying piano at the age of 12.

At 16 he left high school to work as a pianist for a music publishing company.

His first song was published in 1916.

The first musical for which Gershwin wrote all the music was “La, La Lucille”, produced in 1919.

Questions:
1. What family was Louis Daniel Armstrong born in?
2. What band did he play?
3. How did he use the voice?
4. Who was Billie Holiday?
5. What can you say about her early recordings?
From 1920 to 1924 he wrote dozens of songs. In 1924 Gershwin wrote a short composition for a jazz concert. His “Rhapsody in Blue” became one of his most acclaimed works. Also in the year of 1924 the Gershwin brothers achieved their first major Broadway success. Gershwin’s opera “Porgy and Bess” has become a genuine American opera. Gershwin’s “serious” compositions include “Piano Concerto in F”, a set of preludes for the piano, and “Second Rhapsody” for the piano and orchestra. He began writing for motion pictures just before his death in Hollywood, on July 11, 1937. A film on his life, “Rhapsody in Blue”, appeared in 1945.

Questions:
1. How did George Gershwin use jazz themes in music?
2. When and where was he born?
3. Why did he leave school?
4. What is his most acclaimed work?
5. What music did he begin writing just before his death?

American Scientists

Alexander Bell
Alexander Bell was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, in 1847 in a family interested in the problems of speech.
Both his father and his grandfather had studied the mechanics of a sound.
Bell’s father had been one of the pioneer teachers of speech to the deaf.
He was a world-famous inventor of “Visible Speech”, which helped deaf people to pronounce words they could not hear.
Between 1868 and 1870 Alexander worked with his father and studied speech and taught deaf children in Edinburgh.
In 1870 he moved to Canada and the next year he went to the USA.
In 1866 the nineteen-year-old Bell started thinking about sending tones by telegraph, and it was then that there came to his mind the idea of the “harmonic telegraph”, which would send musical tones electrically from one place to another.
In 1873 he was appointed a professor at Boston University.
He became interested in the mechanical production of a sound, basing his work on the theories of Helmholtz.
It seemed to Bell that it was possible to convert the sound wave vibrations into a fluctuating electric current.
Then the current, in its turn, can be converted into sound waves identical with the original at the end of the circuit.
In this way, sound could be carried across wires at the speed of light.

Його батько і дід вивчали механіку звука.
Його батько був першим із учителів, хто навчав глухих мові.
Він був всесвітньо відомим автором «Видимої мови», що допомагала глухим людям вимовляти слова, які вони не могли чути.
З 1868 по 1870 рік Олександр працював разом зі своїм батьком і вивчав мову, а також навчав глухих дітей в Единбурзі.
У 1870-му він переїхав до Kanади і наступного року виїхав у США.
У 1866 році дев’ятнадцятирічний Белл почав задумуватися про можливість посилати звуки телеграфом, саме в той час до нього прийшла ідея «гармонічного телеграфу», що міг би передавати музичні тони за допомогою електрики з одного місця в інше.
У 1873 році він був призначений професором у Бостонський університет.
Він почав цікавитися механічним відтворенням звуку, засновуючи свою роботу на теоріях Гельмгольца.
Беллу здавалося можливим перетворити вібрацію звукових хвиль у перемінний електричний струм.
Потім струм наприкінці ланцюга може у свою чергу перетворюватися в звукові хвилі, ідентичні первісним.
Таким чином, звук може передаватися по дротах зі швидкістю світла.
It was through his famous experiments that in 1876 he was able to develop the telephone, which enables people to talk to each other over long distances.

One day, while working with an instrument designed to carry sound, Bell automatically cried to his assistant, “Watson, please, come here”.

Watson, at the other end of the circuit on the other floor, heard the instrument speak and ran downstairs with joy.

It was the first telephone communication.

In 1915 the first transcontinental telephone was opened.

Bell died on August 2, 1922.

Vocabulary:

problems of speech [ˈprɒbləmz əv spiːtʃ] — проблеми мовлення
sound [saʊnd] — звук
deaf [def] — глухий
visible speech [ˈvɪzbl ˈspiːtʃ] — видиме мовлення
production [prəˈdʌkʃn] — відтворення

Questions:

1. What family was Alexander Bell born in?
2. What did he study when worked with his father?
3. What did he start thinking about at nineteen?
4. What did he develop?
5. When was the first transcontinental telephone opened?

Albert Einstein

Any list of the greatest thinkers in history will contain the name of the brilliant physicist Albert Einstein.

His theories of relativity led to entirely new ways of thinking about time, space, matter, energy, and gravity.
Einstein's work led to such scientific advances as the control of atomic energy and to some of the investigations of space.

Einstein was born in Ulm, Germany, on March 14, 1879, of Jewish parents.

He was a shy and curious child.

He attended a Munich elementary school where he showed an interest in science and mathematics but did poorly in other areas of study.

He finished high school and Technical College in Switzerland.

In 1905, at the age of 26, he published five major research papers in an important German physics journal.

He received doctorate for the first paper.

Publication of the next four papers forever changed mankind's view of the universe.

One of his papers laid the foundation for the photon, or quantum, theory of light.

Television and other inventions are practical applications of Einstein's discoveries.

In his works Einstein showed that time and motion are relative to the observer, if the speed of light is constant and natural laws are the same everywhere in the universe.

His fourth paper was a mathematical addition to the special theory of relativity.

Here Einstein presented his famous formula $E = mc^2$, known as the energy-mass relation.
In 1916 Einstein published his general theory of relativity.

World-wide fame came to him in 1919 when the Royal Society of London announced that his general theory of relativity had been confirmed.

He was awarded the Nobel Prize for physics two years later.

In 1940 he became an American citizen.

Einstein died in Princeton, on April 18, 1955.

Vocabulary:

theories of relativity [ˈθɪəriz əv rəˈleɪtɪvəti] — теорія відносності
Germany [ˈdʒɜːrnəl] — Німеччина
Jewish [ˈdʒuːɪʃ] — єврейський
Munich [ˈmuːnɪk] — Мюнхен
Switzerland [ˈswɪtsərənd] — Швейцарія
energy [ˈeəndʒi] — енергія
research [rɪˈsɜːtʃ] — дослідницький
investigation [ɪnˌvestɪˈgeɪʃn] — дослідження
curious [ˈkjuəriəs] — цікавий, допитливий
area [ˈeərə] — галузь

Questions:

1. Who was Albert Einstein? What kind of child was he?
2. When did he receive doctorate?
3. Why were his research papers valuable for mankind?
4. What did he show in his works?
5. Was he awarded the Nobel Prize?
My Favourite Writers

I’m fond of reading. Usually I borrow books from the library, but I have a lot of them at home, too. I like to read books about famous people and detective stories. Literature means much in my life.

It helps to form the character and to understand life better. There are some names in Russian and foreign literature that are very dear to me.

In Russian literature I highly appreciate Ivan Sergeyevich Turgenev. For me he is a real intellectual and aristocrat, a man of culture, devoted to literature, music and art. Though he lived abroad for a long time he didn’t stop to be a Russian writer for a moment. He created a number of national characters in his books. The image of Turgenev’s woman, deeply feeling, faithful and tender is an ideal of a Russian woman for me. It doesn’t lose its charm even today.

Of the present day writers and poets I like Eugene Evtushenko, Valentin Rasputin, Valentin Pikul, Boris Vasilyev. Their works are very human and realistic. They assert high moral principles in life.

Moї улюблені письменники

Я люблю читати. Звичайно я беру книги в бібліотеці, але в мене багато їх і вдома.

Мені подобається читати книги про знаменитих людей і детективи. Література багато значить у моєму житті.

У російській і зарубіжній літературі є імена, що дуже дорогі мені.

У російській літературі я високо ціную Івана Сергійовича Тургенєва. Для мене він дійсний інтелігент і аристократ, культурна людина, віддана літературі, музиці і мистецтву. Хоча він довго жив за кордоном, він ні на секунду не переставав бути російським письменником.

У своїх книгах він створив галерею національних характерів. Образ тургенівської жінки — здатної на глибоке почуття, щирої і ніжної — ідеал російської жінки для мене.

Цей образ не утратив своєї чарівності навіть сьогодні.

Серед письменників і поетів сьогодення мені подобаються Євген Євтушенко, Валентин Распутін, Валентин Пікуль, Борис Васильєв. Їхні твори людяні і реалістичні.

Вони відстоюють високі моральні принципи в житті.
And this is very important nowadays. My favourite foreign writer is O’Henry.

In my childhood I was deeply impressed by his story “The Last Leaf”. Since then I bear in my heart the image of a young girl suffering from the incurable illness, and her friends doing all they can to give her hope and bring back to life.

Vocabulary:

detective stories [di’tektiv] — детективи
tender [’tendə] — ніжний
to appreciate [ə’priːheɪt] — цінувати
to assert [æ’sə:st] — відстоювати
illness [’ɪlnəs] — хвороба

Questions:

1. What is your favourite writer and poet?
2. What does literature mean for every person?
3. What is your favourite Russian writer? Why do you like his works?
4. Do you like poetry?
5. What is your favourite foreign writer?
6. Do you often go to the library?

My Favourite Writer

Reading is one of my hobbies and that’s why I try to use every spare minute to read. I like different kinds of literature.

I like Russian and foreign, classic and modern literature.

I usually read different books: love stories, detective stories or historical novels.

I want to tell you about my favourite writer. It is Alexandra Marinina. She is considered to be a Russian Queen of detective prose.
The works of this author are clever and really interesting.

In all books there are the same characters and starting a new book you meet old friends.

The author used to work as an investigator and she knows how to arouse the reader's interest and at the same time writes the facts that could take place.

Many detective novels by Marinina are translated into foreign languages and foreign readers can compare our writer with Agatha Christie.

When I got acquainted with these books I was greatly impressed by the wit and humour.

The main character, a slender and weak woman, doesn't need to fight with the criminals using judo or something like that.

She is very clever and intelligent.

Her brain works as a good computer and she knows how to derive benefit from it.

All the actions and characters are described so vividly that I had a feeling of our possible meeting when I visited Moscow last summer.

Unfortunately I don't have complete works by Marinina, it's impossible, she's still writing.

But I always recommend my friends to read these books.

Vocabulary:

to consider [kən'sɪdə] — вважати
character ['kærəktə] — персонаж
investigator [ɪn'vestɪgə] — слідчий
to compare [kəm'peə] — порівняти
to get acquainted [ə'kwəntɪd] — познайомитися
wit [wɪt] — дотепність

to derive benefit [dɪrəv 'bɛnɪft] — скористатися
vividly [ˈvɪvɪdli] — жваво
unfortunately [ʌnˈfɔtʃəntli] — на жаль
to recommend [rɪkəˈmend] — радити, рекомендувати
Questions:
1. Do you like reading?
2. Have you read books by Marinina?
3. Did you like them? Why?
4. What is your favourite character?
5. What is your favourite writer?

My Favourite Painters
I would like to tell you about my favourite painters.
I am very fond of impressionism, and especially like the works of Monet. Classicism attached the main importance to composition and figure painting. Romantism laid stress on personal and emotional expression. In its turn impressionism showed the moments of life, parts of human existence. It was one of the most interesting and unusual trends in modern painting.
It started in the 60s of the 19th century and the most famous impressionists were French painters Renoir, Degas, Manet, Monet, Pissaro and Sisley.
They added some freshness and spontaneity of perception of life to the painting.
This kind of perception was quite unusual even for that time, and impressionists were not accepted as a new school.
First they were thought to be a group of painters of some unusual style.
Their works were not admitted to the exhibitions.
But some critics paid their attention to them, and they were able to show their works.
The most famous of Monet’s works are: “The Ruan Cathedral in the
Morning”, “The Ruan Cathedral in the Afternoon”, “The Ruan Cathedral in the Evening”, “Haystacks” and others.

He created the feeling of glittering sunshine, of subject dissolved in the vibration of light and air.

He showed moments of life, subjects in different times of the day.

His colours are very soft and delicate, his paintings are always full of air and light.

They seem very alive to me.

By developing their own style of painting these painters opened a new school in the history of modern art.

Vocabulary:

impressionism [ɪmpˈresɪənɪzm] — імпресіонізм
especially [ɪsˈpeʃəl] — особливо
Monet [məˈneɪ] — Моне
Renoir [rənˈwɔr] — Ренуар
Degas [dəˈɡæ] — Дега
Manet [mæˈneɪ] — Мане
Pissarro [piːsəˈrɔʊ] — Піссаро
Sisley [ˈsɪsleɪ] — Сіслей
stress [stres] — наголос
existence [ɪɡˈzɪstəns] — існування

Questions:

1. What is your favourite painter?
2. Why do you like impressionism?
3. What do you know about Monet?
4. What are his most famous works?
5. Do you like classicism?

● My Favourite Composers

Music is an essential part of everyone’s life.

I can’t imagine a person living without music.

We can listen to it at home, at work, in the car or even while walking along the street.

If to speak about classical music I have always liked the works of Peter I. Tschaikovskyi.

● Мої улюблені композитори

Музика є невід’ємною частиною життя кожної людини.

Я не можу уявити собі людини, що живе без музики.

Ми можемо слухати музику вдома, на роботі, у машині чи навіть у той час, коли ми йдемо по вулиці.

Якщо говорити про класичну музику, то мені завжди подобалися твори П. І. Чайковського.
I like his works because they are deeply Slavonic in their spirit.

In his creative work Tschaikovskyi used folklore melodies.

He also created a musical language, organically connected with the music life of common people.

He taught music at Moscow Conservatory and his students always appreciated him deeply.

Tschaikovskyi worked hard at different programmes of musical education.

He also created the first textbook on harmony of music, which was later translated into German and French.

I like his First Symphony “Winter Dreams” most of all.

Tschaikovskyi reflected his impressions of the trip to Lake Ladoga and Valaam in it.

There one can see winter nature, fields with glistening snow and bright sun.

It is very tender, and at the same time solemn and grand.

If to speak about modern music I prefer to listen to jazz.

Jazz appeared in 1900 in America.

Most prominent of jazz players were Louis Armstrong, Duke Ellington, Ella Fitzgerald.

It is a kind of music where experiments are always welcome.

The main jazz instruments are the piano, the trumpet and the drums.

Jazz can be divided into classical jazz and experimental jazz.

Menі dуже подобаються його твори, тому що вони глибоко слов’янські за своїм духом.

У своїй творчій діяльності П. Чайковський використовував народні мелодії.

Він також створив музичну мову, що була органічно пов’язана з життям простого народу.

Він викладав музику в Московській консерваторії, і студенти глибоко його поважали.

П. Чайковський завзято працював над різними програмами музичної освіти.

Він також створив перший підручник з гармонії музики, що пізніше був перекладений німецькою і французькою мовами.

Більше всього мені подобається його перша симфонія «Зимові мрії».

У ній Чайковський відбив свої враження від поїздки на озеро Ладога і Валаам.

У ній можна побачити зимову природу, поля, що блищать від снігу і яскравого сонця.

Вона дуже ніжна і в той же час урочиста і велична.

Якщо говорити про сучасну музику, то мені подобається слухати джаз.

Джаз з’явився в Америці в 1900 році.

Найбільш відомими джазовими музикантами були Луї Армстронг, Дюк Еллінгтон, Елла Фіцджеральд.

Це такий тип музики, де експерименти завжди вітаються.

Основні джазові інструменти — піаніно, труба і барабан.

Джаз можна розділити на класичний і експериментальний.
I like experimental jazz as it is based upon improvisation. It is always very fresh and diverse music.

**Vocabulary:**

- **essential part** [ɪˈsenʃəl pɜːt] — невід’ємна частина
- **creative work** [krɪˈeɪtɪv wɜːk] — творча діяльність
- **trumpet** [ˈtrʌmpɪt] — труба
- **improvisation** [ˌɪmprəvɪˈzeɪn] — імпровізація

**Questions:**

1. Why do people like music?
2. What kinds of music do you like?
3. What is your favourite composer?
4. What modern music do you like?
5. What is your favourite singer?

**My Favourite Books**

I like to read books very much. My favourite writer and poet is A. S. Pushkin. My favourite Pushkin’s poem is “Poltava”, but I like to read his poem «Ruslan and Lyudmila» too.

My sister is in the second form but she likes to read Pushkin’s works too. Most of all she likes fairy-tales. Her favourite fairy-tale is “The Tale About Tsar Saltan”. My sister likes to read other fairy-tales too. Her favourite tales are “Cinderella”, “The Snowwhite and the seven Dwarfs”, “The Sleeping Beauty” and others. In our home library we have more than 500 books.

Мені подобається експериментальний джаз, тому що він заснований на імпровізації. Це завжди свіжа і різноманітна музика.

**Мої улюблені книги**

Я дуже люблю читати книги. Мій улюбленіший письменник і поет — О. С. Пушкін.

Моя улюбленна пушкінська поема — «Полтава», але також я люблю читати його поему «Руслан і Людмила».

Моя сестра в другому класі, але вона також любить читати твори Пушкіна. Понад усе вона любить казки. Її улюбленна казка — «Казка про царя Салтанана».


У нашій домашній бібліотеці понад 500 книг.
There are works by Pushkin, Gogol, Tolstoy, Turgenyev and other writers.

We also have books by English writers, and among them plays by Shakespeare, historical novels by Walter Scott, detective stories by Conan Doyle.

We have books on science, art and nature too.

But often I go to the school library.

Most of all I am interested in books on science.

Now I am reading a book about famous English scientist Charles Darwin.

I do not like to read books in the reading room, so I prefer to take them out from the library.

My father is a teacher, and he often goes to Korolenko Library in the centre of the city.

It is a very big library and it has many thousands of various books.

Vocabulary:

- tsar [zɑː] — цар
- Cinderella [ˈsɪndərəla] — Попелюшка
- Snowwhite [ˈsnəʊwwaɪt] — Білосніжка
- Dwarf [dɔːrf] — гном
- various [ˈveərɪəs] — різний

Questions:

1. Who is the author of your favourite book?
2. What is this book about?
3. Who are the main characters in the book?
4. When does the action of this book take place?
5. Why do you like this book?

My favourite literary character is Eliza Doolittle.

Мій улюблений літературний персонаж — Еліза Дулитл.
Eliza is one of the principal characters of "Pygmalion", Bernard Shaw's famous comedy.

Eliza, a girl of eighteen, comes from the lowest social level and speaks with a strong Cockney accent.

She makes her own living by selling flowers in the streets of London.

One day she accidentally meets Henry Higgins, a professor of phonetics.

Higgins makes an agreement with his friend Pickering that he will pass Eliza off as a duchess in six months.

Eliza and Higgins work hard at the girl's manners and pronunciation. Finally, before six months are over, she is well prepared to be introduced into society.

Higgins and Pickering take her to the races, a dinner party, and the Queen's dancing party. Everything goes well and Higgins wins his bet.

But what is to become of Eliza now when the game is over?

She cannot go back to selling flowers in the street.

She has acquired some culture, and she wants to do useful work.

She wants independence and her share of respect.

I admire Eliza's quick wit and sense of humour, her moral strength and integrity.

The character of Eliza shows how much force and talent lies undeveloped in common people.

---

Еліза — одна з головних героїнь п'єси «Пігмаліон», відомої комедії Бернарда Шоу.

Еліза, дівчина 18 років, походженням з нижніх шарів суспільства, говорить із сильним акцентом кокні.

Вона заробляє собі на життя, продавачів квітів на вулицях Лондона.

Одного разу вона випадково зустрічає Генрі Хіггінса, професора фонетики.

Хіггінс б'ється об заклад зі своїм другом Пікерингом, що він зможе видавати Елізу за герцогиню через шість місяців.

Еліза і Хіггінс ретельно працювали над її манерами і вимовою.

У підсумку, раніше ніж через шість місяців вона готова була бути представлена у суспільстві.

Хіггінс і Пікеринг водили Елізу на перегони, на обід і навіть на королівський бал.

Усе йде добре, і Хіггінс виграє парі.

Але що буде з Елізою після того, як гра буде закінчена?

Вона не може знову продавати квіти на вулицях.

Вона вироста до визначеного культурного рівня і хоче займатися корисною справою.

Їй потрібна незалежність і повага.

У Елізі мені подобається дотепність і почиття гумору, її моральна сила і чистота.

Персонаж Елізи показує, як багато сил і таланту не розвинуто в простих людях.
Vocabulary:

Eliza Doolittle [ˈɛlaɪzə ˈduːlɪtl] —  
Еліза Дулітт

“Pygmalion” [ˈpɪgˌmeɪliən] —  
«Пігмаліон»

Bernard Shaw [ˈbɜːnərd ˈʃɔː] — Бернард Шоу

principal [ˈprɪnsipl] — головний

comedy [ˈkɒmədi] — комедія
accent [ˈæksənt] — акцент
accidentally [ˌækstɪˈdəntlɪ] — випадково
agreement [əˈɡrɪmənt] — заклад, згода

Questions:

1. What books do you like to read?
2. What is your favourite book?
3. Who is the main hero in it? Do you like him or her?
4. Who is your favourite writer?
5. Do you like to read or watch TV?

Sherlock Holmes — a Famous Literary Character

If Sherlock Holmes were alive today, he would be more than 140 years old. We can say it from the books about him. He would certainly no longer be living at Baker Street. He would have retired and lived in the country. But letters addressed to him continue to arrive at Baker Street. Many people write to the great detective asking him for help. There is no less than one letter a week. Some of those people who write, especially from abroad, really believe that Holmes is a real person. Many letters come from Europe. People sometimes ask Holmes for his photograph. Some letters are sent as a joke.

Sherlock Holmes — знаменитий літературний герой

Якби Шерлок Холмс був живий у наш час, йому було б більше 140 років. Це можна визначити з розповідей про нього. Він, звичайно ж, не жив би дотепер на Бейкер Стріт. Він вийшов би на пенсію й оселився в селі. Але листи, адресовані йому, продовжують приходити на Бейкер Стріт. Багато людей пишуть великому детективу, просачи про допомогу. В тиждень приходить хоча б один лист. Деякі з тих, хто пише, особливо жителі інших країн, дійсно вірять, що Шерлок Холмс — реальна людина. Багато листів приходить з Європи. Іноді люди просять Холмса надіслати фотографію. Деякі листи — жарти.
Children also write many letters. They ask to find their lost dogs and other things. People in our country also know and love this literary character.

Vocabulary:

alive [æˈlaɪv] — живий
to retire [rɪˈtaɪər] — піти на пенсію
to arrive [əˈraɪv] — прибувати, з'являтися

abroad [əˈbrəʊd] — за кордоном
joke [dʒəʊk] — жарт

Questions:

1. How old would Sherlock Holmes be if he were alive?
2. Where did he live?
3. Was he a real person?
4. Why do people believe him?
5. Why do they write him letters?
6. Do you like stories about Sherlock Holmes?
7. What is your favourite story?
Mass Media in Our Life

Mass media play a very important role in our everyday life.

They serve to inform people of different events that take place or may happen.

They also entertain people or even help to make their lives better.

But the most important thing that newspapers, radio or TV bring to people is information.

Complete and accurate information is very important to get nowadays.

Those TV and radio programmes and newspapers that provide reliable information are always very popular.

Sensational events such as crimes, natural disasters or unusual events are also of great interest.

That is why many newspapers and TV programmes combine them with serious information.

Usually daily mass media carry some international, state and local news.

They also contain some other topics like health care, arts and so on.

A lot of newspapers have advice columns, review of books, comics, crossword puzzles, etc.

Most of them have different pictures, photographs and illustrations.

Mass media also focus public attention on the most urgent problems of the society.

Засоби масової інформації в нашому житті

Засоби масової інформації відіграють дуже важливу роль у нашому житті.

Вони інформують людей про різні події, що відбиваються чи можуть відбутися.

Вони також розважають людей і допомагають зробити їхнє життя кращим.

Але найголовніше, що газети, радіо і телебачення приносять людям,— це інформація.

У наші дні дуже важливо одержувати повну і точну інформацію.

Ті телевізійні програми, радіопередачі і газети, що забезпечують надійною інформацією, завжди популярні.

Сенсаційні події, такі як злочини, природні катастрофи чи незвичайні події, завжди дуже цікаві.

От чому багато газет і телевізійних програм розповідають про них поряд із серйозною інформацією.

Звичайно щоденні засоби масової інформації розповідають про міжнародні, державні чи місцеві новини.

У них також висвітлюються такі теми, як охорона здоров’я, мистецтво й інші.

У багатьох газетах є статті, де надосягаються різні поради, анотації книг, комікси, кросворди і так далі.

У більшості з них є різні малюнки, графіції, ілюстрації.

Засоби масової інформації також привертають увагу громадськості до найбільш нагальних проблем у суспільстві.
Those may be problems in health care, education, transportation or even corruption in government.

Advertising is also paid much attention to in mass media.

It helps people to get oriented in variety of firms and shops that offer their goods and services.

All in all, mass media help us to form our opinion on different events, provide us with the information of what takes place in society, and are also means of entertainment.

**Vocabulary:**

- **mass media** [mæs ˈmɪdɪə] — засоби масової інформації
- **to inform** [ɪnˈfɔːm] — інформувати
- **accurate** [ˈækjʊrət] — точний
- **reliable** [rɪˈleɪbl] — надійний
- **crime** [kraɪm] — злочин

**Questions:**

1. Why do mass media play a very important role in our everyday life?
2. How do we get any information? What brings it to us?
3. What TV programs do you like to watch?
4. What do daily mass media carry to us?
5. Does mass media help us to form our opinion on different events, information?

**Mass Media in the English-Speaking Countries**

In the morning, before work, and in the evening, when they come home, people in the English-speaking countries like to read newspapers and magazines, watch TV or listen to the radio.

The newspapers, which are produced in Great Britain, the USA and other English-speaking countries, are divided into national and local.

The national newspapers are those, which are sold all over the country:

There are two main types of national newspapers — the “popular” papers and the “quality” papers.

Most of the popular papers are tabloids — that is the papers with small-size pages.

The tabloids place a lot of pictures, big headlines and short articles.

The popular newspapers are easy to read and often contain little real information — they usually have stories about ordinary people and events, which are amusing or odd.

Examples of this type of newspapers in Great Britain are “The Daily Mail”, “The Sun” and “The Daily Mirror”.

“Quality” papers give more reading material about politics and foreign affairs: their articles are bigger in size and have much news.

They have different pages for home news, foreign affairs, articles on literature, business, fashion and so on.

All types of newspapers publish a lot of advertisements.

Local newspapers usually give more attention to local than to world or national news.

Some of them are weekly newspapers — they are printed once a week.

Some weekly papers are usually printed in small towns or even villages where people know each other and are interested to know some news about their neighbours and friends.


Існує два головних типи загально­державних газет — «популярні» і «високоякісні».

Більшість популярних газет — буль­варні — це газети маленького формату.

Бульварні газети поміщають багато малюнків, великих заголовків і коротких статей.

Популярні газети легше читати, і часто вони містять мало реальної інформації — зазвичай у них є роз­повіді про звичайних людей і події, що є смішними чи незвичайними.

Прикладом такого роду газет у Ве­ликобританії служать “Дейлі Мейл”, “Сан”, “Дейлі Мірор”.

«Високоякісні» газети дають більше матеріалів про політику й іноземні справи: їхні статті більші за обсягом і містять багато новин.

У них є різні сторінки для внутрішніх новин, міжнародних відносин, ста­тей з літератури, бізнесу, моди і так далі.

Усі типи газет публікують багато рекламних оголошень.

Місцеві газети звичайно приділя­ють більше уваги місцевим, ніж сві­товим чи державним новинам.

Деякі з них є щотижневиками і виходять раз на тиждень.

Деякі щотижневики звичайно дру­куються в маленьких містах і навіть селах, де люди знають один одного і зацікавлені знати деякі новини про своїх сусідів і друзів.
Weeklies often print reports on weddings, births, deaths and news of local business and politics.

People in the English-speaking countries buy more newspapers on Sundays than on weekdays.

The Sunday papers have a higher circulation than the dailies.

Besides newspapers, a lot of different magazines and scientific journals are printed in the English-speaking countries, too.

Editorial offices of most London newspapers are situated in Fleet Street near the City.

Like in any other country of the world, television is very popular in the USA and Great Britain: many families here have more than one TV set.

The most popular channels on the British TV are BBC 1, BBC, ITV and Channel.

The two BBC channels are national — they are founded by the government but are non-political.

On BBC Channels the televiewers can watch news, TV sport programmes, educational programmes, interviews with prominent people, musical programmes and many other items.

Films are shown on TV, too, but usually they are old: some of the films are made specially for television, for example, so-called soap operas.

Out of the 1,500 TV stations in the USA about 1,200 are commercial ones.

Commercial TV stations broadcast mainly entertainment programmes because they must attract as many televiewers as possible in order to sell advertising time at high prices.
About 300 are public TV stations, which are non-profit organisations. The public TV broadcasts mainly educational and cultural programmes — plays, ballets, symphonies, programmes on art and history.

And yet, sometimes, the television in Britain and the USA is criticised, because people think that it shows too much violence and crime.

Vocabulary:

ordinary [ˈɔːdnəri] — звичайний
Financial [ˈfaɪnəŋʃl] — фінансовий
Journal [ˈdʒɜːnl] — журнал
“The Daily Telegraph” [ˈdeɪli ˈtelɪɡrɑːf] — «Дейлі Телеграф»
amusing [əˈmjuːzɪŋ] — кумедний
odd [əd] — незвичайний
advertisement [əˈdɛvərɪznmənt] — оголошення, реклама
neighbour [ˈneɪbə] — сусід
wedding [ˈwɛdɪŋ] — весілля
entertainment programme [ˌentəˈteɪnmənt ˈprɔgræm] — розважальна передача
Editorial office [ɪdɪˈtʃərəl ˈɔfɪs] — видавництво
prominent [ˈprəʊmɪnənt] — видатний
soap opera [sɔʊp ˈəʊpərə] — «мильная» опера
to broadcast [ˈbrɔːkɪst] — пере­давати
violence [ˈvaɪəlsəns] — насильство
crime [kraɪm] — злочин

Questions:

1. What types of newspapers are produced in the English-speaking countries?
2. What are tabloids?
3. What are “quality” papers?
4. What are the most popular channels on the British TV?
5. Why is the television in Britain and the USA criticised?

Questions:

1. What types of newspapers are produced in the English-speaking countries?
2. What are tabloids?
3. What are “quality” papers?
4. What are the most popular channels on the British TV?
5. Why is the television in Britain and the USA criticised?
And although every newspaper has a definite profile, they can be classified into two main groups: quality and popular newspapers.

Quality newspapers are serious, national newspapers.

They are “Financial Times”, “The Times”, “The Daily Telegraph”.

“The Daily Telegraph” contains reports on national and international news, gives a full covering of sports and other topics.

“Financial Times” is read mainly by professionals and business people as it contains a comprehensive coverage of industry, commerce and public affairs.

“The Times” is the most famous newspaper.

It is not actually the oldest newspaper in Britain, but some years ago it celebrated its two hundredth birthday.

“The Times” gives a wide coverage of news events and reports on social life, the arts, education, etc.

Popular newspapers are smaller in size and contain many photographs.

Unlike quality newspapers popular newspapers are not so serious and their stories tend to be sensational.

Popular newspapers are: “The Daily Express”, “The Daily Mirror”, “The Sun”.

“The Sun” has the largest circulation among daily newspapers.

“Файненшіл Таймс” — найвідоміша газета.

Це не найстаріша газета в Англії, але кілька років тому вона відзначила своє двохсотліття.

“Таймс” у великому обсязі висвітлює новини, соціальне життя, мистецтво, освіту і т. д.

“Бульварні” газети менші за обсягом і звичайно містять багато фотографій.

На відміну від gazet для серйозного читання, “бульварні” gazети не настільки серйозні і частіше публікують сенсаційні повідомлення.

Популярними gazетами є: “Дейлі Експрес”, “Дейлі Мірор”, “Сан”.

“Сан” — найбільший тираж серед щоденних gazet.

**Vocabulary:**

**peculiarity** [ˈpɜːkjjuələri] — особливість  
**serious** [ˈsɪəriəs] — серйозний  
**definite** [ˈdɛfɪnɪt] — визначений  
**to contain** [kəntˈteɪn] — містити  
**affair** [əˈfeə] — справа
**Questions:**

1. Is there official control over the newspapers in Great Britain?
2. What do English newspapers write about?
3. What serious national newspapers do you know?
4. What is the most famous newspaper in England?
5. What are popular newspapers? Name some of them.

---

**American Press**

There is no real national press in the USA as there are more than 85 newspapers published in 34 languages.

There exist two main groups of newspapers: qualities and populars.

Only 2 or 3 newspapers with the largest circulation tell their readers about some rumours or crimes.

Quality newspapers contain only reliable serious information.

They may also publish cartoons.


The main function of press in America is to give objective information.

The materials should be given in full volume and newspapers should give floor to all possible facts and opinions.

There is also no secret information for the press.

The information is usually taken from the News Agencies.

The largest and most famous of them are: Associated Press (AP) and United Press International (UPI).
There also exist about 122 domestic and foreign news bureaus in the USA. There are over 4000 monthly and 1300 weekly magazines in the USA. Among them are: "National Geographic", "Reader's Digest", "Cosmopolitan", "Time", "Vogue" and others.

Women's magazines publish all sorts of recipes, stories about local or outstanding women, furnishing questions and other items.

Publishing books in America is rather a prosperous business. America is on the 9th place in the world by the books, published and read.

Public libraries always organize book sales.

Most newspapers and magazines publish chapters from the books of young authors.

Vocabulary:

to publish ['pʌblɪʃ] — публікувати, друкувати
opinion [əˈpinʃən] — думка
domestic [dəˈmɛstɪk] — місцевий
Associated Press [əˈsəʊjɪətɪd ˈpres] — Об’єднана преса
United Press International [juːˈneɪtɪd ˈpres ɪntəˈpɜːrənɪəl] — Міжнародна Об’єднана преса

Questions:
1. Is there real national press in the USA?
2. What are the main groups of newspapers in America?
3. What is the main function of press in America?
4. Where is the information for press usually taken?
5. Is publishing books in America a prosperous business?
Press in Ukraine

Newspapers and magazines play a great role in the life of a modern person.
We usually read newspapers to get information about the events that have taken or are going to take place in this country or abroad.
One can also read articles about historical events or public figures of the past.
The pages of newspapers carry articles on our economy, industry, agriculture and social life.
Practically all newspapers give weather forecasts, radio and TV programmes.
But there are some specialized newspapers that give only TV programmes.
They also give brief accounts of new films or the films that one can see on TV.
The beginning of the Ukrainian press is considered the “Kharkiv Weekly”, founded in 1812.
In those days newspapers tried to attract readers’ attention to the problems of economic, political and cultural life of this country.
The first literary works in Ukrainian and investigations of Ukrainian folklore appeared on their pages.
Today Ukraine has a large variety of newspapers and magazines.
One can find newspapers of all kinds: national and local, official and private, special newspapers for children, teenagers, for all kinds of fans — sport fans, music fans, etc.
Business newspapers, women’s magazines, car fans newspapers are very famous.

There are also a lot of “free” newspapers, which specialize in advertising.

The freedom of press has become real today.

Every newspaper has its readers.

I prefer to read “Natali”, “Stolichnye Novosti”.

They are very interesting, I like their style and I read almost all their articles from beginning to end.

**Vocabulary:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>public figure</td>
<td>громадський діяч</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weather forecast</td>
<td>прогноз погоди</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account</td>
<td>анонс</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attract</td>
<td>приваблювати</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertising</td>
<td>реклама</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions:**

1. What is considered to be the beginning of Ukrainian press?
2. Do magazines and newspapers play a great role in the life of a modern person?
3. What can you find on the pages of newspapers?
4. What kinds of newspapers and magazines do you know?
5. What do you prefer to read?
6. What do we read newspapers for?
The Map of the World

We live on the planet that is called the Earth.
The greatest part of it is taken by the waters of the World Ocean.
Large masses of land surrounded by oceans and seas are called mainlands or continents.
They are like big islands.
Looking at the map of the world we can see that there are six continents.
They are: Eurasia (Europe and Asia combined) which is the largest continent, Africa, North America, South America, Australia and Antarctica, in which the South Pole is situated.

It should be said that Asia lies opposite the five times smaller continent of Australia.
Europe, that is rather small, lies opposite the big continent of Africa.

North America almost equals South America in size.
And only Antarctica has no opposite land.
The parts of the world are also six in number.
But they differ from the continents.

North and South America form one part of the world — America.
The continent of Eurasia is divided into two parts of the world — Europe and Asia.
The largest part is Asia.

 Kartta svitu

Ми живемо на планеті, що називається Земля.
Велика частина її зайнята водами Світового Океану.
Великі площі суші, оточені океанами і морями, називаються материками чи континентами.
Вони схожі на великі острови.
Дивлячись на карту світу, ми бачимо, що є шість континентів.
Це: Євразія (Європа й Азія спільно), що є найбільшим континентом; Африка, Північна Америка, Південна Америка, Австралія й Антарктика, де розташований Південний полюс.

Варто сказати, що Азія знаходиться навпроти в п’ять разів меншого континенту — Австралії.
Європа, що досить невелика, знаходиться навпроти великого африканського континенту.
Північна Америка майже дорівнює Південній за розміром.
І тільки Антарктика не має собі пари.
Частин світу теж шість.

Але вони відрізняються від континентів.
Північна і Південна Америки формує одну частину світу — Америку.
Контinent Євразія поділяється на дві частини світу — Європу й Азію.
Найбільша частина світу — Азія.
Australia and the Pacific Ocean are called Oceania.
There are four oceans.
The Pacific is the largest and the deepest of all, its total area is greater than that of all the dry land.
Second comes the Atlantic.
The Indian Ocean is only slightly smaller than the Atlantic.
The smallest ocean is the Arctic Ocean with the North Pole in the centre.
There are also many seas and rivers in all parts of the world.
The largest rivers are Mississippi and Missouri.
In our country the largest river is the Dnieper.
The greatest lakes are: Lake Baikal, Lake Victoria and Lake Michigan.

Vocabulary:

- ocean [ˈoʊʃən] — океан
- to surround [səˈraʊmd] — оточувати
- mainland [ˈmɛnˌlaʊnd] — материк
- Eurasia [juərˈeɪʃə] — Євразія
- Asia [ˈeɪʃə] — Азія
- Africa [ˈæfrɪkə] — Африка
- North America [ˈnɔːθ əˈmɛrɪkə] — Північна Америка
- South America [sauθ əˈmɛrɪkə] — Південна Америка
- Australia [ɒsˈtreɪlja] — Австралія
- the North Pole [ˈnɔːθ ˈpɔʊl] — Північний полюс
- Oceania [ˌoʊʃəˈneɪə] — Океанія
- Dnieper [dniːpər] — Дніпро
- Mississippi [ˌmɪsɪˈsɪpi] — Міссісіпі
- Michigan [ˈmɪʃən] — Мічиган
- Antarctica [ænˈtætrɪkə] — Антарктида
- numerous [njuːmərəs] — численний
- to equal [ˈɛkwel] — прирівнювати
- size [saɪz] — розмір
- total area [ˈtɔːtl ˈeərə] — загальна площа

Questions:

1. How do we call our planet?
2. What are mainlands?
3. How many continents do you know? What are they?
4. What are the parts of the world?
5. What are the oceans?
6. What lakes and rivers do you know?
The Earth
We live on the Earth.
It is very big.
There is a lot of water on the Earth.
It is in rivers, lakes, seas and oceans.
There are a lot of forests and fields, hills and mountains on it.
Different animals and birds live on the Earth.
And different plants grow on it.
There are large and small countries, warm and cold countries.
There are countries where there are four seasons in a year and some countries where there are only two.
People live in different countries and they speak different languages.

Our country is not small.
There are a lot of long and short rivers, beautiful lakes, large forests and fields and mountains in our country.
People who live here speak many languages though the Ukrainian and Russian languages are the main languages.
We love our country and our Earth.

Questions:
1. Where do we live?
2. How do we call our planet?
3. What is there on the Earth?
4. What countries are there on the Earth?
5. Name some countries and the languages of these countries.
6. What can you say about our country?

Vocabulary:
Earth [ɜːθ] — Земля
mountain [ˈmaʊntən] — гора
to grow [grəʊ] — вирощувати, рости
World Problems of Ecology

Until recently the planet was a large world in which human activities and the nature were in balance. Acid rain, global warming, ozone reduction, widespread desertification and species loss: we have to face them now.

Ecology and economy are very closely connected. First economy influenced the state of our environment. Now we have to face degradation of soils, water, atmosphere and forests.

Millions of trees are dying in Germany's Black Forest and thousands of lakes in Sweden are so acidic that nothing can live in them. In Scotland farmers complain that acid rains kill their fish.

Forests in Denmark, France, Northern Italy, Greece and Norway are damaged. Thousands of lakes in Canada and the USA can no longer support fish life. The Mediterranean Sea has one of the dirtiest coastlines in the world. Ten million tons of oil, industrial waste, chemicals are pumped into the sea every year. It causes diseases like typhoid, dysentery, hepatitis and cholera.

The Rhone in France, the Po in Italy, the Ebro in Spain and the Nile in Egypt carry pesticides and chemical wastes. Many industries produce waste products, which can be difficult or dangerous to dispose of. Many countries have no storage facilities for the spent nuclear fuel.

Світові проблеми екології

Донедавна наша планета була вели­ким світом, у якому людська діяль­ність і природа були в рівновазі. Кислотні дощі, глобальне потепління, зменшення озонового шару, широко розповсюджени повя пустель і вимира­ння багатьох видів — із усим цим нам зараз доводиться мати справу.

Екологія й економіка дуже тісно пов'язані. На початку економіка впливало на стан навколишнього середовища. Тепер ми зіткнулися з виснаженням ґрунту, води, атмосфери і лісів.

Мільйони дерев вимирають у Німеччіні у Шварцвальді, і тисячі озер у Швеції настільки кислотні, що в них немає нічого живого. У Шотландії фермери скаржаться, що кислотні дощі вбивають їхню рибу.

Вирубуються ліси в Данії, Франції, Північній Італії, Греції і Норвегії. У тисячах озер Канади і США вимирає риба.

Узбережжя Середземного моря — одне з найбільш забруднених у світі. Щороку в море вика­даються десятки мільйонів тонн нафти, промислових відходів і хімічних речовин. Усе це викликає такі хвороби, як тиф, дисентерія, гепатит і холера.

Рона у Франції, По в Італії, Ебро в Іспанії і Ніл у Єгипті несуті пестициди і хімічні відходи. Промислові відходи багатьох галузей виробництва небезпечно ви­кідати.

У багатьох країнах немає приміщень для зберігання відпрацьованого ядерного палива.
The search for ways to dispose of radioactive waste goes on.

In 1982 seventeen countries took part in the United Nations environmental programme.

The World Commission on Environment and Development, headed by the Prime Minister of Norway, was set up in 1983 by the United Nations.

Its aim was to examine the environment and development problems on the planet and to formulate realistic proposals to solve them.

Now some chemicals are banned and some must be controlled.

In several countries there is frequent analysis of the water around the coasts.

The time has come for the governments and their people to take responsibility for the policies that cause the environmental damage.

Vocabulary:

- balance [ˈbæləns] — рівновага, баланс
- acid rain [ˈæsɪd reɪn] — кислотний дощ
- species [ˈspɛsɪz] — вид, рід
- Denmark [ˈdɛnmaːk] — Данія
- Greece [ɡriːs] — Греція
- Norway [ˈnɔrveɪ] — Норвегія
- the Mediterranean Sea [ˈmedɪtərənɪən ˈsiː] — Середземне море
- the Rhone [rɔn] — Рона
- Italy [ˈɪtəli] — Італія
- the Nile [nail] — Ніл
- Egypt [ˈeɪdʒɪpt] — Єгипет
- environment [ɪnˈvaiərənmənt] — навколишнє середовище
- degradation [dɪɡrəˈdeɪʃn] — вичерпання

Questions:

1. Were human activities and the nature in balance?
2. Are ecology and economy closely connected?
3. What do mankind have to face nowadays?
4. What did seventeen countries take part in?
5. Is there a party which takes responsibility for the policies that cause the environmental damage?
**Protection of Environment in Ukraine**

Protection of the environment in Ukraine is paid much attention to.

The worsening of the ecological situation has been closely linked to the Chernobyl explosion.

On April 26, 1986, a fire burnt out of control and released radioactive materials.

The disaster killed 31 persons immediately and caused the hospitalization of about 500 others.

It has caused widespread illnesses and made the land in the area unusable.

A radioactive cloud spread from the plant over most of Europe.
Radiation even spread so far as to appear in Asia and in North America.

Another issue of concern in Ukraine is the question of where to put nuclear waste.

This waste is largely the spent fuel of reactors.

It is radioactive, and some of its components remain so forever.

The waste is held at temporary sites until a solution of the problem can be found.

At present the most promising solution of the problem of waste storage is recycling.

Another environmental problem is air pollution.

---

**Захист навколишнього середовища в Україні**

В Україні велика увага приділяється захисту навколишнього середовища.

Погіршення екологічної ситуації тісно пов'язане з аварією в Чорнобилі.

26 квітня 1986 року пожежа, що вийшла з-під контролю, призвела до викиду радіоактивних матеріалів.

У результаті відразу ж загинув 31 чоловік і 500 чоловік було госпіталізовано.

Аварія викликала численні випадки захворювань і зробила ґрунт в області непридатним для використання.

Радіоактивна хмара зі станції поширилася на велику частину Європи.

Радіація поширилася так далеко, що була виявлена в Азії і Північній Америці.

Ще одна проблема України — це місце поховання ядерних відходів.

Ці відходи в основному складаються з відпрацьованого палива реакторів.

Вони радіоактивні, а деякі його компоненти залишаться радіоактивними назавжди.

Відходи містяться на тимчасових майданчиках доти, поки не буде знайдене рішення проблеми.

Зараз найбільш багатообіцяючим рішенням цієї проблеми є повторне використання відходів.

Ще одна проблема охорони навколишнього середовища — це забруднення повітря.
One of its results is acid rain.

It is caused by smoke from factories and transport.

Nowadays the emission of smoke is strictly controlled by special governmental agencies.

The activity of various environmental organizations helps to improve the situation.

Among the leading environmental organizations in Ukraine are the Greenpeace and the Green Party.

They are very popular with the youth in Ukraine.

Vocabulary:

- **attention** [əˈtenʃən] — увага
- **to link** [lɪŋk] — зв’язувати
- **explosion** [ɪkˈsploʊʒən] — вибух
- **acid rain** [ˈæsɪd rɛn] — кислотний дощ
- **smoke** [smɔːk] — дим

Questions:

1. Why is protection of the environment in Ukraine paid much attention to?
2. What happened on April 26, 1986 in Chernobyl?
3. What environment problems are there in Ukraine?
4. What do you know about Greenpeace and the Green Party?
5. Who controls the emission of smoke?

Environmental Protection in Our Country

The protection of nature has become one of the most burning problems of the 20th century.

The Earth provides people with mineral resources, rivers, forests, fields — everything that makes the foundation of industrial and agricultural production.

The development of industry has had a bad influence on the nature of the whole world.
People often do things which pollute land and waters greatly. It is very dangerous because it damages health of the people. The accident at the Chernobyl nuclear power plant in April 1986 caused radioactive contamination of a vast area around the plant.

Soviet statements indicate that 31 people died as a result of the accident but the actual number of deaths caused by the radiation is still unknown.

More than 100,000 Ukrainian citizens were evacuated from the city of Chernobyl and other areas around the reactor site.

Environmental protection is a great concern of the Ukrainian Government.

The Ministry of Environmental Protection was founded in Ukraine. Their tasks are to control the state of the environment and sources of pollution, to protect the water resources of Ukraine, to extend the network of nature reserves and to maintain co-operation with international ecological organizations.

Campaign for environmental protection is supported by public organizations and individuals.

The Ukrainian Green Party is very active today. "Zeleny Svit" is the Ukrainian ecological newspaper.

It calls on people to protect the natural wealth and to use it in a more careful and economical manner for the benefit of the present and future generations.
Vocabulary:

burning problem [ˈbɜːnɪŋ prəbləm] — пекуча проблема
foundation [ˈfaʊndəʃən] — основа
citizen [ˈsɪtɪzn] — громадянин

nuclear power [ˈnjuːklər pɔːrə] — атомна сила
radiation [ˈreɪdiəʃən] — радіація

Questions:

1. What is the main problem facing humanity nowadays?
2. What image has become firmly established in the public mind lately?
3. What are soil, water and air contaminated with?
4. Why have the water patterns changed recently?
5. What is the greenhouse effect created by?

Environmental Protection in Britain

Environmental protection is an international issue of great importance, and Great Britain pays much attention to it.

The National Rivers Authority protects inland waters in England and Wales.

In Scotland the River purification authorities are responsible for water pollution control.

Total emissions of smoke in the air have fallen by 85 per cent since 1960.

Most petrol stations in Britain stock unleaded petrol.

The Government is committed to the control of gases emission, which damage the ozone layer.

They also contribute to the greenhouse effect, which leads to global warming and a rise in sea levels.

Britain stresses the need for studying the science of climate change.

Захист навколишнього середовища у Великобританії

Захист навколишнього середовища — міжнародна справа величезної важливості, і Великобританія приділяє цьому велику увагу.

Національне товариство водопос- тачання охороняє внутрішні води в Англії й Уельсу.

У Шотландії товариство по очищен- ню рік відповідальне за контроль забруднення води.

З 1960 року загальний викид диму в повітря упав на 85 %.

Більшість бензоколонок у Велико- британії продає бензин без домі- шок свинцю.

Уряд контролює викид газів, що руй- нують озоновий шар.

Вони також сприяють парниковому ефektу, що веде до глобального по- тепління і підняття рівня моря.

Великобританія підкреслює необхід- ність вивчення зміни клімату.
Protection of Environment

There are nearly 500,000 protected buildings and 7,000 conservation areas of architecture or historical interest in Britain. The Government supports the work of the voluntary sector in preserving the national heritage. Green belts are areas where land should be left open and free from urban sprawl. The Government attaches great importance to their protection. National parks cover 9 per cent of the total land area of England and Wales. As we see, Great Britain takes care of its environment for themselves and next generations.

Vocabulary:

issue [ˈɪʃuː] — справа
inland waters [ˈɪnland ˈwɔːtəz] — внутрішні води
emission [ˈɛmɪʃn] — викид
ozone layer [ˈəʊzəʊn ˈleɪə] — озоновий шар

Questions:

1. What are the British specialists concerned about?
2. What is the major reason for the global warming-up process?
3. Why do people get worried much about the state of the environment?
4. Does the British Government support the work of the voluntary sector in preserving the national heritage?
5. What are green belts?

● Protection of Environment in the UK

Protection of environment is paid much attention to in Great Britain. Global warming, ozone layer problem, air and water pollution, industrial wastes are in the centre of different state and public actions.

● Захист навколишнього середовища в З’єднаному Королівстві

У Великобританії багато уваги приділяється захисту навколишнього середовища. Глобальне потепління, проблеми озонового шару, забруднення води і повітря, проблема промислових відходів знаходяться в центрі різних державних і суспільних акцій.
Great Britain maintains careful checks on use of dangerous chemicals and collects information about new ones.

Acid rains that kill enormous amounts of fish in Great Britain are also in the centre of attention.

They are caused by smoke from factories and power stations and exhaust fumes from transport.

It is produced when coal and oil are burnt.

The government provides smoke control programmes.

New power plants will have to meet very tight limits on emission of chemical gases.

Britain works with Scandinavian countries in a project on the problem of acid rains.

Over the last years local authorities are carrying on tests of drinking water in England and Wales.

Nuclear waste from nuclear plants is discharged into the Irish Sea, making it one of the most radioactive seas in the world.

There also have been numerous leaks of radioactive matter to the atmosphere.

Water pollution from shipping and oil platforms, mostly in the North Atlantic, is great.

Water pollution programmes are being worked out in Great Britain nowadays.

Ten National parks have been established in England and Wales, four — in Scotland.

Their aims are to conserve the natural beauty, wildlife and cultural heritage.
Each park is administered by an independent National Park Authority.

Trees Preservation Orders enable local authorities to protect trees and woodlands.

Once a tree is protected it is, in general, an offence to cut it down without permission.

Responsibility for pollution control is divided between local authorities and central government.

Local authorities are responsible for collection and disposal of wastes, keeping the streets clear of litter, control of air pollution.

It is a criminal offence to leave litter in any public place in the open air except in designated places.

The fines for it are from 25 up to 2500 pounds.

Questions:
1. What are global environment problems nowadays?
2. What are acid rains caused by?
3. What is one of the most radioactive seas in the world?
4. Have National parks been established in England, Wales and Scotland?
5. Is it a criminal offence to leave litter in any public place?

Protection of Environment in the USA

Environment pollution problem is paid much attention to in the USA.

Different environmentalists and environmental societies, like...
Wilderness Society, try to improve the situation.
The level of damage to the forests in the USA is really high.
The construction of new roads and the need of wood influenced the cuttings of large areas of forest.
As a result some rare species of animals, and some plants can disappear.
For example, the pacific yew, containing a cancer-fighting compound.
American environmentalists are also disturbed by the problem of global warming.
They pay much attention to the research in this sphere.
Global warming is the result of air pollution by different gases.
Together with the gases, destroying the ozone layer, it influences the patterns of weather.
Many USA universities investigate these problems.
The pollution of Lake Erie, one of the Great Lakes, and the problem of acid rains that threatened many forests, made the media start a campaign against industrial pollution.
All of the states have adopted their own laws; some banned throw-away bottles, or use of phosphates in soaps, or industrial dumping of wastes.
By 1986 smoking in public had been restricted.
There also exist public societies, whose aim is to attract public’s attention to the most important environmental problems.

Товариство захисту живої природи, намагаються поліпшити ситуацію.
Рівень збитку, нанесеного лісам у США, дуже високий.
Будівництво нових доріг і потреба в деревині вплинули на вирубку великих лісових масивів.
У результаті деякі рідкісні види тварин і рослин можуть зникнути.
Наприклад, тихоокеанський тисс, що містить речовини, що лікують рак.
Американських учених також хвилює проблема глобального потепління клімату.
Багато уваги приділяється дослідженням у цій галузі.
Глобальне потепління — це результат забруднення повітря різними газами.
Разом з газами, що руйнують озоновий шар, воно впливає на погоду.
Багато американських університетів досліджують ці проблеми.
Забруднення озера Ері, одного з Великих озер, і проблема кислотних дощів, що загрожують багатьом лісам, спонукало засоби масової інформації почати кампанію проти промислового забруднення.
Усі штати прийняли власні закони; у деяких заборонене використання одноразових пляшок, в інших — використання fosfatів у мілі, або викиди промислових відходів.
До 1986 року паління в громадських місцях було обмежене.
Існують також громадські організації, чиєю метою є привернення суспільної уваги до найважливіших проблем охорони навколишнього середовища.
Some of them, for example, “Pals of the Planet”, publish the materials of how to save the seas from pollution. The “Greenpeace” organization, which appeared in 1971, is one of the leading environmental organizations in the USA and in the world. Its numerous actions of protest against water and air pollution, its programme “Water for Life”, started in the USA, help our planet to survive. Public attention to the problems of pollution has now become a part of American life.

Deякі з них, наприклад, «Друзі Планети», публікують матеріали про те, як захистити моря від забруднення. Організація Грінпіс, заснована в 1971 році, одна з ведучих організацій по охороні навколишнього середовища в США й у світі. Її численні акції протесту проти забруднення води і повітря, її програма «Вода для життя», почата в США, допомагають нашій планеті вижити. Суспільна увага до проблем навколишнього середовища стала частиною американського життя.

Vocabulary:

to improve [ɪmˈpru:v] — поліпшувати
level of damage [ˈlevəl əv ˈdæmɪdʒ] — рівень загрози, шкоди
construction [kənˈstrʌkʃn] — будівництво

to disappear [dɪspəˈriː] — зникати
yew [juː] — тис
to threaten [ˈθretən] — загрожувати
to survive [səˈvaɪv] — виживати

Questions:

1. What are American specialists concerned about?
2. What is the level of damage to the forests in the USA?
3. Do American environmentalists pay much attention to the research in the problem of global warming?
4. What have all of the states adopted?
5. Has the problems of pollution become a part of American life? What can you say about it?
There are four seasons in the year: winter, spring, summer and autumn. Each of them lasts three months.

In Ukraine winter is usually a cold season. It often snows, the rivers are frozen. The most unpleasant thing about winter is that the sun sets early and rises late — especially in December and January.

The days are short, the sky is often grey, nature is sleeping and sometimes it gets rather boring.

But at the end of March the weather gets gradually milder. The sun shines more brightly. The days become longer. The snow begins melting.

Spring comes and nature awakens after a long winter sleep. All kinds of plants and flowers come out. The birds return from the South and build their nests. The farmers begin the sowing campaign.

Everything around is full of life and joy. Spring is followed by summer. The weather gets still warmer and sometimes it is very hot. The sky is blue and cloudless. But sometimes there are storms with thunder and lightning. The gardens are gay with flowers for all summer months.

In Ukraine winter is usually a cold season. It often snows, the rivers are frozen. The most unpleasant thing about winter is that the sun sets early and rises late — especially in December and January.

The days are short, the sky is often grey, nature is sleeping and sometimes it gets rather boring.

But at the end of March the weather gets gradually milder. The sun shines more brightly. The days become longer. The snow begins melting.

Spring comes and nature awakens after a long winter sleep. All kinds of plants and flowers come out. The birds return from the South and build their nests. The farmers begin the sowing campaign.

Everything around is full of life and joy. Spring is followed by summer. The weather gets still warmer and sometimes it is very hot. The sky is blue and cloudless. But sometimes there are storms with thunder and lightning. The gardens are gay with flowers for all summer months.
In summer people spend much time in the open air. They find time to go to the forest, to swim in the river, to sunbathe. Autumn comes in September. Early autumn is still the harvest time, the time when the fruit and vegetables become ripe. It is also a very beautiful time of the year, when the weather is still warm and the leaves change their colour from green to yellow. But towards the end of October the weather gets colder and colder. There’s much rain and fog. Leaves fall from trees and cover the ground. Birds fly away to warm countries. Low and heavy clouds hang in the sky. The landscape becomes rather dull. Nature slowly falls asleep for winter. In fact every season has its fine days and is pleasant in its own way. And it is not difficult to see this beauty. 

**Vocabulary:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to be frozen</td>
<td>замерзати, замерзнути</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloudless</td>
<td>безхмарний</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storm</td>
<td>гроза</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to melt</td>
<td>танути</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to return</td>
<td>повернутися</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open air</td>
<td>свіже повітря</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Questions:**

1. How many seasons do you know? What are they?
2. What is your favourite season? Why? Give the reason.
3. Why do some people like spring? What about you?
4. Do you like a sunny weather?
5. Do you like autumn?
Seasons

Spring

I love spring. It is a wonderful season.

Spring comes and nature awakens from its winter sleep. The days become longer and the nights become shorter.
The ground is covered with fresh green grass and the first spring flowers.

How lovely the white snowdrops are! There are new leaves and blossoms on the trees.
The birds begin to sing and build their nests.
The air is fresh and the sun shines brightly.
The days are warm and everything is full of life and joy.

Everybody feels younger and stronger.

Many people like spring more than other seasons.

It is very pleasant to watch how the nature awakens from the winter sleep.

In spring we can go to the country and have a walk in the woods or by the river, play ball-games, lie in the sun and even have a swim if the water is warm enough.

That is why many people like spring very much.

Vocabulary:
snowdrop [ˈsnɔːdɹɒp] — пролісок
to blossom [ˈbɒlsəm] — цвісти
to swim [swɪm] — плавати
Questions:
1. Why is spring a wonderful season?
2. What do the birds do in spring?
3. What is the first flower?
4. What can we do in spring?
5. What is your favourite season?

Summer
The bright sunshine warms the Earth.

When the heat is oppressive, it is a treat to get out of town and have a walk in the woods.
The fields are green.
In summer nature surrounds us with all kinds of flowers: merry dandelions, tulips, beautiful roses, shy daisies.

Sometimes the weather becomes very hot in summer and the air gets stuffy.
Then a thunderstorm usually brings relief.
The sky is suddenly covered with dark clouds and distant rolls of thunder are heard.
Later bright flashes of lightning are followed by claps of thunder and it begins to rain.
After the thunderstorm the air is remarkably fresh, and very often we can see a beautiful bridge across the sky which is called a rainbow.
Children love summer very much because in summer they have long holidays.
They don’t have to go to school and that’s why they have much free time.
They can play with their friends in the yard, read or watch TV.
So, summer is a really good time.

Літо
Теплі сонячні промені зігрівають Землю.

Коли жара нестерпна, приємно виїхати за місто і поголяти в лісі.

Поля зелені.
Улітку природа оточує нас усіма видами квітів: веселі кульбаби, тюльпани, прекрасні троянди, ніжні маргаритки.
Іноді влітку стає спекотливо і повітря дуже задушливе.

Полегшення звичайно приносить гроза.
Небо раптово вкривається темними хмарами і чується віддалений гуркіт грому.
Пізніше яскраві спалахи блискавки супроводжуються ударами грому і починяє лити дощ.
Після грози повітря на диво свіже і дуже часто можна бачити красиву дугу в небі, що називається веселкою.
Діти люблять літо найбільше, тому що влітку в них довгі канікули.

Ім не треба ходити до школи і тому в них багато вільного часу.
Вони можуть грати з друзями в дворі, читати чи дивитися телевізор.
Тому літо — дійсно гарна пора.
Questions:
1. Why do people usually go out of town in summer?
2. Describe the nature in summer.
3. What usually brings relief in summer?
4. What is a thunderstorm?
5. When does a rainbow appear?
6. Why do children love summer?
7. What do you usually do in summer?

Vocabulary:

heat [hɪt] — спека
oppressive [ˈɒpresɪv] — нестерпний, пекучий
dandelion [ˈdændɪlaɪən] — кульбаба
stuffy [ˈstʌfi] — задушливий

thunderstorm [ˈθʌndəstɔːm] — гроза
relief [rɪˈlɪf] — полегшення
dazzling [ˈdæzəlɪŋ] — сліпучий
lightning [ˈlaɪtnɪŋ] — блискавка
rainbow [ˈreɪnbɔː] — райдуга, веселка

Autumn

In September summer yields to autumn.
The days become shorter and the nights become longer.
The sun rays are not so bright and warm.
The fruit trees that not long ago bloomed with flowers are heavy with juicy apples and pears.
Harvest time is a rush season for farmers.
They gather sunflowers and maize, potatoes and cabbage, turnip and cucumbers, carrots and tomatoes.
Early autumn is the period of flaming colours, when the landscape is gold and brown.
In the daytime the silver gossamer is flying in the air.
It’s a sign of the beautiful “Indian Summer”.

But unfortunately this period of fine weather is very short and deep autumn follows it.
We say good­bye to birds that fly away to warm countries.
The sky is covered with low, heavy clouds — the period of rain has set in.
It is not pleasant to be out in the rain that is accompanied by a cold wind.

Vocabulary:
to yield [jɪːld] — поступатися
ray [reɪ] — промінь
harvest [ˈhærvɪst] — урожай
sunflower [ˈsaʊnfʌlə] — соняшник
to accompany [əˈkæmənɪ] — супроводжувати
turnip [ˈtɜːnp] — ріпа

maize [meɪz] — кукурудза
landscape [ˈlændskɪp] — пейзаж
gossamer [ˈɡɔsəmə] — осіннє павутиння у повітрі
Indian Summer [ˈɪndɪənˈsʌmə] — бабине літо

Questions:

1. Are the days long in autumn?
2. What are there in the fruit trees?
3. What do farmers usually do in autumn?
4. What is “Indian Summer”?
5. Where do birds fly?
6. Do you like autumn?

Winter

When December is approaching there is a breath of winter in the autumn air.
It is getting colder day by day.
The cold makes the hands cold and stiff.
Soft, white snowflakes are falling thick and fast covering the ground and roofs.
When the branches of the fir trees and pines are covered with snow they look beautifully.
The snow lies thick upon the ground and birds hop about looking for food.
A lot of icicles all glittering in the sun hang from roofs of houses.

Коли наближається грудень, в осіннім повітрі почувається подих зими.
День за днем стає холодніше.
Від холоду мерзнуть руки і стають негнучкими.
М’які, білі лапаті пластівці падають і вкривають товстим шаром землю і дахи.
Коли лапи сосон і ялинок вкриті снігом, вони виглядають чудово.
Товстий сніжний покрив лежить на землі, і птахи стрибають у пошуках їжі.
Безліч бурульок виблискують на сонці, звисаючи з дахів будинків.
Winter is a jolly time for children. They make snowmen and play snowballs. When the weather is fine children and grown-ups go skiing, skating or sliding down the snow covered hills.

Vocabulary:

- to approach [əˈprəʊtʃ] — наближатися
- day by day [deɪ ˈbeɪ deɪ] — день за днем
- sight [saɪt] — вид, видовище
- icicle [ˈaɪsɪkl] — бурулька
- pine [paɪn] — сосна
- hop [hɒp] — скакати
- to glitter [ˈɡlɪtə] — блищати, сяяти
- to slide [slaɪd] — кататися
- jolly [ˈdʒɒli] — веселий

Questions:

1. Describe winter weather.
2. Are the days short or long in winter?
3. Why are the branches of the trees a fantastic sight?
4. Why is it a jolly time for children?
5. What do people usually do in winter weather?
6. Do you like winter? Why?

My Favourite Season

I like autumn very much. The autumn months are: September, October, November.

Children and students begin their studying on the first of September. Autumn is the golden season, when everything becomes ripe and the woods are red and yellow. Many of the fields are bare already, and the tractors are at work. They are ploughing the fields, they are preparing them for the spring. Some of the fields are green with winter wheat or rye.

My Favourite Season

Моя улюблена пора року

Я дуже люблю осінь. Осінні місяці — це вересень, жовтень, листопад. Школярі і студенти починають навчатися першого вересня. Осінь — золотий час, коли усе поспіває і ліси стають червоні та жовті. Багато де лани вже прибрані, і там працюють трактори. Вони оріють лани, готують їх до весни. Деякі лани зелені від озимої пшениці чи жита.
October is the best month for planting trees.
People also prepare for winter.
Summer is over.
We like to go for a walk to the forest in September and pick up mushrooms.
It is a season when the trees are fantastic — yellow, red, green and brown.
The trees are loosing their leaves.
Now the ground is like a carpet of many colours.
It gets dark earlier and often heavy clouds cover the sky bringing rain.
Birds don't sing their songs.
They begin to leave for warm countries.
November is the month of fog, rain and snow.
Animals put on their winter coats.

Autumn is a very beautiful season, that's why I like it.

Vocabulary:

golden [ˈɡəuldən] — золотий
ripe [raɪp] — спілий
bare [beə] — пустий, голий
to plough [plau] — орати
rye [raɪ] — жито
fantastic [fænˈtæstɪk] — примхливий
necessary [ˈnesəsəri] — необхідний

Questions:

1. What are autumn months?
2. Why is it a golden season?
3. What is the best month for planting trees?
4. What do you like to do in autumn?
5. What is the weather like in autumn?
6. Do you like autumn? Why? Why not?
7. What is your favourite season?
Today's Weather and My Attitude to It

For the last several days the weather has been unsettled.
But I like it most of all.
When I woke up today, the day seemed to be dull and grey.
But it cleared up, and now the sun is shining brightly, it is very warm.
I have noticed that most of the days start like that: the sky is cloudy, there is no sun, the wind is rather strong, but then it often clears up.
I like warm weather very much.
But I don’t like extremes: it is not good when it is sultry.
And the worst weather in winter is sleet: I guess no one wants to leave his house in such weather.
In summer it sometimes rains, but usually the pools dry up quickly, and thunderstorms, if they occur, are not long.
Rainy summer is just unbearable!
I think weather is very important not only for crops, but also for people’s mood.
That’s why people pay so much attention to weather forecasts, and even believe in different signs.
Discussing the weather is one of the national features of the English.
But our people also like to discuss the weather.

Vocabulary:
unsettled [an'setld] — нестійкий
dull [dʌl] — нудний
to notice [ˈnəutɪs] — помічати
to clear up [ˈklɪə rp] — поліпшуватися
sultry [ˈsʌltri] — задушливий
**Questions:**

1. What is the weather forecast for today?
2. Why do people like to discuss the weather?
3. What is one of the national features of the English?
4. Do you like rainy weather?
5. Why is autumn often called “golden”?

---

**The Weather Forecast**

We get wet through when we are caught in a rainstorm without a coat.

Sometimes we put on a sweater and then find that the weather has become hot.

We do not always know what weather to expect.

On TV and radio there are daily weather forecasts.

Sometimes, the forecast is not quite right as the weather is not an easy thing to forecast.

All day and night, weathermen are collecting information from ships, planes, weather stations, and space stations.

With the help of this information, they can understand what the weather will be like during the next few days.

Although no two days will have exactly the same weather, some types of weather people can forecast.

When a barometer shows high pressure, the weather will be calm.

In winter it will be cold and frosty.

In summer it usually means misty mornings and hot sunny days.

---

**Прогноз погоди**

Ми промокаємо до нитки, коли потрапляємо під зливу без пальта.

Іноді ми надягаємо светр і виявляємо, що погода стала більш теплою.

Ми не завжди знаємо, яку погоду варто очікувати.

Є щоденні прогнози погоди по телевізору і радіо.

Іноді прогноз не завжди правильний, тому що погоду важко пророчити.

Цілодобово метеорологи збирають інформацію з кораблів, літаків, метеорологічних станцій, космічних станцій.

За допомогою цієї інформації вони можуть зрозуміти, яка буде погода протягом наступних декількох днів.

Хоча погода не може бути абсолютноно однаковою протягом двох днів, усе-таки люди можуть її прогнозувати.

Коли барометр показує високий тиск, погода буде тихою.

Узимку вона буде холодною і морозною.

Літом це звичайно означає туман ранками і жаркі сонячні дні.
When the barometer shows low pressure, look out for rain and strong winds.

As a result of the weathermen's work we learn about the weather.

**Vocabulary:**

- **rainstorm** ['reɪnstɔːm] — гроза, злива з ураганом
- **sweater** [ˈswetə] — светр
- **daily** [ˈdeɪli] — щоденний
- **forecast** [ˈfɔrˌkæst] — прогноз
- **to collect** [kəˈlekt] — збирати
- **although** [əˈlɔːð] — хоча, незважаючи на те, що
- **barometer** [bəˈrəʊmətə] — барометр
- **pressure** [ˈpreʃə] — тиск
- **misty** [ˈmɪsti] — туманний

**Questions:**

1. Do we always know what weather to expect?
2. What is the forecast?
3. What do weathermen do?
4. How do we use the barometer?
5. What weather do you like?
Life of Youth in Great Britain and the USA

Youth and youth movement over decades have become important factors in the life of both countries. Numerous youth organization have been formed since the Second World War, uniting young people from all classes and sections of the population.

In the USA there exist Young Republican Federation, Young Christian Association, some religious organizations for Jewish youth. There also exist some political organizations like Students' Coordinative Committee of Non-Violent Action and Students For Democratic Society. Youth organization Greenpeace deals with the most urgent ecological problems of today's world. It protests against nuclear weapon tests, sea and soil pollution, etc.

Some young people work in their church organizations: help elderly people or work in hospitals. There are even some groups, where young people help released prisoners to start their life anew.

Sports clubs are characteristic youth organizations in the US and UK. They unite people, who are interested in baseball, football, basketball, golf, etc. There also exist interest clubs. You can attend any club: from theatre clubs to bird-watching clubs.

Bird-watching clubs are very popular, especially in Great Britain.

Життя молоді в Англії і США

Молодь і молодіжний рух в останні роки стали важливим фактором у житті обох країн. Численні молодіжні організації сформувалися після Другої світової війни, об'єднуючи молодих людей усіх класів і шарів населення.

У США існують молодіжна федерація республіканців, християнські молодіжні асоціації, релігійні організації для єврейської молоді. Існують також політичні організації: Студентський координаційний центр акції протесту і Студенти за демократичне суспільство.

Молодіжна організація Гринпіс займається найнагальнішими екологічними проблемами сучасного світу. Вона протестує проти випробувань ядерної зброї, забруднення моря і ґрунту і т. п.

Деякі молоді люди працюють у церковних організаціях: допомагають старим людям чи працюють у лікарнях. Існують навіть групи, де молоді люди допомагають щойно звільненим в'язням почати нове життя.

Характерними молодіжними об'єднаннями Англії і США є спортивні клуби. Вони об'єднують любителів бейсболу, футболу, баскетболу, гольфу. Існують також клуби за інтересами.

Можна відвідувати будь-який клуб: від театрального до клубу спостереження за птахами. Клуби спостереження за птахами разі дуже популярні, особливо в Англії.
And at the age of 14 children have a regular part-time job to earn some pocket money.

You can see now, our youth is mostly similar to the youth abroad in many aspects of life.

**Vocabulary:**

- movement ['mu:vmənt] — рух
- on the grounds [ən də 'graʊndz] — на підставі
- Republican Federation [rɪˈpʌblɪkən 'fɛdərəʃən] — Республіканська Федерація
- Christian Association [ˈkrɪʃən əˈsəʊsəˈeɪʃən] — християнська асоціація

**Questions:**

1. What do you know about the youth movement in the world?
2. What youth organizations of the USA do you know?
3. Name some political organizations of Great Britain.
4. What do some people do in their church organizations?
5. How do interest clubs work?

**The Life of American Youth**

Young people in the USA also have their problems and hobbies.

I would like to tell about some of them.

At American schools there are many different circles for schoolchildren, for example, a school literature society, sports society, and so on.

Many young American people are fond of sports.

They attend school sports clubs.

There are sports teams at schools and different competitions are organized quite often.

Besides, there are a lot of school parties.
Parents help to organize them.

There are "talent nights" where the schoolchildren show all their talents as to the drama or singing.

Most music societies have bands or orchestras, which perform on different occasions.

Besides, lots of children and teenagers have hobbies.

They join different clubs that are organized for young people having the same hobby.

During their holidays young people like to travel.

There are also some political organizations, and different organization, that are connected with ecology or racial discrimination.

As our youth, American young people also like to communicate with each other and spend a lot of time together.

Vocabulary:

- **hobby** [ˈhɒbi] — захоплення
- "**talent nights**" [ˈtælənt ˈnaɪts] — «вечори талантів»
- **to be fond of** [fɒnd əv] — займатися, захоплюватися
- **circle** [ˈsɜːkl] — гурток
- **to join** [dʒɔɪn] — об’єднуватися
- **society** [ˈsəʊsi] — гурток
- **orchestra** [ˈɔrkɪstra] — оркестр

Questions:

1. Name some political and other societies, organizations of the USA.
2. What does the youth organization Greenpeace deal with?
3. What do some young people do in their school societies?
4. Are you fond of sport?
5. What are “talent nights”?
The Life of Ukrainian Youth

Nowadays when our independent state Ukraine is developing, much attention is paid to our youth. The desire of our young people to become qualified specialists in future motivates them to enter higher educational establishments.

For young people higher education is the method of developing their talents and abilities, their creative potential. That is why beside their studies they are also engaged in different clubs and organizations.

Almost every school or institute has its own team of “joyful and smart” (KVN). This game is rather popular among our young people and it helps them to bring out their brightest talents and to create team spirit.

Young people learn to work together, to share the moments of luck and failure.

Besides studies young people are also engaged in scientific and research work. One may say that nowadays this sphere is not paid too much attention to.

This is true, but still there exist “Young Scientists’ Councils”, where young people can discuss or present their scientific investigations.

There also exists the Ukrainian branch of youth organization Greenpeace in Ukraine.

Young people learn to love their land and the world that surrounds them. This organization protests against environmental pollution, against extermination of all animals, not only rare species.
Some young people work in their church organizations: they help elderly people, reconstruct our historical monuments and monasteries.

This work brings them closer to our history, teaches them to love their country and respect its past.

A lot of young people go in for sports, that is why schools and institutes have sport clubs and teams.

Our young people are especially interested in football, basketball, hockey, etc.

There also exists a great variety of different clubs in this country.

They are: theatre clubs, where young people stage different literary works; clubs “What? Where? When?” where they can enlarge their knowledge in different fields of science and life, and so on.

Future belongs to the young, that is why the political life of this country is important to them.

Many young people are engaged in political parties and organizations such as: “the greens”, the Union of Ukrainian Youth, the Scouts.

Vocabulary:

higher education ['haɪər in djuːə] — вища освіта
failure [ˈfeɪlə] — невдача
"joyful and smart" [dʒɔɪfl ənd smɑːt] — клуб веселих і кмітливих (КВК)
to respect [rɪsˈpekt] — поважати
extermination [ɪkˈstrɪmiˈneɪʃn] — винищування
spirit [ˈspɪrɪt] — дух

Questions:
1. What Youth organizations in Ukraine do you know?
2. What are their main aims?
3. What is the way of spending free time by youth in Ukraine?
4. What kinds of sports do young people go in for in Ukraine?
5. What organizations give young people a chance to develop and enlarge their interests and to gain experience in working with others?
Your Readiness to Help Someone

In our everyday life we meet people who are always ready to help.

And it is important to say that such people help not because they are asked to help.

In this way they give an example of how people can be attentive to each other.

As an English proverb goes: “He teaches who gives, and he learns who receives”.

So each person, a grown-up or a pupil, ought to do good because he wants to do so, not because he is told to help.

There are pupils in each class who help their classmates to learn better.

They do it on their own initiative not because they were “assigned” to give help to a weak pupil.

When we help other people, we do a good thing for them.

There is an American proverb which says, “When you are good to others you are best to yourself”.

An English proverb has the same meaning: “What we give, we have, what we keep we lose”.

There are different situations in which our help may be needed.

For example, school classes are over.

The pupils come out into the school yard.

There they see a big boy come up to a first-former to take away his ball.
The little one is holding the ball in his hands and will not give it. The big boy begins to show that he is much stronger than the first-former. From this example one can easily understand that the big boy showed nasty attitude to the first-former. So his behaviour is good for nothing.

He doesn’t know the general rule: to be ready to help someone and it doesn’t matter if this one is young or old.

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Ukrainian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to assign</td>
<td>прикріпляти до кого-небудь</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to do good</td>
<td>робити добро</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td>слабкий</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions:

1. What kind of help are you prepared to give other people?
2. An English proverb says: “He gives twice who gives in a trice”. Have you given help quickly?
3. What kind of help was it?
4. Were you asked to help or did you give it on your own initiative?

Politeness — a Sign of Culture

I think politeness is one of the signs of culture, but real culture includes more than simply being polite.

How far does politeness go?

Is it only saying, “Good morning!” and “Excuse me, please!”

No, it’s more than that. Politeness can be shown everywhere. When we write something at school or at home what our teachers must read, they are glad when it looks neat and is easy to read.
Think of all the papers our teachers have to read. It must make them tired to read the ugly handwriting of some pupils. They have to make out words which are not written neatly. As we write, we may think only of what we are writing and not of the person who must read it, and therefore we may write carelessly. Let’s agree that it’s impolite to do that.

And what about politeness in school and out of school? One of the school rules says that a school pupil should greet the head of the school and the teachers politely if he (she) meets them in the street. Another rule says that a school pupil should be polite to those older than himself, be modest and well behaved at school, in the street and in other public places.

Forming culture habits of behaviour isn’t a simple thing; but if we are polite, it shouldn’t be difficult for us to be cultured in any situation.

Vocabulary:

- **sign** [sain] — знак; ознака
- **handwriting** [ˈhændrətɪŋ] — почерк
- **carelessly** [ˈkeələslɪ] — неохайно
- **impolite** [ɪmˈpəlaɪt] — неввічливий
- **therefore** [ˈθɛrəfɔ:] — тому, отже

Questions:

1. What do grown-up people do to teach children to be polite?
2. How does a polite child behave at home?
3. How does a polite pupil behave at school?
4. In what way should you be polite to older people?
5. How should boys be polite to girls?
6. What signs of politeness should you show when you meet your teachers in the street?
7. What is meant by “politeness goes far”?